

Trends In Historical Thought And Writing

Course Code: B21HS06DE
Discipline Specific Elective Course
Undergraduate Programme in History



SELF LEARNING MATERIAL



SREENARAYANAGURU
OPEN UNIVERSITY

SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

The State University of Education, Training and Research in Blended Format, Kerala

SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

Vision

To increase access of potential learners of all categories to higher education, research and training, and ensure equity through delivery of high quality processes and outcomes fostering inclusive educational empowerment for social advancement.

Mission

To be benchmarked as a model for conservation and dissemination of knowledge and skill on blended and virtual mode in education, training and research for normal, continuing, and adult learners.

Pathway

Access and Quality define Equity.

Trends In Historical Thought And Writing

Course Code: B21HS06DE

Semester - V

**Discipline Specific Elective Course
Undergraduate Programme History
Self Learning Material
(with Model Question Paper Sets)**



SREENARAYANAGURU
OPEN UNIVERSITY

SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

The State University for Education, Training and Research in Blended Format, Kerala



SREENARAYANAGURU
OPEN UNIVERSITY

Trends In Historical Thought And Writing

Course Code: B21HS06DE

Semester- V

Discipline Specific Elective Course

Academic Committee

Dr. Shaji A.
Dr. S. Venu Mohan
Dr. Vysakh A.S.
Dr. Jyothirmani Vatakayil
Dr. Vinayan T.
Dr. Lalini M.
Dr. Vijaya Kumari K.
Dr. Manoj T. R.
Dr. P. Sajna

Development of Content

Dr. Reeja R., Thahani Rezak, Dr. Sebastian Joseph, Hinduja Remesh, Vedayasan S.

Review and Edit

Dr. C. Francis, Dr. Sebastian Joseph,
Dr. Alex Mathew

Linguistics

Dr. Anas T.P.

Scrutiny

Dr. Reeja R., Dr. Preethi Chandran
P.B., Dr. Thahani Rezak, Dr. Arun A.S.,
Zubin Antony Mehar Reynold

Design Control

Azeem Babu T.A.

Cover Design

Lisha S.

Co-ordination

Director, MDDC :

Dr. I.G. Shibi

Asst. Director, MDDC :

Dr. Sajeevkumar G.

Coordinator, Development:

Dr. Anfal M.

Coordinator, Distribution:

Dr. Sanitha K.K.



Scan this QR Code for reading the SLM
on a digital device.

Edition:
October 2025

Copyright:
© Sreenarayanaguru Open
University 2025

ISBN 978-81-988746-9-6



All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from Sreenarayanaguru Open University. Printed and published on behalf of Sreenarayanaguru Open University by Registrar, SGOU, Kollam.

www.sgou.ac.m



Visit and Subscribe our Social Media Platforms

MESSAGE FROM VICE CHANCELLOR

Dear learner,

I extend my heartfelt greetings and profound enthusiasm as I warmly welcome you to Sreenarayanaguru Open University. Established in September 2020 as a state-led endeavour to promote higher education through open and distance learning modes, our institution was shaped by the guiding principle that access and quality are the cornerstones of equity. We have firmly resolved to uphold the highest standards of education, setting the benchmark and charting the course.

The courses offered by the Sreenarayanaguru Open University aim to strike a quality balance, ensuring students are equipped for both personal growth and professional excellence. The University embraces the widely acclaimed “blended format,” a practical framework that harmoniously integrates Self-Learning Materials, Classroom Counseling, and Virtual modes, fostering a dynamic and enriching experience for both learners and instructors.

The University aims to offer you an engaging and thought-provoking educational journey. The Undergraduate Programme in History is carefully designed to incorporate recent trends in historical knowledge. Concepts, methodologies, and interpretations are presented as a coherent narrative tailored to fit the Open and Distance Learning (ODL) format. This programme aims to inspire students to pursue further reading in the discipline. Its primary objective is to cultivate competent history learners who are well-versed in the principles of historical understanding.

Rest assured, the university’s student support services will be at your disposal throughout your academic journey, readily available to address any concerns or grievances you may encounter. We encourage you to reach out to us freely regarding any matter about your academic programme. It is our sincere wish that you achieve the utmost success.



Regards,
Dr. Jagathy Raj V. P.

01-10-2025

Contents

BLOCK 1: Concept of History and Early Historical Writings	1
Unit 1 Meaning of History and Historiography	2
Unit 2 Quasi History-Past and History	13
Unit 3 Historical Writings in Greece - Rome - China	20
Unit 4 Nature of Medieval Historical Writings	33
Unit 5 Ancient Indian Historiography	40
Unit 6 Medieval Indian Historiography	53
 BLOCK 2: Evolution of Modern Theories of Historical Writings	 70
Unit 1 Vico and New Science	71
Unit 2 Positivism	79
Unit 3 Cultural History	87
Unit 4 A. J. Toynbee and the Study of Civilizations	96
 BLOCK 3: Impact of Renaissance on Theories of Historical Writings	 106
Unit 1 Renaissance	107
Unit 2 Enlightenment	119
Unit 3 Romanticism	129
Unit 4 Rationalism	141
Unit 5 Descartes - Vico - Gibbon	150
 BLOCK 4: New Trends and Theories on Historical Writing	 159
Unit 1 Trends in Writings of History - Ranke and Modern Scientific Way of Writing History	160
Unit 2 Historical Materialism	169
 BLOCK 5: Twentieth Century Historiography	 185
Unit 1 Annales School	186
Unit 2 Structuralism	197
Unit 3 History of Mentalities	204
Unit 4 History from Below	211
Unit 5 Postmodernism	217
 BLOCK 6: Trends in Indian Historical Writings	 225
Unit 1 Oriental Historiography and William Jones	226
Unit 2 Colonial/ Imperial Approach to Indian Historiography	234
Unit 3 Nationalist School	247
Unit 4 Marxist Approach to Indian History	265
Unit 5 Subaltern Studies	278
Unit 6 Environmental History	288
Unit 7 Cambridge and New Cambridge School	306
Question Paper Sets	316



BLOCK

Concept of History and Early Historical Writings



UNIT

Meaning of History and Historiography

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ describe what history is and who an historian is
- ◆ explain what historiography is and its relevance
- ◆ understand the evolution of historical writing
- ◆ familiarise themselves with the different schools of historiography

Prerequisites

Derived from the Greek word *istoria*, meaning “inquiry” or “investigation,” history involves a critical and interpretative process of examining evidence to construct meaningful narratives about the past. Far from being static or merely factual, historical study evolves time, influenced by new discoveries, shifting perspectives, and emerging methodologies. It is important to realise that the study of history is not just about dates or events; it is an interpretative discipline that involves critical analysis, debate, and evolving perspectives.

History and historiography are two interconnected disciplines that help us understand the past and the ways in which it is interpreted and recorded. While history is the study of past events, historiography is the study of how history is written and the methodologies employed by historians. Together, history and historiography shape our understanding of human progress and the ways in which past events influence contemporary. This along with basic explores the evolution of historical writing, the key approaches to historiography, and the challenges faced by historians in their quest to reconstruct and interpret the past.

Keywords

Historical writing, Temporal, Spatial, Historiography, Chronology, Bias, Herodotus, Interdisciplinary

Discussion

1.1.1 The Meaning and Definitions of History

History can be broadly defined as the study of past events, particularly concerning human affairs. It encompasses a wide range of aspects, including political, social, economic, cultural, and intellectual developments. The term “history” originates from the Greek word *historia*, meaning “inquiry” or “investigation.” This definition underscores the analytical and interpretative nature of historical studies, as historians investigate evidence to construct a coherent narrative of the past.

History can be understood through two key aspects that help interpret historical information. The first is temporal context the chronological sequence and timing of events, often visualised as a timeline. The second is spatial context the physical settings and geographic regions where these events occurred. Together, these dimensions of time and place provide a framework for analysing historical developments.

1.1.1.1 Definition of History

The discipline of history is so vast and complex that it resists any single, precise definition and can only be described in broad and general terms. Droysen concisely described it as “humanity’s understanding of itself.” At its core, history is the knowledge gained through the investigation of past events. Most attempts to define it focus primarily on explaining its character, range, or the significance of engaging in its study.

Classical Greek and Roman writers never framed a fixed definition of history, though their works often hinted at its meaning and value. Aristotle, who explored nearly every field of knowledge, offered perhaps the earliest formal description, portraying history as a record of the immutable past. Events, once they occur, remain unalterable; only our interpretations of them may shift over time. Polybius, combining theory and practice, highlighted its instructional and practical worth, calling history a guiding light for the present and future, and a means of correcting human conduct.

This pragmatic and utilitarian approach also shaped Dionysius of Halicarnassus’s view, who described history as “philosophy teaching by example.” While such a definition risks reducing history to a tool for moral lessons or political aims, it also reveals a constructive link with philosophy. Philosophy cultivates the ability to see events from a broad perspective, preventing history from becoming a sterile collection of trivial facts. Conversely, without historical grounding, philosophy can turn into abstract theorising with little relevance. Thinkers like Francis Bacon affirmed this mutual dependence, regarding history as a source of universal wisdom and a discipline uniquely concerned with humanity’s place in time.

Edmund Burke regarded history as a guide to practical wisdom rather than a source of universal principles, grounding his view in its reliance on changing circumstances that defy rigid laws. This outlook, though akin to the pragmatic spirit of classical



Graeco-Roman thought, remains limited in breadth. On the other hand, Thomas Carlyle's claim that "The History of the world... was the Biography of Great Men," which portrays it chiefly as the record of great individuals, has been challenged for its narrowness. While exceptional leaders play undeniable roles in shaping events, an exclusive focus on them overlooks the decisive impact of broader society. Marx interpreted these leaders not as divinely inspired agents but as products and representatives of wider social dynamics, akin to Hegel's "spirit of the age" or Lamprecht's concept of the "social psyche." Contemporary historical perspectives increasingly emphasise the agency of ordinary people, shifting attention from the deeds of rulers and isolated political events to the collective forces driving economic and social change.

John Seely described history as 'past politics' and present politics as 'future history.' Yet, such a definition overlooks the reality that societies often let the political disputes of the past fade while cherishing their enduring achievements in philosophy, literature, art, law, and cultural advancement. The once-dominant political conception of history, upheld by Graeco-Roman chroniclers and firmly maintained by Ranke in the nineteenth century, eventually gave way to a more expansive outlook—one that includes humanity's material, cultural, and spiritual evolution from the Stone Age onward, with politics occupying only a marginal place.

Lord Acton reimagined history as "the unfolding story of human freedom," stressing that true progress and creativity arise more from liberty than from military conquests or empire-building. F.W. Maitland offered a broader interpretation, defining history as "what men have done and said, above all what they have thought," giving primacy to innovative and purposeful thinking as a driving force of human progress. His view, rooted in Enlightenment ideals, connects

the advancement of civilisation to the development of the mind and fosters the field of intellectual history, where ideas are seen as the primary catalysts of social change. This stands in direct contrast to Marx and Engels' doctrine of historical materialism, which holds that ideas are merely byproducts of the underlying material conditions of life.

Carl G. Gustavson calls ideas "the ultimate given of history," underscoring the primacy of thought in contrast to Marx and Engels' historical materialism, which views ideas as the byproduct of material life processes. Henry Johnson offers a very broad view, describing history as "everything that ever happened," but warns that such a definition is impractical since the past must be reconstructed and not all events can be recorded. Professor M. I. Finley proposes that history is "any sequence of events traced in their relations," stressing the cause-and-effect order and the need to study events both chronologically and in relation to each other. A.L. Rowse and Renier emphasise history as the collective record of human life in societies within their environments, pointing to the role of group activity in mastering nature and fostering development. Ernest Bernheim provides a precise and analytical definition, seeing history as a science investigating the evolution of humans, individually and collectively, within the framework of space, time, and psycho-physical causality. His approach integrates both the factual investigation of the past and the recognition that human progress arises from social interaction shaped by environmental and temporal conditions.

Marc Bloch, in *The Historian's Craft*, portrayed history as "the science of men in time," highlighting it as an inquiry into the unfolding of human civilisation over the ages. For him, history differed from other sciences because it embraced the full spectrum of human activity political, social, economic, and cultural woven together into

The interpretation of these sources determines the accuracy and reliability of historical narratives.

4. Subjectivity and Objectivity: While historians strive for objectivity, complete neutrality is often impossible. Historical writing is influenced by perspectives, biases, and the cultural background of the historian.

5. Continuity and Change: History examines both the continuities in human development and the changes that shape civilizations. Understanding these aspects helps us trace patterns and transformations over time.

6. Relevance to the Present: Studying history is not merely about the past; it has direct implications for the present and future. It helps societies learn from past mistakes, preserve cultural heritage, and foster a sense of identity.

1.1.1.2 Key Characteristics of History

History studies the important events and decisions that have shaped entire societies, including the major institutions and individual actions that impacted communities' growth and experiences. In the past, historians mainly examined political leaders, government decisions, and wars between nations. However, over the last century, the field has expanded significantly. Modern history now explores the evolution of ideas, economic changes, and social developments that define and transform our collective way of life.

The scope of history is best understood by clarifying what lies outside its domain. Natural phenomena such as the origins of the Earth, geographical features, or plant and animal evolution do not belong to history unless they directly influence human life and society. While history might seem to encompass all that has ever happened, in

- 1. Chronological Study:** History is arranged in a sequence of events, making chronology a fundamental aspect. Understanding the sequence of events is crucial to comprehending how they influenced each other.
- 2. Cause and Effect Relationship:** History seeks to identify causes behind events and their consequences. By analysing these relationships, historians can offer explanations for societal transformations.
- 3. Interpretation of Evidence :** History relies on sources such as documents, artefacts, oral traditions, and inscriptions.



reality, it is limited to the recoverable past those aspects for which present evidence exists. Without surviving traces, there is no history. This distinction makes historical study unique compared to other disciplines that also investigate humanity's past, such as archaeology or anthropology. Moreover, as R.G. Collingwood noted, not all human actions are subjects of history; only those shaped by thought and social convention fall under its purview, rather than purely instinctive acts. As an academic discipline, history involves describing and interpreting the past from its surviving evidence, a practice that has developed systematically only in recent centuries.

The historian's work focuses on three core concerns outlined by Arthur Marwick: man in society, change through time, and the particular and unique. History must study individuals within their social contexts, recognising that great leaders operate within societal frameworks and that ordinary people collectively shape events. Unlike other social sciences, history's defining trait is its concern with temporal change, examining how societies evolve and differ over time. Furthermore, history deals with unique and non-repetitive events, meaning that general patterns must be grounded in specific, concrete examples.

Over time, history's scope has expanded far beyond the narrow political focus of ancient and early modern historians. By the late nineteenth century, influenced by nationalism, the idea of progress, and the historical method, history began to encompass constitutional, legal, economic, social, and cultural developments. Marxist historiography further emphasised the lives of ordinary people and economic structures, while cultural and intellectual history explored ideas, beliefs, and artistic expression. In recent decades, the field has broadened to include topics such as gender, ethnicity, local

histories, and even the irrational or magical aspects of human life.

This vast range has led to increasing specialisation, with political, economic, religious, philosophical, literary, and scientific histories often studied separately. However, this fragmentation risks losing sight of the unity of human civilisation. Thinkers like Lucien Febvre, Marc Bloch, and Will Durant sought to restore synthesis through "total history," portraying the interconnectedness of all aspects of human activity. Such an integrated approach presents history not as isolated strands but as the organic whole of humanity's life on Earth, where thought, action, and culture continually shape and reshape one another.

1.1.2 Historiography

Historiography is the study of how history is written, interpreted, and analysed. It involves examining different historical perspectives, methodologies, and schools of thought that have emerged over time. Essentially, historiography is concerned with the "history of history" – how historical knowledge has been constructed and revised by historians.

Key Aspects of Historiography

- 1. Sources and Evidence:** Historians rely on primary sources (original documents, inscriptions, artifacts) and secondary sources (interpretations, analyses, commentaries) to reconstruct historical events.
- 2. Historical Methods:** Historiography involves various methodologies, including comparative history, oral history, quantitative analysis, and interdisciplinary approaches.
- 3. Biases and Perspective:** Every historian writes from a particular perspective, influenced by their cultural, political,

and ideological background. Recognising biases helps in critically evaluating historical narratives.

4. **Revisionist History:** Over time, new evidence and interpretations lead to the revision of historical accounts. Historiography acknowledges that history is dynamic and subject to reinterpretation.
5. **Historiographical Schools of Thought:** Different schools of historiography have emerged, each offering unique perspectives on historical study.

1.1.2.1 The Evolution of Historical Writing

The practice of recording history dates back to ancient civilisations. Early historians like Herodotus (484–425 BCE), often called the “Father of History,” and Thucydides (460–395 BCE) laid the foundations for historical writing. Herodotus’s work *The Histories* combined factual accounts with mythological elements, while Thucydides’s *History of the Peloponnesian War* emphasised empirical evidence and critical analysis, setting a precedent for modern historical methods.

In the medieval period, history writing was often influenced by religious perspectives. Chroniclers like St. Augustine of Hippo (354–430 CE) in Numidia and Ibn Khaldun (1332–1406) in the Islamic world contributed significantly to historical scholarship. Ibn Khaldun’s *Muqaddimah* introduced concepts of social cohesion and the rise and fall of civilisations, marking a shift toward analytical historiography.

The Renaissance and Enlightenment periods witnessed a renewed interest in classical antiquity, with a focus on humanism and reason. Renaissance historians such as Niccolò Machiavelli (1469–1527) and Francesco Guicciardini (1483–1540) concentrated on political history and the

actions of individuals. The Enlightenment brought a new emphasis on reason and scientific methods, with historians like Voltaire (1694–1778) and Edward Gibbon (1737–1794) stressing the importance of critical inquiry and secular perspectives. Gibbon’s *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* is a landmark work that combines narrative flair with rigorous analysis.

The nineteenth century saw the development of history as an academic discipline, marked by the establishment of historical methods and institutions. Leopold von Ranke (1795–1886) is often regarded as the founder of modern scientific history. He emphasised the use of primary sources, the importance of objectivity, and the need to understand the past “as it actually happened.” This period also witnessed the rise of national histories, which sought to construct narratives of nation-building and identity.

We shall take a deeper dive into the historiography of these periods in the upcoming units.

1.1.2.2 Approaches to Historiography

Historiography encompasses various methodologies and schools of thought that shape how history is written and interpreted. Some of the key approaches include:

Positivism : Emerging in the 19th century, positivism emphasised the use of empirical evidence and scientific methods to study history. Historians like Leopold von Ranke (1795–1886) advocated for an objective, fact-based approach, famously stating that the historian’s task was to show “how it really was.” Sometimes referred to as the Traditionalist School, it focuses on political events, wars, and leaders, written from a Eurocentric or elite perspective.

Marxist Historiography : Inspired by



Karl Marx's theories, this approach focuses on class struggle, economic systems, and social structures as the driving forces of historical change. Historians like E.P. Thompson (1924–1993) applied Marxist principles to study the lives of working-class communities.

Annales School : Founded in France in the early 20th century, the Annales School, led by historians like Fernand Braudel (1902–1985), emphasised long-term historical trends (*la longue durée*) and interdisciplinary approaches, incorporating geography, sociology, and mentalities into historical analysis.

Postmodernism : In the late 20th century, postmodern historians challenged the notion of objective historical truth, arguing that history is shaped by language, power dynamics, and subjective interpretations. Hayden White (1928–2018) contended that historical narratives are constructed like literary texts, influenced by rhetorical strategies and cultural contexts.

Subaltern Studies : This approach, developed in the 1980s, focuses on the histories of marginalised groups, particularly in colonial and postcolonial contexts. Scholars like Ranajit Guha (1923–2023) sought to give voice to those excluded from traditional historical narratives.

1.1.2.3 Challenges in Historiography

Historians face numerous challenges in their work, including:

1. **Bias and Subjectivity :** Every historian brings their own perspectives, values, and cultural background to their work, which can influence their interpretation of events. Recognising and mitigating bias is a constant challenge.
2. **Source Limitations:** Historical sources

are often incomplete, biased, or lost to time. Many aspects of the past are lost due to lack of documentation. Historians must critically evaluate the reliability and context of available evidence.

3. **Ethical Considerations:** Writing about sensitive topics, such as genocide, slavery, or colonialism, requires careful ethical consideration to avoid misrepresentation or harm to affected communities.
4. **Interdisciplinary Demands:** Modern historiography often requires knowledge of other disciplines, such as archaeology, anthropology, and economics, to provide a comprehensive understanding of the past.

1.1.3 The Relationship between History and Historiography

While history is concerned with the study of past events, historiography examines how those events have been recorded and interpreted. Historiography helps us understand that history is not merely a record of facts but a constantly evolving interpretation influenced by cultural, political, and ideological factors. As new evidence emerges and perspectives shift, historiography allows for the reassessment of historical narratives.

For example, the French Revolution has been interpreted differently by various historiographical schools. A Marxist historian might emphasise class struggle and economic factors, while a political historian may focus on leadership and governance. Another example is the fall of the Roman Empire. Early historians, such as Edward Gibbon, attributed the decline of Rome to moral decay and the rise of Christianity. Later historiographical perspectives incorporated economic struggles, military weaknesses, and external pressures from barbarian invasions.

scholars such as Bipan Chandra and Ranajit Guha, has challenged this view by highlighting the exploitative nature of colonial policies, the impact of economic drain, and the role of grassroots movements. Subaltern studies have further reshaped historiography by focusing on the contributions of marginalised communities in the struggle for independence, rather than solely on elite leaders.

scholars such as Bipan Chandra and Ranajit Guha, has challenged this view by highlighting the exploitative nature of colonial policies, the impact of economic drain, and the role of grassroots movements. Subaltern studies have further reshaped historiography by focusing on the contributions of marginalised communities in the struggle for independence, rather than solely on elite leaders.

- ◆ History connects the past, present, and future through knowledge and interpretation.
- ◆ It reveals the growth of civilizations, the evolution of ideas, and the consequences of events.
- ◆ Historiography refers to the study of how history is written, the methodologies employed by historians, and the interpretations they provide.
- ◆ The evolution of historical writing reflects the changing ways in which human societies have sought to understand and record their past.
- ◆ Various schools of historiography shape how history is interpreted by different groups of people.
- ◆ By engaging with both history and historiography, we can develop a more critical, informed, and reflective perspective on human civilisation.



Objective Questions

1. The word “history” is derived from which language?
2. What are the two dimensions of history?
3. Who is often referred to as the “Father of History”?
4. Which historiographical approach focuses on class struggle and economic systems?
5. Which historian emphasised the importance of primary sources and objectivity?
6. What is the primary challenge historians face in their work?
7. What does the term “la longue durée” refer to in historiography?
8. Who defined history as “the Biography of Great Men”?
9. Who defined history as “a continuous process of interaction between the historian and his facts”?
10. Who compared the historian’s task to a lutemaker’s craftsmanship?

Answers

1. Greek word *historia*
2. Historical Time and Space
3. Herodotus
4. Marxist Historiography
5. Leopold von Ranke
6. Bias and subjectivity
7. Long-term historical trends
8. Thomas Carlyle
9. E.H.Carr
10. Marc Bloch

Assignments

1. Define history and historiography. Explain their interrelationship with suitable examples.
2. Critically examine the various definitions of history provided by classical, medieval, and modern historians.
3. Describe the scope of history and its evolution from ancient political narratives to modern 'total history'.
4. Attempt to write the history of your learning centre. How is your narrative different from that of your classmates? How do issues such as bias, source limitations, and ethical considerations impact historical writing?

Reference

1. Bloch, Marc, *The Historian's Craft*, Manchester University Press, Manchester, 1992.
2. Braudel, Fernand, *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*. Harper & Row, New York, 1972.
3. Burke, Peter, *History and Social Theory*, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1992.
4. Carr, E. H., *What is History?*, Penguin Books, London, 1961.
5. Chakrabarty, Dipesh, *Provincializing Europe: Postcolonial Thought and Historical Difference*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 2000.
6. Chandra, Bipan, *Nationalism and Colonialism in Modern India*, Orient Longman, New Delhi, 1979.
7. E. Sreedharan, *Manual of Historical Research Methodology*, Centre for South Indian Studies, 2018.

Suggested Reading

1. Collingwood, R. G., *The Idea of History*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1994.
2. Guha, Ranajit, *Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India*, Oxford University Press, New Delhi, 1983.
3. Hobsbawm, Eric J., *On History*, Abacus, London, 1997.
4. Jenkins, Keith, *Re-thinking History*, Routledge, New York, 1991.
5. Thompson, E. P., *The Making of the English Working Class*, Pantheon Books, New York, 1963.
6. White, Hayden, *Metahistory: The Historical Imagination in Nineteenth-Century Europe*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, 1973.



UNIT

Quasi History-Past and History

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ differentiate between the concepts of “past” and “history”
- ◆ understand the meaning and characteristics of quasi history
- ◆ analyse evidence and context to differentiate history from quasi history
- ◆ distinguish the role of the historian in addressing quasi history

Prerequisites

The study of history is not only concerned with recording and interpreting past events but also differentiating between genuine historical analysis and quasi-history. The distinction between the past and history is crucial understanding how narratives are shaped, how myths are constructed, and how societies remember or distort events. This unit explores the concepts of quasi-history, the past, and history, and delves into the differentiation between these terms. By understanding these distinctions, we can better appreciate the nuances of historical scholarship and the challenges historians face in reconstructing and interpreting the past.

Keywords

Quasi history, Past, Evidence, Myth, Pseudoscience, Interpretation

Discussion

1.2.1 Differentiating Between the Past and History

A fundamental distinction exists between “the past” and “history.” While the past comprises everything that has ever happened, history is the interpreted, recorded, and structured account of past events. Understanding this differentiation is essential for recognising biases, gaps, and the subjectivity inherent in historical narratives.

The Past : An Objective Reality

The past refers to all events, actions, and experiences that have occurred before the present moment. It is an all-encompassing term that includes everything from the dawn of time to the immediate moments before now, even events that were never recorded or remembered. The past exists independently of human interpretation and is infinite and unchangeable. Moreover, the past is vast and complex, and no single narrative can capture its entirety.

History: A Constructed Interpretation

History is the human attempt to reconstruct and interpret the past. It is not merely a recounting of past events; it is an interpretive endeavour that seeks to explain why and how those events occurred and is thus based on available evidence, which may be incomplete or biased. Historical knowledge is always provisional and subject to revision. Different perspectives and methodologies influence how history is written. As new evidence comes to light and new methodologies are developed, our understanding of the past can change. History is not a static body of knowledge but a dynamic and evolving field. This means that historical narratives are always open to debate and reinterpretation.

1.2.2. Meaning of Quasi-History

Quasi-history refers to distorted, fictionalised, or ideologically-driven representations of the past that lack rigorous historical methodology. Unlike academic history, which is based on critical analysis of sources, quasi-history often involves selective storytelling, myth-making, and manipulation to serve political, cultural, or ideological ends.

1.2.2.1 Characteristics of Quasi-History

Lack of Evidence : Unlike genuine history, quasi-history is not grounded in reliable primary sources or critical scrutiny. It often relies on hearsay, anecdotal accounts, or fabricated documents that cannot withstand academic verification.

Ideological Bias : Quasi-history is frequently shaped by political, religious, or nationalistic agendas. Rather than seeking an objective account of past events, it aims to justify a particular ideology, reinforce national myths, or demonise specific groups.

Myth and Folklore : Many quasi-historical narratives rely on legends and folklore rather than documented facts. It may mythologise historical figures or events, attributing to them qualities or significance that are not supported by the evidence.

Selective Interpretation : Quasi-historians cherry-pick evidence to support their predetermined conclusions while ignoring or dismissing contradictory evidence. This approach results in a skewed and misleading representation of the past.

Pseudoscience and Conspiracy Theories: Some quasi-historical accounts promote

pseudoscientific claims or conspiracy theories about past events. Examples include theories that ancient civilizations had advanced technologies from extraterrestrial beings or that secret societies have orchestrated historical events for centuries.

Emotional and Nationalistic Appeal: Quasi-history is often designed to evoke strong emotional reactions. By appealing to national pride, historical grievances, or collective victimhood, it can mobilize public sentiment and reinforce group identities, even at the expense of historical accuracy.

Oversimplification of complex Events: Historical events are often complex and multifaceted, but quasi-history tends to oversimplify them into black-and-white narratives. It portrays certain figures as absolute heroes or villains without considering the nuances of their actions and circumstances.

1.2.2.2 Examples of Quasi-History

Pseudo-Archaeology : Claims about lost civilizations (e.g., Atlantis) without credible archaeological evidence. These narratives often rely on sensationalist claims rather than scholarly research.

Historical Revisionism for Political Gain: Distorting events like wars, genocides, or colonial histories to serve present-day ideologies. Some governments and political groups rewrite history to justify present-day policies or to vilify opponents. For example, Holocaust denial or the whitewashing of colonial atrocities serve political ends rather than historical truth.

Mythologised National Histories: Constructing exaggerated narratives of national origins or past glories. Many nations construct exaggerated narratives of their origins, portraying their ancestors as uniquely noble, heroic, or superior. Examples include the myth of Aryan supremacy in

Nazi Germany or the romanticised versions of medieval European chivalry.

Religious Historical Claims: Presenting religious texts as objective historical records without critical examination. Presenting religious texts as objective historical records without critical examination. For example, literal interpretations of biblical events such as Noah's Ark and Mahabharata events such as Kurukshetra war being treated as historical fact rather than religious allegory.

1.2.3 Differentiating Between History and Quasi-History

Differentiating between history and quasi-history requires critical analysis and a discerning eye. Both historians and readers must evaluate the sources, methods, and arguments presented in a narrative to determine its credibility and reliability. This involves asking questions such as:

- ◆ What evidence is being used, and how reliable is it?
- ◆ Are the arguments based on sound reasoning and methodology?
- ◆ Are there any biases or agendas that may be shaping the narrative?
- ◆ How does the narrative compare to other accounts of the same events?

The Role of Evidence

One of the key differences between history and quasi-history is the use of evidence. Genuine historical scholarship relies on a rigorous examination of primary and secondary sources, with a focus on accuracy, context, and corroboration. Quasi-history, on the other hand, may use evidence selectively or interpret it in ways that are not supported by the facts.



The Importance of Context

Context is crucial for understanding historical events and their significance. Historians strive to place events within their broader social, political, economic, and cultural contexts, recognising that no event occurs in isolation. Quasi-history, by contrast, may present events out of context or ignore important factors that shaped them.

The Role of Interpretation

Interpretation is an inherent part of historical scholarship, but it must be grounded in evidence and reasoned analysis. Historians acknowledge the limitations of their knowledge and the provisional nature of their conclusions. Quasi-history, however, may present interpretations as definitive truths, often without sufficient evidence or consideration of alternative viewpoints.

1.2.4 Role of Historians in Addressing Quasi-History

Quasi-history can be appealing for several reasons. It often presents a more engaging and dramatic narrative than traditional history,

making it more accessible to a wider audience. It feigns to provide a sense of certainty and clarity in a complex and uncertain world. Additionally, quasi-history may resonate with people's beliefs, values, or identities, reinforcing their worldview and providing a sense of meaning or purpose.

Historians, therefore, need to play a crucial role in distinguishing legitimate historical inquiry from quasi-historical distortions. Their work involves:

Critical Analysis of Sources: Verifying authenticity, cross-referencing accounts, and examining biases.

Promoting Historical Literacy: Educating the public on distinguishing between credible history and fabricated narratives.

Countering Misinformation: Addressing and debunking pseudo-historical claims.

Encouraging Multiple Perspectives: Recognising diverse viewpoints to provide a more comprehensive historical picture.

Recap

- ◆ The past encompasses everything that actually happened, independent of human interpretation.
- ◆ History is a selective reconstruction of the past, based on available evidence.
- ◆ Historical narratives are shaped by bias, perspective, and the information at hand.
- ◆ History is dynamic, evolving, and subject to reinterpretation and revision.
- ◆ Quasi-history lacks reliable sources and critical scholarly methods of investigation.

- ◆ It often promotes ideological bias, myth, nationalism, or political agendas.
- ◆ Legends and folklore are frequently presented as factual without proper verification.
- ◆ Events are oversimplified and distorted to fit emotional or national pride.
- ◆ Quasi-history employs pseudoscience and conspiracy theories to construct misleading representations of the past.
- ◆ Historians must challenge these distortions by promoting critical inquiry and public literacy.

Objective Questions

1. Which term refers to distorted, ideologically driven representations of the past?
2. What key factor differentiates genuine history from quasi-history?
3. What term describes false claims presented as science in pseudo-history?
4. What is the primary characteristic of quasi-history?
5. What is an example of historical revisionism for political gain?
6. What key challenges do historians face when reconstructing the past?
7. What role do historians play in countering misinformation?
8. Which type of bias commonly shapes quasi-historical narratives?

Answers

1. Quasi History
2. Rigorous use of reliable evidence



3. Pseudoscience
4. Selective storytelling and distortion of facts
5. Distorting events like wars or genocides to fit a political narrative
6. Availability and reliability of evidence
7. Verifying sources, promoting historical literacy, and debunking pseudo-historical claims
8. Ideological

Assignments

1. Differentiate between the past and history. Discuss why understanding this distinction is essential for historical scholarship.
2. Why is quasi-history appealing to the public? Using examples, analyse the factors that contribute to its popularity and the challenges historians face in countering it.
3. Analyse the role of evidence in historical research. Can evidence be misinterpreted to form quasi historical narratives?

Reference

1. Carr, E. H., *What is History?*, Penguin Books, London, 1961.
2. Collingwood, R. G., *The Idea of History*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1994.
3. Evans, Richard J., *In Defence of History*, Granta Books, London, 1997.
4. Foner, E., *Who Owns History? Rethinking the Past in a Changing World*, Hill and Wang, New York, 2002.
5. Jenkins, Keith, *Re-thinking History*, Routledge, New York, 1991.
6. Lowenthal, D, “Fabricating Heritage” in *History and Memory*, Vol.10, No.1, 1998.

Suggested Reading

1. Marwick, Arthur, *The New Nature of History: Knowledge, Evidence, Language*, Palgrave Macmillan, London, 2001.
2. Popper, K., *The Logic of Scientific Discovery*, Routledge, New York, 2008.
3. Spiegel, Gabrielle M., “History, Historicism, and the Social Logic of the Text in the Middle Ages”, in *Speculum*, Vol. 65, No.1, 1990.
4. Thapar, Romila, *The Past and Prejudice*, National Book Trust, New Delhi, 1975.
5. Tosh, J., *The Pursuit of History: Aims, Methods and New Directions in the Study of History*, Routledge, London, 2015.



UNIT

Historical Writings in Greece - Rome - China

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ evaluate the origins and developments of Historiography in Greece
- ◆ understand Hellenistic historiography as a transition to broader themes
- ◆ explain the origins and developments of Historiography in Rome
- ◆ examine the origins and developments of Historiography in China

Prerequisites

We already discussed that the word “History” originates from the Greek term ‘istoria,’ meaning inquiry. The first known writer to use this term to describe his work was Herodotus, often referred to as the father of history. The Greeks pioneered historical writing by moving beyond mere chronologies and mythical accounts, while the Romans refined and expanded the tradition, emphasising political and military narratives. Graeco-Roman historiography was driven by an interest in politics, moral lessons, and the role of great individuals in shaping history. Ancient Chinese on the other developed independently from its Greco-Roman counterpart, moral philosophy, governance, and dynastic continuity. Rooted in Confucian ideals, historical writing in China sought not only to record events but also to provide moral lessons for rulers and officials. This unit explores the origins, development, key figures, and distinctive features of Graeco-Roman and Chinese historiography, highlighting enduring influence on the study of history.

Keywords

Herodotus, Thucydides, Scientific History, Livy, Confucian, Twenty-Four Histories

Discussion

1.3.1 Origin of Historiography in Greece

1.3.1.1 Early Greek Historiography

Unlike earlier mythic and poetic traditions, Greek historiography sought to systematically investigate and record human events. This shift marked the beginning of history as a discipline distinct from mythology. Greek historiography began with logographers, early prose writers who compiled genealogies, myths, and ethnographic descriptions. Among them, Hecataeus of Miletus (c. 550–476 BCE) is notable for his *Genealogies*, which sought to rationalise mythological traditions. Additionally, Hellanicus of Lesbos (c. 5th century BCE) contributed by writing chronological histories and emphasising dating systems, moving towards a more structured historical narrative.

1.3.1.2. Herodotus: The Father of History

Herodotus (c. 484–425 BCE), often called “The Father of History,” authored *The Histories*. This work chronicles the Greco-Persian Wars and explores the cultures of the peoples involved. He was among the first to apply inquiry (*istoria*) to historical writing, incorporating geographical, ethnographic, and cultural descriptions. His method included travelling extensively across the ancient world Egypt, Persia, Babylon, and parts of Greece collecting firsthand accounts

such as oral testimonies, eyewitness accounts, local traditions, and stories. Herodotus aimed to explain not just what happened, but why events occurred. He explored motivations, decisions, and moral choices, linking events to broader human behaviour and divine influence. He often presented multiple versions of an event, allowing the reader to judge which seemed most credible.

Herodotus is admired for his vivid, engaging storytelling style. His writing includes anecdotes, speeches, and digressions, making the *Histories* read more like a literary epic than a dry chronicle. His prose is rich and descriptive, reflecting the oral tradition. He includes proverbs, myths, and moral reflections. The *Histories* are filled with digressions, sometimes straying far from the main narrative to explain the background of a custom, people, or earlier event.

However, his historical method lacked chronology and systematic analysis. He did not use precise dates or consistently structure events in a timeline. Similarly, he placed significant value on what people told him, even when he could not verify it, which naturally led to inaccuracies. Despite his admiration for foreign cultures, Herodotus frequently evaluated them through a Greek lens, sometimes portraying the Greeks as inherently superior. Despite all this, Herodotus’ emphasis on inquiry and narrative structure established the foundation for a more analytical approach to history.



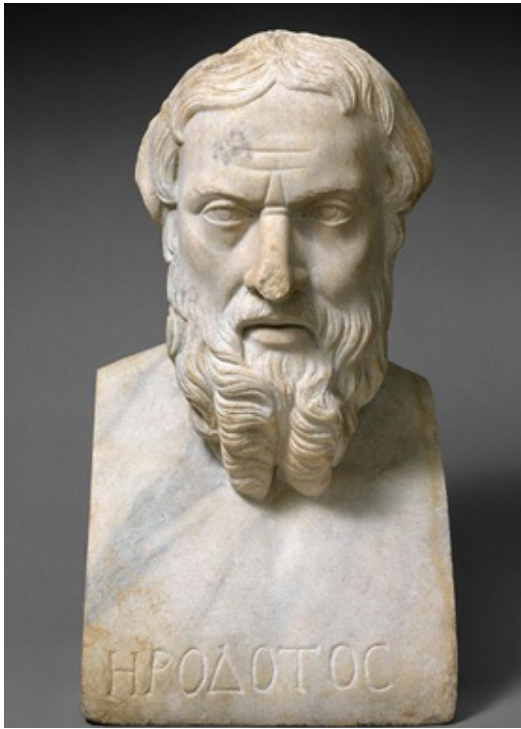


Fig. 1.3.1. Marble bust of Herodotus

1.3.1.3 Thucydides: The Father of Scientific History

The Peloponnesian War (431–404 BCE) was a protracted and devastating conflict between the two major Greek city-state alliances: the Delian League, led by Athens, and the Peloponnesian League, led by Sparta.

Thucydides (c. 460–400 BCE) a contemporary of Herodotus, advanced historiography by adopting a more critical and analytical approach. His work, *History of the Peloponnesian War*, focused on political and military events, emphasising factual accuracy and causation. Thucydides' methodology rejected divine explanations, instead attributing events to human decisions and natural forces. Unlike Herodotus, who sometimes incorporated folklore and supernatural explanations, Thucydides maintained a strict commitment to empirical evidence. His analysis of the Peloponnesian War was deeply political, examining the

motivations behind Athenian and Spartan actions. He emphasised cause-and-effect relationships in history, often analysing events in terms of fear, self-interest, and political calculation rather than chance or morality.

Regarding his style, Thucydides' prose is dense, formal, and packed with complex ideas. He avoided storytelling flourishes, aiming instead for clarity, precision, and seriousness. Thucydides also pioneered the use of speeches in historical writing, reconstructing them to reflect the perspectives and arguments of key figures. His famous "Melian Dialogue" demonstrated the harsh realities of power dynamics, reinforcing his belief in the primacy of strength in international relations. His work is organised within a roughly chronological framework, featuring a year-by-year account of events one of the first systematic efforts in historical chronology.

Although he endeavoured to be objective, Thucydides was an Athenian aristocrat and occasionally displayed a bias towards Athenian perspectives, particularly in his portrayal of Pericles. Similarly, he focused almost exclusively on political and military leaders, neglecting the experiences of common people, women, and slaves. Nevertheless, his critical approach, scepticism of official accounts, and emphasis on causation rather than mere description earned him the title of the "first scientific historian."

1.3.2 Hellenistic Historiography

The Hellenistic period, spanning roughly two centuries between Alexander's conquests and Rome's annexation of Egypt, marked significant advances in Greek historiography, as noted by Collingwood. First, the Greeks gradually shed their cultural particularism, breaking the rigid divide between Greek and Barbarian through widespread cultural

fusion. Greek language, customs, and manners spread across cities like Alexandria, Pergamum, Antioch, and Rhodes, while the Greeks themselves adopted certain Asiatic practices, encouraged by Alexander's own example. Second, the era witnessed the abandonment of city-state particularism, replaced by a broader worldview in which the vast empire from the Adriatic to the Indus was seen as sharing a single, unified history a Stoic-inspired idea that gave rise to the concept of universal history. Third, Greek historiography overcame methodological limits by moving beyond reliance on eyewitness testimony to adopt a "scissors-and-paste" approach, compiling material from earlier historians to create large-scale, cohesive narratives, a practice exemplified by Polybius. The Hellenistic period was marked by the spread of Greek culture across a vast territory stretching from Greece to Egypt, Persia, and parts of India. This era saw a remarkable flourishing of intellectual, literary, scientific, and philosophical activity, influenced by the mingling of Greek and Eastern cultures.



Fig. 1.3.2. Plaster cast of Thucydides

1.3.2.1 Polybius (c. 200–118 BCE)

Polybius is regarded as the most prominent historian of the Hellenistic era, having expanded Greek historiography beyond Greece and focusing on Rome's rise to power. Polybius' work *Histories* emphasised causality, eyewitness accounts, and practical lessons in governance. Like Thucydides, he was interested in causality the why and how of events not just the what. Polybius believed that history should serve a practical purpose. He argued that studying history could provide lessons for statesmen and military leaders, helping them understand the causes of success and failure. His pragmatic approach to history was rooted in the belief that human actions, rather than fate or divine intervention, shaped events. He proposed that societies cycle through six forms of government (monarchy → tyranny → aristocracy → oligarchy → democracy → mob rule), with Rome uniquely avoiding decay via its balanced constitution.

His style of writing was serious, dense, and logical rather than literary or poetic. He avoided dramatisation and moralising, focusing instead on accuracy, rational analysis, and political explanation. His prose is often considered dry and repetitive, but this serves his didactic purpose. He organised the narrative chronologically and thematically, using an annalistic structure (year by year), while sometimes digressing to analyse events or systems.

Despite his innovations, Polybius focused almost entirely on elite politics, diplomacy, and military history. He paid little attention to social, economic, or cultural life, and largely ignored women, common people, and non-political issues.

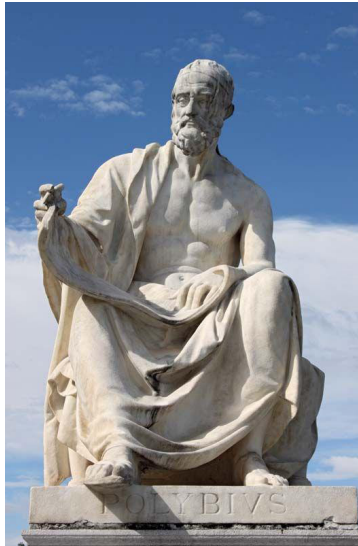


Fig. 1.3.3. Statue of Polybius

Hellenistic historiography was characterised by a greater emphasis on analysis, cross-cultural interactions, and pragmatic lessons. These historians sought to provide a comprehensive and interconnected view of history, reflecting the increasingly cosmopolitan nature of the Hellenistic world. This period marked a transition from the classical focus on city-states to a broader, more global historical approach, influencing later Roman historians.

1.3.3. Historiography in Rome

1.3.3.1 Livy: The National Historian

Livy (c. 59 BCE–17 CE) composed *History of Rome*, also referred to as *Ab Urbe Condita* in the original Latin, a monumental history of Rome from its founding to his own time. His work was deeply moralistic, emphasising Rome's virtues and decline. The work, consisting of 142 books, covers the period from the legends concerning the arrival of Aeneas and the refugees from the fall of Troy to the founding of the city in 753 BCE, the overthrow of the Roman monarchy in 509 BCE, and down to Livy's own time, during the reign of the emperor

Augustus Caesar.

While not always critically rigorous, Livy's narrative style and patriotic themes shaped Roman historical consciousness. He aimed to instil a sense of Roman identity by glorifying the past while subtly critiquing contemporary moral decay. His history was structured around moral lessons, contrasting Rome's early virtues with later corruption. He relied on earlier sources, including annal and oral traditions, but often dramatised events to reinforce his themes. Livy's narrative is episodic and often structured around conflict and resolution, creating a compelling historical arc. He showed great reverence for religion, incorporating many omens and superstitions. Livy rarely used original sources or applied critical methods, avoiding analysis of causes or conditions. His work reflects a patriotic and aristocratic bias, often favouring Rome and its elite. Livy's history, written in rich Augustan prose, was valued more for its storytelling than for accuracy. His vivid characters, powerful scenes, and grand style captivated readers, shaping lasting views of Rome despite his biases and factual errors.

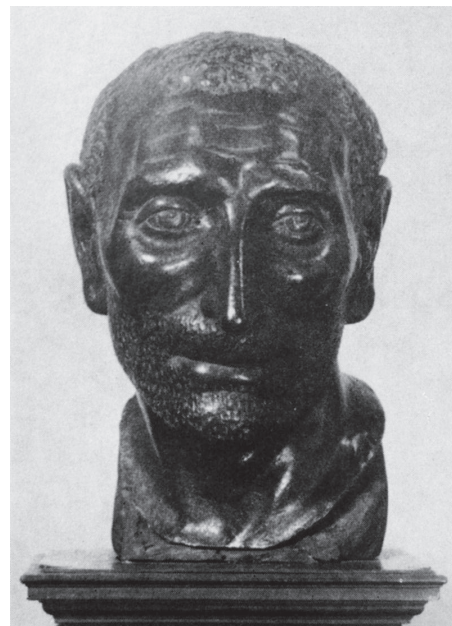


Fig.1.3.4. Bust of Titus Livy

Although Livy lacked the critical

methodology of Thucydides, his ability to craft compelling narratives that blended fact, legend, and literary art captured the imagination of Roman readers. His history became a key text for Roman education and continued to shape European historiography well into the Renaissance. His depiction of Rome's legendary past, particularly figures like Romulus, Numa, and Hannibal, remains a cornerstone of Roman historical tradition.

1.3.3.2 Tacitus: The Critical Historian

Publius Cornelius Tacitus (c. 56–120 CE) is renowned for his critical and penetrating analysis of Roman politics. Works like *Annals* and *Histories* scrutinise the reigns of emperors, exposing corruption and tyranny. In general, his works provide a critical account of the early Roman Empire, emphasising the dangers of autocracy. *Histories* recounts the reigns of Roman emperors from Galba to Domitian (68–96 CE), centring on the Flavian dynasty, although only four and a half of the original twelve or fourteen books have survived. Serving as a counterpart, *Annals* traces the rule of earlier emperors from the Julian line: Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, and Nero (14–68 CE), with twelve of its initial sixteen or eighteen books still remaining. His other works include *Dialogues on Orators* and *Agricola and de Germania*.

Tacitus' historical methodology is marked by his sharp analysis of power dynamics, his moralistic tone, and his use of dramatic irony. He portrayed emperors such as Tiberius, Nero, and Domitian as emblematic of Rome's decline, emphasising the erosion of senatorial authority under imperial rule. His depiction of figures like Germanicus and Agricola contrasted noble virtues with the corruption of the court, illustrating his belief in the moral consequences of unchecked power. Tacitus mainly drew from senatorial records (*acta senatus*), imperial archives, memoirs, and earlier historians like Pliny the Elder

and Cluvius Rufus.

However, it can be seen that his senatorial bias and nostalgia for the Republic led him to interpret events through a pessimistic and moralising lens. His historical writing, though rich in stylistic brilliance and vivid character portrayals, compromises historical accuracy. His disdain for emperors (especially Tiberius and Domitian) colours his accounts. Modern scholars argue that Tiberius was more competent than Tacitus admits. His focus on emperors, senators, and court intrigues meant he largely ignored the experiences of ordinary Romans, women (except in elite contexts), and provincial life.

Drawing from various sources like histories, speeches, letters, and public records, he often cites them critically; yet his bias, especially against Roman emperors, narrows his scope and distorts his judgments. Tacitus' writing style is eloquent, epigrammatic, and sharp, making his works some of the most memorable in Latin literature. His emphasis on psychological depth, political intrigue, and moral lessons established him as one of the greatest historians of antiquity, whose influence extends into modern political thought and historical analysis.

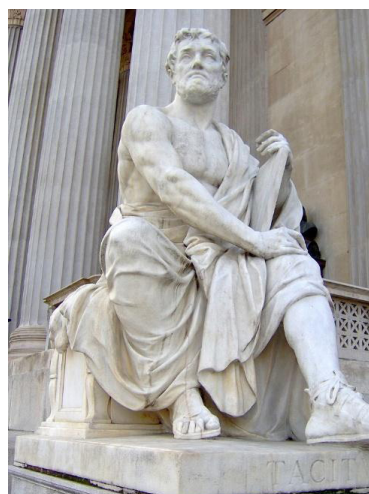


Fig.1.3.5. Statue of Tacitus

1.3.4 Limitations and Criticisms of Graeco-Roman Historiography

Collingwood observes that classical Graeco-Roman historiography strongly embraced the humanistic aspect of history by focusing on human actions, intentions, decisions, and their outcomes. Although divine intervention was recognised, it played a limited role, with primary importance given to human will and responsibility. This approach was grounded in the philosophical belief that individuals possess the freedom to choose and pursue their goals, suggesting that history unfolds through conscious human effort. As a result, historical events were interpreted as products of human initiative, placing full responsibility for the course of events on human agents.

While Graeco-Roman historiography laid the foundation for Western historical writing, it was not without its limitations and criticisms. These shortcomings reflect the cultural, intellectual, and methodological constraints of the time, as well as the personal biases of individual historians.

Many historians, particularly Livy and Herodotus, blended historical fact with myth, exaggeration, or patriotic bias. Roman historians often wrote with an agenda, either glorifying Rome's past or criticising contemporary politics, leading to subjective narratives. Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*, for example, celebrated Rome's moral and military achievements while downplaying its flaws.

While Thucydides and Polybius sought to establish critical methodologies, many historians relied on second-hand accounts or exaggerated speeches, undermining historical accuracy. The lack of systematic archival research and scientific chronology also limited the reliability of their works.

Another criticism is the lack of a comprehensive social history. Graeco-Roman historians focused predominantly on political and military events, often neglecting the experiences of lower classes, women, and marginalised groups. One could even argue that Graeco-Roman historiography often attributed historical change to the actions of “great men” rather than broader social, economic, or environmental factors. Their works were also shaped by elite perspectives, limiting their objectivity.

Many Greco-Roman historians wrote for aristocratic or political audiences, leading to histories that justified ruling powers rather than presenting unbiased accounts. Some narratives emphasised moral lessons over factual accuracy, blending historical events with didactic storytelling. This tendency contributed to a lack of rigorous source verification, as many accounts were compiled from oral traditions or previous historians without critical cross-examination. Despite these shortcomings, Graeco-Roman historiography provided a foundation for future historians, who would later refine and expand historical methodologies.

1.3.5 Historiography in Ancient China

1.3.5.1 Confucius and Moral Governance

Confucius (551–479 BCE) is not traditionally considered a historian, but his influence on Chinese historiography is profound. He is credited with compiling and editing the *Chunqiu* (*Spring and Autumn Annals*), which became a model for later historical writing. Confucius emphasised the moral and ethical dimensions of history, believing that historical records should serve as a guide for proper governance and virtuous leadership. His teachings inspired later historians to adopt a didactic approach, using history as a tool to instruct rulers and reinforce Confucian values.

Confucius' approach to historiography also involved selective emphasis. He believed that certain events should be highlighted to reinforce moral lessons, while others could be omitted if they did not contribute to the greater good. This selective moralisation of history influenced the structure and focus of later Chinese historical works, particularly in the official dynastic histories.

1.3.5.2 Szuma Ch'ien: The Father of Chinese Historiography

Szuma Ch'ien (c. 145–86 BCE) is often regarded as the greatest Chinese historian. His monumental work, the *Shih chi* (Historical Record), is a comprehensive history of China from the mythical Yellow Emperor to his own time in the Han dynasty. Moreover, he established a format for historical works that has been followed by historians down to modern times, which can be termed the “annals + monograph + biography” format.

The *Shih chi* is divided into five sections: Basic Annals, Chronological Tables, Treatises on Institutions, Hereditary Houses, and Biographies. This innovative format allows for a multi-perspective approach to history, emphasising both grand political narratives and the lives of individuals. His emphasis on individual agency and moral complexity set him apart from earlier historians who focused primarily on official state records. Szuma Ch'ien focused on individuals, including emperors, generals, scholars, and commoners, emphasising their actions and moral choices. Despite writing under the Han Dynasty, Szuma Ch'ien did not shy away from criticising rulers and highlighting their flaws, demonstrating his commitment to historical truth.

Szuma Ch'ien work set the foundation for Chinese historical writing, establishing a tradition that balanced factual accuracy with literary elegance and philosophical

depth. His *Shih chi* profoundly influenced later historians, including Pan Ku, Sima Guang, and those responsible for the dynastic histories, which gradually developed into the *Twenty-Four Histories*.



Fig.1.3.6. Portrait of Szuma Ch'ien

1.3.5.3 Pan Ku and Pan Chao: Han Historians

Following Szuma Ch'ien, historians of the Han Dynasty continued to refine historiographical traditions. Pan Ku (32–92 CE) wrote the *Book of Han* (*Hanshu*), a continuation of *Shih chi* that focused on the Western Han period. Pan Ku adhered to the historiographical model set by Szuma Ch'ien but placed a greater emphasis on Confucian moral judgments and centralised governance. Unlike Szuma Ch'ien's universal history, the *Hanshu* focused on a single dynasty, establishing the model for dynastic histories.

Another significant historian of this period was Pan Chao (c. 49–120 CE), Pan Ku's sister, who completed the *Hanshu* after his death. She also authored *Lessons for Women* (*Nü Jie*), providing moral and educational guidance for women in Confucian society. Pan Chao's contribution ensured the completion of one of the most important historical texts in Chinese history, further reinforcing the role of women in intellectual and scholarly traditions.



Fig.1.3.7 Pan Ku as depicted in a 1921 book

Fig. 1.3.8 Pan Chao as depicted in a 1690 book

1.3.5.4. The Tradition of Dynastic Histories

During the successive dynasties, Chinese historiography became increasingly institutionalised. Official dynastic histories, known as the *Twenty-Four Histories*, were compiled by court-appointed historians to document the reigns of emperors. These works, such as the *Book of the Later Han* (*Hou Hanshu*) and the *History of the Jin Dynasty* (*Jinshu*), followed the *Shih chi* framework but adapted it to contemporary needs.

The tradition of official historiography reached its peak during the Tang and Song Dynasties, with historians meticulously compiling records, edicts, and events. These dynastic histories served not only as records of the past but also as tools for legitimising ruling regimes, promoting Confucian values, and providing moral and political lessons for future generations. Although these histories were invaluable for preserving knowledge, they were often influenced by political considerations, as historians worked under imperial supervision.

1.3.5.5. Limitations and Criticisms of Chinese Historiography

Despite its meticulous documentation, Chinese historiography had several limitations. The strong influence of Confucian ideology often led to moralised and didactic narratives, prioritising ethical lessons over objective analysis. Additionally, historians worked under imperial patronage, which sometimes resulted in censorship or historical revisionism to align with the ruling dynasty's interests. The focus on official records and elite figures also meant that the experiences of common people, women, and marginalised groups were often overlooked. Moreover, the emphasis on continuity and dynastic legitimacy sometimes led to an oversimplified portrayal of historical events, downplaying internal conflicts and social struggles.

Another key limitation was the lack of critical historical methodology. Unlike modern historiography, which emphasises source criticism and multiple perspectives, ancient Chinese historians often relied on existing records without questioning their

accuracy or bias. This reliance on official documents sometimes led to distortions, especially when rulers sought to shape historical narratives to justify their rule.

Recap

- ◆ Graeco-Roman historiography represents the foundation of Western historical writing.
- ◆ Emerging in ancient Greece and later evolving in Rome, it laid the groundwork for how history was recorded, analysed, and interpreted.
- ◆ Greek historiography distinguished history from mythology through systematic investigation of events.
- ◆ Hellenistic historians expanded their focus from city-states to broader, interconnected histories.
- ◆ Roman historiography adapted Greek methods to emphasise patriotism and civic morality.
- ◆ Greek influence shaped Roman historical writing, blending ideals with state-centred narratives.
- ◆ Ancient Chinese historiography was grounded in Confucian ideals and official state records.
- ◆ Chinese historians prioritised moral lessons, governance, and accurate chronological recording.
- ◆ Szuma Chien pioneered comprehensive historical records, influencing later Chinese historiography.
- ◆ Dynastic histories refined the Chinese historical method with a moral and political focus.

Objective Questions

1. Who is often referred to as the “Father of History”?
2. Who wrote the *History of the Peloponnesian War*?



3. What was the main subject of Polybius' *Histories*?
4. Name the important work of Titus Livy.
5. What is the name of Szuma Ch'ien's monumental work?
6. Which Chinese historian completed the *Hanshu* after her brother's death?
7. Who proposed that societies go through six forms of government?
8. What were the Twenty-Four Histories?

Answers

1. Herodotus
2. Thucydides
3. The Rise of the Roman Empire
4. *Ab Urbe Condita* translated as History of Rome
5. *Shih chi*
6. Pan Chao
7. Polybius
8. Official Chinese ruling dynastic histories compiled by court-appointed historians

Assignments

1. Compare and analyse the role of moral lessons in Graeco-Roman and Chinese historiography.
2. Critically evaluate the limitations of Graeco-Roman historiography.

How did the cultural and intellectual context of the time influence the way history was written?

3. Szuma Ch'ien is often regarded as the "Father of Chinese Historiography." Examine the structure and content of his work, *Shih chi*. How did his approach to history differ from earlier traditions?
4. Evaluate the strengths and limitations of Polybius's historical methodology.
5. Discuss the historiographical contributions of Pan Ku.

Reference

1. Pan Ku, "The Book of Han (Hanshu)", translated excerpts in *Early Chinese Texts: A Bibliographical Guide*, edited by Michael Loewe, University of California Press, California, 1993.
2. Collingwood, R. G., *The Idea of History*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1994
3. Hardy, Grant, *Worlds of Bronze and Bamboo: Sima Qian's Conquest of History*, Columbia University Press, New York, 1999.
4. Herodotus, *The Histories*, translated by Aubrey de Sélincourt, Penguin Classics, London, 2003.
5. Livy, *The History of Rome*, translated by Betty Radice, Penguin Classics, London, 2002.
6. Marincola, John, *A Companion to Greek and Roman Historiography*, Wiley-Blackwell, Massachusetts, 2011.
7. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Blackswan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Momigliano, Arnaldo, *The Classical Foundations of Modern Historiography*, University of California Press, California, 1990.
2. Polybius, *The Histories*, translated by Robin Waterfield, Oxford University Press, London, 2010.
3. Shankman, Steven, and Stephen W. Durrant, *Early China/Ancient Greece: Thinking Through Comparisons*, SUNY Press, New York, 2002.
4. Watson, Burton, *Ssu-ma Ch'ien: Grand Historian of China*, Columbia University Press, New York, 1963.
5. Tacitus, *The Annals of Imperial Rome*, translated by Michael Grant, Penguin Classics, London, 2009.
6. Thucydides, *The History of the Peloponnesian War*, translated by Richard Crawley, Modern Library, London, 1982.



UNIT

Nature of Medieval Historical Writings

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ understand the evolution of medieval historiography
- ◆ analyse St. Augustine's theological framework of history as presented in *The City of God*
- ◆ evaluate Ibn Khaldun's scientific approach to history in *Muqaddimah*
- ◆ discuss the key differences between Christian and Islamic historiography during the medieval period

Prerequisites

The medieval period witnessed a unique transformation in the nature of historical writings, shaped by religious, philosophical, and socio-political influences. Historiography during this era was often intertwined with theological perspectives, moral didactics, and a limited reliance on empirical verification. Two of the most influential figures who shaped medieval historical thought were St. Augustine (354-430 CE) in the Christian West and Ibn Khaldun (1332-1406 CE) in the Islamic world. Separated by time, geography, and religious tradition, both thinkers made enduring contributions to the philosophy and methodology of history. This unit explores their works, and the impact of their historical writings.

Keywords

Christian Historiography, Islamic Historiography, City of God, Muqaddimah, Asabiyyah



Discussion

1.4.1. St. Augustine and Christian Historiography

The earliest Christian historical writings were universal histories created to fulfil the need to incorporate Biblical history, often lacking precise chronological details, into a broader ancient timeline that encompassed a vast pre-Christian past spanning multiple eras. Additionally, the political changes in Europe, particularly the rise of large feudal domains and monarchies, influenced historical writing. As a result, historiography took on the role of reconciling Christian traditions with secular historical narratives. The influence of St. Augustine ensured that history was primarily viewed as linear, moving toward a divine end the ultimate salvation of mankind.

1.4.1.1. Theological Framework of History

St. Augustine, one of the most profound thinkers of late antiquity, conceptualised history within a theological framework. His seminal work, *De Civitate Dei Contra Paganos* (*The City of God*), written between 413 and 426 CE, was composed in response to the sack of Rome by the Visigoths in 410 CE, an event that shook the Roman world and led many to question the role of Christianity in protecting the empire.

The City of God is not a conventional history but a theological and philosophical interpretation of human history. Augustine contrasts two cities: the *City of God* (*Civitas Dei*) and the *City of Man* (*Civitas Terrena*). *The City of God* represents the spiritual community of those who live according to God's will, while the *City of Man* symbolises the earthly realm dominated by sin and temporal pursuits.

Augustine viewed history as linear and teleological, progressing according to God's divine plan toward the ultimate salvation of mankind. This perspective contrasts with the cyclical view of history that asserted that history had a definitive beginning (Creation) and end (the Last Judgment), as seen in the Graeco-Roman tradition.

For Augustine, historical events are not random but are part of God's grand design. He emphasises the importance of understanding history through the lens of faith, arguing that the true meaning of historical events can only be grasped by recognising their role in the divine plan. This teleological view of history would profoundly influence Christian historiography throughout the medieval period and beyond.

1.4.1.2. Influence on Historical Writings

St. Augustine's influence on medieval historiography was profound, particularly in the Christian monastic tradition. Medieval chroniclers often structured their works around biblical narratives, viewing historical events as manifestations of divine justice. Some key aspects of Augustinian historiography in the Middle Ages include:

1. Monastic Chronicles : Medieval monks recorded history primarily in annals and chronicles, often blending biblical interpretation with historical fact. Miracles, saints' lives, and moral lessons were often interwoven with historical accounts, reflecting Augustine's emphasis on history as a cosmic struggle between the *City of God* and the *City of Man*.

2. Universal History : Augustine's vision inspired medieval historians such as Bede (673-735 CE) and Otto of Freising

(1114-1158 CE) to frame history within a universal Christian perspective. This universal perspective not only reinforced the idea of history as a divine process but also helped to shape the medieval worldview, where political and religious events were deeply intertwined and understood within a theological context.

3. Moralistic Interpretations: The decline of empires and political upheavals were often explained through the lens of divine retribution or providence, reinforcing religious teachings. For example, Augustine had rejected the pagan notion that Rome fell because Christianity weakened the empire, instead arguing that moral corruption and divine judgment were responsible. Events such as the Black Death (1347–1351) were often interpreted in religious terms, seen as divine punishment for human sinfulness. Similarly, many medieval historians, including William of Tyre, framed the Crusades as a divine struggle between Christendom and Islam, aligning with Augustine's concept of a cosmic battle between the forces of God and the forces of earthly corruption. Successes in battle were seen as signs of divine favour, while defeats were interpreted as punishment for Christian moral failings.

1.4.2 Ibn Khaldun and Islamic Historiography

Ibn Khaldun's approach to history is characterised by his emphasis on empirical observation and rational analysis. He sought to identify the underlying causes and patterns of historical events, moving beyond mere chronicling to develop a science of society. Central to his philosophy is the concept of *asabiyyah* (social cohesion or group solidarity), which he identifies as the driving force behind the rise and fall of civilisations. History, for Ibn Khaldun, is cyclical, with states passing through stages: rise, consolidation, decay, and collapse.

Ibn Khaldun's style integrates ideas from Islamic theology, classical philosophy, economics, politics, and geography. The *Muqaddimah* is systematically organised into chapters that discuss society, economy, education, urbanisation, and leadership. He builds arguments gradually, using reasoned deduction and examples from history and contemporary experience. His Arabic is formal, precise, and elegant, though at times dense, especially when explaining abstract or technical ideas.

Ibn Khaldun's methodology is groundbreaking in its emphasis on critical analysis and the rejection of uncritical acceptance of historical sources. He advocates for a rigorous examination of evidence, considering the reliability of sources and the plausibility of their accounts. This approach marks a significant departure from the more anecdotal and uncritical historiography of his predecessors.

1.4.2.1 Influence on Historical Writings

Ibn Khaldun's methodology had a lasting impact on Islamic and later Western historiography. Some of the key aspects of his historiographical approach include:

- 1. Asabiyyah (Social Cohesion):** One of Ibn Khaldun's key contributions was his theory of *Asabiyyah*, or group solidarity. Ibn Khaldun argued that civilizations follow a cyclical pattern of growth, prosperity, decline, and renewal. According to him, *asabiyyah* is strongest among nomadic and tribal societies, enabling them to conquer and establish new dynasties. However, as these societies settle and become more urbanised, *asabiyyah* weakens, leading to decadence and eventual decline. This cyclical view of

history was adopted by numerous scholars from the Ottoman period to the Enlightenment thinkers of Europe.

2. Critical analysis of Society:

He introduced economic, demographic, and geographical factors as integral to understanding historical developments, prefiguring modern social sciences. He critically studied taxation, trade, labour, and wealth distribution as key forces in historical change. He argued

that excessive taxation weakens states by reducing economic productivity. Al-Maqrizi (1364–1442) from Egypt applied Ibn Khaldun's economic theories to explain Egypt's economic struggles, taxation problems, and social changes. Similarly, Montesquieu's theory of how environmental and social factors shape political institutions resembles Ibn Khaldun's emphasis on geography and social cohesion.

Recap

- ◆ Medieval historical writing was shaped by intellectual and religious contexts.
- ◆ Augustine emphasised the divine plan, portraying events as manifestations of God's will.
- ◆ Ibn Khaldun introduced a rational, analytical approach that emphasised human agency.
- ◆ *The City of God* blended theology, philosophy, and historical narrative.
- ◆ Augustine framed history as a struggle between good and evil.
- ◆ Ibn Khaldun linked the fate of civilisation to social and economic forces.
- ◆ He promoted cause-and-effect analysis over uncritical narration.
- ◆ His work influenced studies on state formation and political power.
- ◆ Augustine and Khaldun represent theological and empirical historiographical traditions.
- ◆ Their ideas bridge providential history and early scientific historical inquiry.

Objective Questions

1. What are the two cities described in *The City of God*?
2. What does the “City of Man” represent in Augustine’s work?
3. What is the key difference between Augustine’s view of history and the Graeco-Roman tradition?
4. Which medieval historians were influenced by Augustine’s framework of universal history?
5. Which work is considered Ibn Khaldun’s masterpiece?
6. What is *asabiyyah* in Ibn Khaldun’s philosophy?
7. What was Ibn Khaldun’s view on excessive taxation?
8. Which European thinker’s ideas on geography and society were influenced by Ibn Khaldun?
9. What major difference exists between St. Augustine’s and Ibn Khaldun’s approaches to history?
10. Which Egyptian historian applied Ibn Khaldun’s economic theories to Egypt’s problems?

Answers

1. The City of Man and the City of God
2. The earthly realm dominated by sin and temporal pursuits
3. Augustine viewed history as linear and teleological, while the Graeco-Roman tradition saw it as cyclical.
4. Bede and Otto of Freising
5. *Muqaddimah*

6. Social cohesion or group solidarity
7. It weakens states by reducing economic productivity.
8. Montesquieu
9. Augustine focused on divine plans, while Ibn Khaldun focused on empirical analysis
10. Al-Maqrizi

Assignments

1. Discuss the impact of *The City of God* on medieval Christian historiography. How did St. Augustine's theological interpretation of history influence medieval chroniclers and their understanding of historical events?
2. Analyse Ibn Khaldun's concept of *Asabiyyah* (social cohesion). How does this theory explain the rise and fall of civilizations?
3. Examine the role of religion in shaping medieval historiography. How did Christian and Islamic historians incorporate theological perspectives into their historical narratives, and what were the key differences in their approaches?

Reference

1. Al-Azmeh, Aziz, *Ibn Khaldun: An Essay in Reinterpretation*, Central European University Press, Budapest, 2003.
2. Augustine, St. *The City of God (De Civitate Dei)*, translated by Henry Bettenson, Penguin Classics, London, 2003.
3. Bede, *Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, translated by Leo Sherley-Price, Penguin Classics, London, 1990.

4. Bentley, J. H., *The Shape of World History According to Augustine and Ibn Khaldun. Journal of World History, Vol.8, Issue 2, 1997.*
5. Brown, Peter, *Augustine of Hippo: A Biography*, University of California Press, California, 2000.
6. Gibb, H. A. R., *The Islamic Background of Ibn Khaldun's Political Theory. Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies, Vol.7, Issue 1, 1933.*

Suggested Reading

1. Hodgson, M. G. S., *The Venture of Islam: Conscience and History in a World Civilization*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1974.
2. Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah: An Introduction to History*, translated by Franz Rosenthal, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1967.
3. Markus, R.A, *Saeculum: History and Society in the Theology of St. Augustine*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1970.
4. Otto of Freising, *The Two Cities: A Chronicle of Universal History to the Year 1146 AD*, translated by Charles Christopher Mierow, Columbia University Press, New York, 1928.
5. Spiegel, Gabrielle M., *The Past as Text: The Theory and Practice of Medieval Historiography*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, 1997.



UNIT

Ancient Indian Historiography

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the unique characteristics of ancient Indian historiography and how it differs from the Western tradition of historical writing
- ◆ explain various sources of ancient Indian history to understand their historical significance
- ◆ evaluate how Buddhist and Jaina traditions recorded history

Prerequisites

The study of ancient Indian history is both fascinating and challenging, primarily due to the unique nature of its sources and the ways in which history has been recorded and interpreted over millennia. Unlike the Western tradition, where historiography, the writing of history based on critical analysis of a long and continuous lineage dating back to ancient Greece and Rome, ancient India presents a different paradigm. Indian historiography is characterised by a rich tapestry of literary, inscriptional, and archaeological sources, but it also poses significant challenges for historians attempting to reconstruct the past.

One of the most striking features of ancient Indian historiography is the relative absence of what might be termed “historical texts” in the Western sense. Ancient India did not produce works like Herodotus’ *Histories* or Thucydides’ *History of the Peloponnesian War*, which are explicitly concerned with recording and analysing historical events. Instead, Indian historical consciousness is embedded in a variety of texts that are primarily religious, philosophical, or literary in nature. This has led to a situation where the line between history and other forms of knowledge is often blurred, making it difficult to extract straightforward historical narratives.

It may seem easy, and even fashionable to dismiss these works on account of their limitations. However, it is important to recognise that their significance has been a topic of debate for almost two centuries. A thoughtful analysis of the traditions in which these texts emerged can deepen our understanding of history.

Keywords

Danastutis, Itihasas, Puranas, Bharatvarsha, Prasastis, Charitas, kalpa sutra, Tripitaka, Jatakas

Discussion

1.5.1. The Vedic *Danastutis* as a Source of Historiography

The Vedas, composed between 1500 BCE and 500 BCE, are the oldest known scriptures of India. They consist of four primary texts: *Rig veda*, *Yajur veda*, *Sama veda*, and *Atharva veda*. While the Vedas primarily serve as religious and philosophical texts, they also contain valuable historical insights.

Among the vast corpus of Vedic literature, the *Danastutis* (literally “praises of gifts”) occupy a unique place as potential sources for reconstructing the socio-political and economic history of ancient India. Found primarily in the *Rigveda*, the *Danastutis* are hymns or verses that celebrate the generosity of patrons, particularly kings and chieftains, who gifted cows, horses, gold, and other valuables to the priests (Brahmins) in return for their ritual services.

The *Danastutis* served a dual purpose. Firstly, they reinforced the social hierarchy by glorifying the role of the king as a protector and benefactor, thereby legitimising the priestly class (Brahmins) as intermediaries between the divine and the human. Secondly,

they acted as a form of public record, documenting the generosity of patrons and ensuring their legacy.

The *Danastutis* also provided geographical information. Some of them mention the names of rivers, regions, and tribes, offering clues about the geographical spread of early Vedic culture. For example, the *Sapta Sindhu* (land of the seven rivers) is frequently referenced, indicating the northwestern region of the Indian subcontinent as the heartland of early Vedic civilisation.

1.5.2. The Itihasa-Purana Tradition

The *Itihasa-Purana* tradition is one of the most distinctive and influential frameworks for understanding history in ancient India. Unlike the Western concept of history, which is often based on chronological narratives and empirical evidence, the *Itihasa-Purana* tradition blends history, mythology, cosmology, and moral philosophy into a cohesive worldview. The term *Itihasa* translates to “thus indeed it was” and refers to narratives of the past, while *Purana* means “ancient” or “old” and encompasses a vast body of texts that preserve genealogies,



cosmologies, and religious teachings. Together, these traditions form a unique approach to historiography that has shaped Indian historical consciousness for millennia.

1.5.2.1 The Itihasas

Itihasa refers to the great narratives of the past, particularly the *Mahabharata* and the *Ramayana*. These texts are considered “history” in the Indian tradition, but they are not histories in the modern sense. Instead, they are epic tales that combine historical events with mythological, moral, and philosophical elements.

The *Ramayana*, attributed to Valmiki, narrates the life of Rama, the ideal king and incarnation of Vishnu. It follows Rama’s exile, the abduction of Sita by Ravana, and his eventual victory, highlighting ideals of duty, loyalty, and governance. The epic reflects early Indian socio-political structures, including monarchical rule, kinship ties, and governance based on *dharma* (righteousness). Various versions of the *Ramayana* exist, including adaptations in regional languages that provide insights into the historical and cultural evolution of different regions. The epic also describes the geography of ancient India, mentioning regions like Kosala (Rama’s kingdom), Kishkindha (the monkey kingdom), and Lanka (Ravana’s kingdom). These descriptions, though not always historically accurate, offer insights into the cultural and political landscape of the time and provide clues for historical and archaeological studies.

The *Mahabharata*, attributed to the sage Vyasa, is often described as a historical narrative embedded in a mythological framework. The central event of the epic, the Kurukshetra War, is believed by some scholars to have a historical basis, possibly reflecting a real conflict between ancient tribes or kingdoms. The *Mahabharata* is not just a story of war but a profound

exploration of *dharma* (duty, righteousness) and the complexities of human existence. The *Bhagavad Gita*, a part of the *Mahabharata*, is a philosophical dialogue that addresses timeless questions about duty, morality, and the nature of the self. The *Mahabharata* has played a central role in shaping Indian historical consciousness. Its narratives have been retold and reinterpreted in countless regional languages and artistic forms.

Both epics contain genealogies of kings and sages, such as the lineage of the Ikshvaku dynasty to which Rama belongs in the *Ramayana* and the lineages of the Kuru and Yadu dynasties in the *Mahabharata*. In general, the *Mahabharata* contains the genealogies of the lunar (*Chandravamsa*) lineage, while the *Ramayana* contains the genealogy of the solar (*Suryavamsa*) lineage. Several ruling families in the early medieval period (c. 7th century CE) traced their descent from these lineages. These genealogies, while often idealised, provide a framework for understanding the political and social structures of ancient India.

The *Ramayana* and *Mahabharata* have played a crucial role in shaping Indian historical consciousness. Their narratives have been passed down through generations, influencing art, literature, and religious practices. The enduring popularity of both epics reflects their ability to resonate with audiences across time and space, making them a living tradition rather than static historical documents.

1.5.2.2 The Puranas

The *Puranas*, composed between 300 CE and 1500 CE, serve as a significant historical source, preserving genealogies, cosmologies, legends, and cultural traditions. Composed primarily in Sanskrit, the *Puranas* are encyclopedic in scope, covering a wide range of topics, including cosmology, genealogy, mythology, philosophy, and ritual practices.

The term *Purana* means “ancient” or “old,” and these texts are traditionally regarded as *Smriti* (that which is remembered), as opposed to *Shruti* (that which is heard, i.e., the Vedas).

They are classified into *Mahapuranas* (major Puranas) and *Upapuranas* (minor Puranas), with eighteen major Puranas being the most prominent. The eighteen major Puranas are traditionally categorised based on their devotional focus:

- ◆ Dedicated to Vishnu: Bhagavata, Vishnu, Narada, Garuda, Padma, and Varaha Puranas
- ◆ Dedicated to Shiva: Shiva, Linga, Skanda, Agni, Matsya, and Kurma Puranas
- ◆ Dedicated to Devi/Shakti: Markandeya, Devi Bhagavata, and Kalika Puranas

The *Puranas* are characterised by their *Pancha Lakshana* (five distinguishing features), which include: *Sarga* (creation of the universe), *Pratisarga* (recreation after dissolution), *Vamsha* (genealogies of gods and sages), *Manvantara* (cosmic cycles and ages), and *Vamshanucharita* (histories of dynasties, especially the solar and lunar dynasties). In addition to these core themes, the *Puranas* also contain stories of gods and goddesses, descriptions of pilgrimage sites (*tirthas*), and instructions for rituals and festivals.

One of the most important contributions of the *Puranas* to historiography is their preservation of genealogies (*vamshavalis*) of kings and sages. These genealogies trace the lineages of ancient dynasties, such as the Solar Dynasty (*Suryavamsa*) and the Lunar Dynasty (*Chandravamsa*), which include legendary figures like Rama and Krishna. While these genealogies are often idealised and include mythological figures,

they provide a framework for understanding the political and social structures of ancient India. For example, the *Matsya Purana* and *Vayu Purana* contain detailed lists of kings and their reigns, which some historians have attempted to correlate with archaeological and epigraphic evidence.

At the same time, the *Puranas* played a role in legitimising rulers by tracing their lineage to divine or heroic ancestors. They contributed to the propagation of moral and ethical values through stories that reinforced their *dharma* (righteousness). These texts were instrumental in shaping regional and national identities by glorifying local rulers and historical events. Moreover, the texts discuss governance, administration, and the duties of rulers, reflecting early Indian political thought.

Unlike Western historiography, the *Puranas* follow a cyclical conception of time (*Yugas*), which complicates historical dating. These include *Satya Yuga*, *Treta Yuga*, *Dvapara Yuga*, and *Kali Yuga*. Each *Yuga* is characterised by a decline in *dharma* (righteousness) and human virtue, culminating in the dissolution of the world (*Pralaya*) and its subsequent renewal. Many *Puranas* contain descriptions of sacred sites, rivers, mountains, and the universe’s structure, blending mythology with early geographical knowledge. One such concept is that of *Bharatvarsha*.

1.5.3. *Bharatvarsha*: Fictional Sacred Geography

Bharatvarsha, as described in the *Ithihasa-Purana*, was considered the divine land where *dharma* flourished, extending from the Himalayas to the southern ocean. Its name is derived from King Bharata, from whom the Kuru dynasty descends. The *Mahabharata* describes him as a powerful ruler who unified vast territories, symbolising



an ideal monarch. The *Vishnu Purana* and *Bhagavata Purana* affirm that *Bharatvarsha* derives its name from him because he ruled over the entire subcontinent.

This *Bharatvarsha* was divided into several regions, including *Aryavarta* (the land of the Aryans) and *Dakshinapatha* (southern territories), reflecting both political and cultural distinctions in ancient times. The writers of the Puranas outlined a cosmological view of *Bharatvarsha*, portraying it as the centre of the world and linking it to celestial realms, with sacred rivers like the Ganga, Yamuna, and Sarasvati playing crucial roles in spiritual traditions. The concept of *Bharatvarsha* contributed to the formation of a unified cultural identity, especially among the ruling and priestly elite, fostering a sense of belonging among these communities of the subcontinent.

1.5.4 The Prasastis

Prasastis, derived from the Sanskrit root “prasams” meaning “to praise,” are eulogistic inscriptions or compositions that extol the virtues and achievements of kings, deities, and other notable figures. These texts are often found engraved on temple walls, pillars, and copper plates, serving as public records of royal patronage, military conquests, and religious endowments.

The tradition of *Prasastis* can be traced back to the second century CE, with the earliest examples found in the inscriptions of the Satavahanas and the Guptas. Over time, *Prasastis* became a prominent feature of Indian epigraphy, reaching their zenith during the medieval period under the patronage of dynasties such as the Cholas, Chalukyas, and Pallavas.

1.5.4.1. Structure and Content

A typical *Prasasti* is characterised by a structured format, often beginning with an invocation to a deity, followed by a

genealogical account of the ruler, a description of their achievements, and a concluding benediction. The language is usually ornate and poetic, employing elaborate metaphors, similes, and hyperboles to glorify the subject.

Invocation (Mangalacharana): The *Prasasti* often begins with an invocation to a deity, seeking blessings and establishing the religious context of the text. This section underscores the ruler’s piety and divine favor.

Genealogy (Vamshavali): The genealogical account traces the lineage of the ruler, often linking them to mythical or divine ancestors. This serves to legitimise their rule and emphasise their noble heritage.

Achievements (Kirtivarnana): The core of the *Prasasti* is the detailed description of the ruler’s accomplishments, including military victories, administrative reforms, and patronage of the arts and religion. This section is often embellished with poetic flourishes and exaggerated claims.

Benediction (Ashirvada): The *Prasasti* concludes with a benediction, wishing the ruler long life, prosperity, and continued success. This section often includes a prayer for the well-being of the kingdom and its subjects.

1.5.4.2. Significance to Historiography

Prasastis served multiple functions in ancient and medieval Indian society. They were not merely records of royal achievements but also instruments of political propaganda, religious endorsement, and cultural expression.

Prasastis were used to legitimise the rule of kings, especially those who came to power through conquest or usurpation. By glorifying their achievements and linking them to divine or mythical ancestors, *Prasastis* reinforced the ruler’s authority and right to

rule. For example, the 'Prayag Prasasti', also known as the Allahabad Pillar Inscription, composed by the court poet Harisena, extols the achievements of Samudragupta, one of the greatest rulers of the Gupta Empire. This Prasasti of the 4th century CE provides a detailed account of his military campaigns, administrative prowess, and patronage of the arts. The Aihole Inscription, composed by the poet Ravikirti in the 7th century CE, celebrates the achievements of the Chalukya king Pulakeshin II. It is notable for its poetic excellence and detailed description of the king's victories over the Pallavas and other rivals. Another important prasasti is the Tanjavur Inscription, commissioned by the Chola king Rajaraja I, which records his conquests, administrative reforms, and the construction of the *Brihadeeswarar* Temple. It is a prime example of the Chola dynasty's use of *Prasastis* to legitimise their rule and showcase their cultural achievements.

1.5.5. The Charitas

Charitas, derived from the Sanskrit word "charita" meaning "conduct" or "deeds," are biographical narratives that focus on the lives and achievements of notable individuals, including kings, saints, and religious leaders. Unlike *Prasastis*, which are often inscribed on stone or metal, *Charitas* are typically composed as literary works, written in poetic or prose form.

The tradition of *Charitas* can be traced back to the early centuries of the Common Era, with the earliest examples found in the Buddhist and Jain traditions. Over time, *Charitas* became a popular genre in Hindu literature as well, with notable examples produced under the patronage of various dynasties.

1.5.5.1. Structure and Content

A typical *Charita* is structured as a narrative, often beginning with the birth and early life of the subject, followed by a

detailed account of their achievements, and concluding with their legacy. The language is usually more narrative and descriptive than that of *Prasastis*, with a focus on storytelling and character development.

Birth and Early Life (Janma and Balya): The *Charita* often begins with a description of the subject's birth, often accompanied by auspicious signs and prophecies. This section sets the stage for the subject's future greatness.

Achievements and Deeds (Karya and Kirti): The core of the *Charita* is the detailed account of the subject's achievements, including their military exploits, administrative reforms, and religious contributions. This section often includes anecdotes and stories that highlight the subject's virtues and character.

Legacy and Conclusion (Vamsha and Antya): The *Charita* concludes with a reflection on the subject's legacy, often emphasising their impact on society and their enduring influence. This section may also include a benediction or prayer for the subject's continued glory.

1.5.5.2. Significance to historiography

Charitas provide valuable insights into the lives and times of notable individuals, offering a glimpse into the socio-political and cultural milieu of their era. *The Harshacharita*, composed by the court poet Banabhatta in the 7th century CE, is a biography of Emperor Harshavardhana of the Pushyabhuti dynasty. It provides a detailed account of Harsha's life, achievements, and the socio-political context of his reign. Another example is the *Vikramankadevacharita*, composed by the poet Bilhana in the 11th century CE, which is a biography of the Chalukya king Vikramaditya VI. It is notable for its poetic excellence and detailed description of the king's military campaigns and administrative



reforms.

Charitas often emphasise the virtues and ethical conduct of the subject, serving as a guide for readers on the path of righteousness. They highlight the importance of *dharma*, duty, and devotion, offering lessons on how to lead a virtuous life. For example, the *Ramacharitam*, composed by the poet Sandhyakara Nandi in the 11th century CE, is a biography of the Pala king Ramapala. It is unique in that it parallels the life of Ramapala with that of the epic hero Rama, drawing on the *Ramayana* for its narrative structure and themes.

In general, both *Prasastis* and *Charitas* served as a medium for cultural expression, showcasing the literary and artistic talents of the time. The use of sophisticated language, poetic devices, and intricate carvings in inscriptions reflected the cultural sophistication of the period.

1.5.6 Jaina and Buddhist Historical Traditions

1.5.6.1 Jaina Historiography

Jaina historiography is deeply rooted in the religious and philosophical traditions of Jainism, which was founded by Mahavira (599–527 BCE), the 24th *Tirthankara* (spiritual teacher). Jaina historiography evolved as a means of preserving the teachings of the Tirthankaras, the lives of monastic leaders, and the history of the Jaina community. *The Kalpa Sutra*, attributed to Bhadrabahu, is one of the most important Jaina texts, containing biographies of the Tirthankaras, the lineage of monks, and rules for monastic conduct. The text is particularly significant for its detailed account of Mahavira's life. Bhadrabahu, regarded as the last *Shruta Kevali* (one who possesses complete knowledge of scriptures), is believed to have composed this text during a period of famine in Magadha, which led

to the migration of Jain monks to South India under the leadership of Chandragupta Maurya.

Another important Jaina text is the *Tiloyapannatti*, attributed to Yativr̥ṣabha, who lived around the 6th century CE. Apart from the standard biographies of the Tirthankaras, the text includes complex calculations related to the dimensions of the universe, the movement of celestial bodies, and the measurement of time. These sections reflect the scientific knowledge of the Jaina tradition in the fields of mathematics and astronomy.

In general, Jaina scholars produced detailed chronicles of regional kingdoms and dynasties, often highlighting the patronage extended to Jainism by rulers. These texts provide valuable insights into the political and cultural history of India, particularly in regions such as Gujarat, Rajasthan, and Karnataka, which were part of the erstwhile Maurya, Gupta, and Chalukya empires.

1.5.6.2 Buddhist Historiography

Buddhist historiography emerged as part of the broader Buddhist tradition, which was founded by Siddhartha Gautama, the Buddha (563–483 BCE). Buddhism emphasises the Four Noble Truths, the Eightfold Path, and the pursuit of enlightenment (*Nirvana*). Buddhist historiography developed as a means of preserving the Buddha's teachings (*Dharma*), the history of the monastic community (*Sangha*), and the spread of Buddhism. The earliest Buddhist texts, known as the *Tripitaka* (Pali Canon), were composed in Pali and contain the Buddha's sermons, monastic rules, and philosophical discourses. Of these, the second *Pitaka*, the *Sutta Pitaka*, is the most useful to historians, as it provides a wealth of information about the social, political, and cultural context of the Buddha's time. It mentions various kingdoms and republics, such as Magadha, Kosala,

and the Vajji Confederacy, providing details about their rulers, including King Bimbisara of Magadha and King Pasenadi of Kosala, and their interactions with the Buddha. The texts reflect the caste system and the tensions between different social groups, including Brahmins, Kshatriyas, and merchants. The Buddha's teachings often address issues of social inequality and offer a more egalitarian spiritual path. *The Sutta Pitaka* contains references to trade, agriculture, and urban life, providing a glimpse into the economic activities of the time. They also highlight the debates and discussions between the Buddha and other religious teachers.

The Jataka Tales, part of the *Khuddaka Nikaya*, are a collection of stories about the Buddha's previous lives. While primarily didactic and moralistic, they also provide valuable historical and cultural information, such as the names of various regions, cities, and rivers, offering insights into the geographical knowledge of the time. They also reflect the customs, traditions, and values of ancient Indian society, including family life, governance, and ethical conduct.

The *Dipavamsa* and *Mahavamsa* are two of the most important historical chronicles in the *Theravada* Buddhist tradition. Both texts are written in Pali and provide a detailed account of the history of Buddhism in Sri Lanka, from its introduction by *Mahinda*, the son of Emperor Ashoka, to the reign of various Sri Lankan kings. The *Dipavamsa*, or "Chronicle of the Island," is believed to have been composed in the 4th century CE and is the earliest extant chronicle of Sri Lanka. It begins with the arrival of Mahinda in Sri Lanka during the reign of King Devanampiya Tissa (3rd century BCE) and describes the establishment of Buddhism on the island, including the founding of the Mahavihara monastery and the ordination of the first Sri Lankan monks. The *Dipavamsa* includes an account of the first three Buddhist councils, which were held to preserve and codify the

Buddha's teachings. The text provides a chronological account of the Sri Lankan kings, highlighting their contributions to the spread and preservation of Buddhism. The *Mahavamsa*, or "Great Chronicle," was composed in the 5th century CE by the Buddhist monk Mahanama. It contains the same set of topics but is a more elaborate and polished work than the *Dipavamsa*.

The *Ashokavadana*, or "Narrative of Ashoka," is a significant Buddhist text that provides a detailed account of the life and reign of Emperor Ashoka. It is believed to have been composed between the 2nd and 4th centuries CE, a period when Buddhism was expanding and consolidating its influence across India and beyond. The text reflects the efforts of the Buddhist community to promote the ideals of righteous governance and the spread of the *Dharma*, using Ashoka as a paradigmatic example.

1.5.7 Limitations of Indian Historiography

Ancient India did not produce detailed contemporary historical narratives. This contrasts with other ancient civilisations like Greece, Rome, and China, where historians such as Herodotus, Thucydides, and Sima Qian wrote extensive historical works. The challenge of interpreting Indian historiography as history lies in the nature of the sources themselves. Here are some key issues:

1. Myth and History Intertwined:

Texts like the *Mahabharata*, *Ramayana*, *Mahavamsa*, and the *Puranas* are rich in mythological and legendary content. While they contain historical elements, these are often intertwined with myth and allegory. For example, the *Mahabharata* describes a great war, but it is also a profound philosophical and moral treatise. Separating historical facts



from mythological embellishments is a complex task. The *Puranas* and *Kalpa Sutrās* provide genealogies of kings and sages, but these are often idealised and may not correspond to actual historical timelines. The lengths of reigns and the succession of kings can be exaggerated or symbolic rather than literal.

2. Religious and Philosophical Focus:

The *Vedas*, *Brahmanas*, *Aranyakas*, and *Upanishads* are primarily concerned with rituals, philosophy, and spirituality. While they offer glimpses into the social and political life of the Vedic period, they are not historical records in the conventional sense. The Pali Canon and Jain Agamas focus on the teachings of the Buddha and Mahavira, respectively. They provide valuable information about the socio-religious context but are not primarily concerned with chronicling historical events.

3. Colonial Historiography and Its Biases:

During the colonial period, European historians often interpreted Indian history through a Eurocentric lens, emphasising

aspects that fit their own narratives and sometimes dismissing or misinterpreting indigenous sources. These texts were examined using modern analytical methods within the colonial framework, using historical accounts from Greece and Rome as a standard, and were thus deemed inadequate. They were particularly criticised for lacking spatial and chronological accuracy, which was considered a fundamental requirement for historical records. This perceived deficiency was then used both implicitly and explicitly to suggest that early Indians, and by extension their descendants, lacked a sense of history and were intellectually inferior to their Western counterparts. Clearly, history and perceptions of the past were deeply intertwined with power dynamics.

Recap

- ◆ Indian historical consciousness is rooted in religious, philosophical, and literary traditions.
- ◆ *Danastutis* reveal the material culture of early Vedic period society.
- ◆ Cattle served as primary wealth and currency in early Vedic life.
- ◆ *Itihasa-Purana* preserved genealogies, cosmologies, and ancient socio-political developments.
- ◆ These traditions offer deep insights into ancient Indian cultural history.

- ◆ *Prasastis* are inscriptions praising kings and recording their achievements.
- ◆ *Charitas* present biographical narratives of notable historical figures.
- ◆ Both legitimised rulers and preserved socio-political and cultural memory.
- ◆ Jaina historiography centres on Tirthankaras and influential monastic leaders.
- ◆ *Kalpa Sutra* and *Tiloyapannatti* are significant Jain historical texts.
- ◆ Buddhist historiography documents the Buddha's teachings and the Sangha's historical evolution.
- ◆ *Tripitaka*, *Jatakas*, *Dipavamsa*, and *Mahavamsa* are key Buddhist sources.
- ◆ These chronicles blend moral lessons with historical accounts of events.
- ◆ Colonial historians judged Indian history using unsuitable Western criteria.

Objective Questions

1. Which Vedic text contains the *Danastutis*?
2. What is the primary focus of the *Danastutis* in the *Rigveda*?
3. Which Purana is dedicated to Vishnu?
4. The Jataka Tales are associated with which tradition?
5. What is the main difference between *Prasastis* and *Charitas*?
6. Which written text provides a detailed account of Emperor Ashoka's life?
7. The concept of *Bharatvarsha* is derived from which king?
8. Which Jaina text contains rules for monastic conduct?
9. What is the primary purpose of a *Prasasti*?
10. Which inscription is also known as the *Prayag Prasasti*?

11. Who composed the *Harshacharita*, a biography of Harshavardhana?
12. The *Mahavamsa* and *Dipavamsa* are historical chronicles from which region?

Answers

1. *Rig veda*
2. Praising the generosity of patrons
3. *Bhagavata Purana*
4. Buddhist
5. *Prasastis* are inscriptions, while *Charitas* are literary biographies
6. *Ashokavadana*
7. Bharata, king mentioned in the *Rigveda*
8. *Kalpa Sutra*
9. Praise rulers and their achievements
10. Allahabad Pillar Inscription.
11. Banabhatta
12. Sri Lanka

Assignments

1. Why did ancient India not produce detailed contemporary historical narratives like those of Greece or Rome? How do the religious and philosophical focuses of Indian texts impact their utility as historical sources?
2. Compare and contrast *Prasastis* and *Charitas* as historical sources. How do they differ in purpose, content, and historical reliability?

3. Why is it difficult to separate historical facts from mythological and religious elements in texts like the Puranas, Mahabharata, and Jataka Tales?
4. Discuss the role of religious and philosophical traditions in shaping Jaina historiography.
5. Discuss the historical value of the *Sutta Pitaka* for understanding ancient Indian society.

Reference

1. Basak, Radhagovinda, *The Harshacharita of Banabhatta with Sanskrit Commentary and English Translation*, Calcutta University Press, Calcutta, 1924.
2. Basham, A. L., *The Wonder That Was India*, Sidgwick & Jackson, London, 1954.
3. Bronkhorst, Johannes, *Greater Magadha: Studies in the Culture of Early India*, Brill, Leiden, 2007.
4. Collins, Steven, *Nirvana and Other Buddhist Felicities: Utopias of the Pali Imaginaire*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1998.
5. Jain, Jyoti Prasad, *The Jaina Sources of the History of Ancient India (1000 B.C. – A.D. 900)*, Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers, New Delhi, 1975.
6. Jamison, Stephanie W., “The Role of Gift-Giving in the R̥gveda: The Dānastutis and Related Hymns” translated excerpts in *The Rigveda: The Earliest Religious Poetry of India*, edited and translated by Stephanie W. Jamison and Joel P. Brereton, Oxford University Press, New York, 2014.

Suggested Reading

1. Jha, D. N., *Ancient India: An Introductory Outline*, Manohar Publishers, New Delhi, 2004.
2. Kosambi, D. D., *An Introduction to the Study of Indian History*, Popular Prakashan, Bombay, 1956.
3. Kulke, Hermann & Rothermund, Dietmar, *A History of India*, Routledge, New York, 2016.
4. Olivelle, Patrick, *The Early Upanishads: Annotated Text and Translation*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1998.
5. Raychaudhuri, Hemchandra, *Political History of Ancient India*, OUP, London, 2008.
6. Schopen, Gregory, *Buddhism, Imperialism, and the Writing of History: The Legacy of Medieval Indian Buddhism*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 2004.
7. Sharma, R. S., *India's Ancient Past*. Oxford University Press, New Delhi, 2005.
8. Thapar, Romila, *The Penguin History of Early India: From the Origins to AD 1300*, Penguin Books, New Delhi, 2002.
9. Upinder Singh, *A History of Ancient and Early Medieval India: From the Stone Age to the 12th Century*, Pearson India, New Delhi, 2008.



UNIT

Medieval Indian Historiography

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain how historical writing in medieval India varied across regions
- ◆ assess how court patronage, selective narration, and mythological elements influenced medieval historical records
- ◆ analyse the major historical works during the Sultanate Period (1206-1526)
- ◆ examine the major historical works during the Mughal Period (1526-1707)

Prerequisites

Medieval India, spanning roughly from the ninth to the seventeenth century, was a period of significant regional diversification in terms of political power, cultural practices, and historical writing. These sources often served religious, dynastic, or administrative purposes, reflecting the priorities of their patrons. For example, *Rajatarangini* by Kalhana, a 12th-century Kashmiri text, is one of the earliest examples of a historical chronicle in India, blending myth, legend, and factual accounts to narrate the history of Kashmir. Similarly, *Prashastis* (eulogistic inscriptions) and *Charitas* (biographies) celebrated the achievements of kings and rulers, often emphasising their divine or heroic qualities.

With the advent of Islamic rule in India, Persian historiography became prominent. Persian chronicles, such as those written by court historians like Ziauddin Barani and Abul Fazl, provide detailed accounts of the Delhi Sultanate and the Mughal Empire. Barani's *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi* and Abul Fazl's *Akbarnama* were often commissioned by rulers and reflected the political and cultural ethos of their times.

They combined factual records with moral lessons, administrative wisdom, and literary flourish.

An expression of new ways of perceiving the world is illustrated in the writings of Indo-Persian historians of Mughal who recounting past events in terms of human actions rather than divine intervention. Thus, historiography shows ‘secular’ concerns as it shifts away from more religious and didactic outlook.

Keywords

Rajatarangini, Prabandha Chintamani, Tabaqat, Tarikh, Masnavi, Akbarnama

Discussion

1.6.1. Regional Historiography

Regional historiography in medieval India is characterised by its diversity and specificity. Each region developed its own historical traditions, influenced by local languages, cultures, and political contexts. The sources of regional historiography include court chronicles, inscriptions, religious texts, and literary works, each offering a unique perspective on the history of the region. The focus of regional historiography is often on local dynasties, regional heroes, and cultural achievements, reflecting the pride and identity of the local populace.

A significant portion of regional historiography is devoted to political history, focusing on the rise and fall of local dynasties, military campaigns, and administrative policies. Court chronicles and inscriptions, in particular, emphasise the achievements and exploits of regional rulers. The administrative and legal systems of regional kingdoms are well-documented in various sources. Inscriptions, in particular, provide detailed accounts of land grants,

revenue systems, and administrative practices. Regional historiography also sheds light on the social and economic conditions of the time. Inscriptions and religious texts provide information about caste, class, trade, agriculture, and urbanisation. The medieval period witnessed significant religious and cultural developments, including the rise of Bhakti and Sufi movements, the decline of Buddhism, and the proliferation of temple architecture. Regional historiography reflects these changes. Now, let us look at some prominent regional histories.

1.6.1.1. *Rajatarangini*

The *Rajatarangini* (“The River of Kings”) was composed by Kalhana in the 12th century. This Sanskrit text chronicles the history of Kashmir from ancient times to the author’s contemporary period. It is often regarded as one of the earliest examples of systematic historiography in the Indian subcontinent.

The *Rajatarangini* is divided into eight books (*tarangas*), comprising nearly 8,000 verses. Each book covers a specific period in the history of Kashmir, beginning with

its mythical origins and ending with the reign of King Jayasimha (1128–1155 CE). The text provides a chronological account of the rulers of Kashmir, their policies, military campaigns, administrative reforms, and cultural achievements. It also includes descriptions of natural disasters, social conditions, and religious developments.

Kalhana's approach to historiography in the *Rajatarangini* is notable for its critical and analytical nature. He explicitly states that he consulted a variety of sources, including earlier chronicles, inscriptions, and oral traditions. He provides a chronological framework for his narrative, dating events based on the reigns of kings. This approach marks a significant departure from the cyclical and mythological timeframes found in many Puranic texts. Kalhana does not shy away from making moral and ethical judgments about the actions of kings and their advisors. He lauds King Lalitaditya (8th century) for his military conquests and administrative reforms but criticises King Harsha (11th century) for his oppressive policies and extravagance.

Apart from the political, Kalhana's work also sheds light on the social and economic conditions of Kashmir. He describes the caste system, the role of Brahmins, and the impact of natural disasters on the economy. For example, Kalhana discusses the 8th-century floods during the reign of King Lalitaditya (724–760 CE) and the 9th-century landslide during the reign of King Avantivarman (855–883) and the relief measures that were taken by them. He also describes the patronage of temples, the spread of Buddhism and Shaivism, and the role of religious institutions in society.

The *Rajatarangini* has had a profound influence on the historiography of Kashmir and India as a whole. It inspired later historians, such as Jonaraja and Srivara, who continued Kalhana's narrative in their

own works titled the same.

1.6.1.2. *Prabandha Chintamani*

The *Prabandha Chintamani*, composed by Jain scholar Merutunga in the 14th century, is an important source for understanding the political and cultural history of Gujarat. Written in Sanskrit, the text provides accounts of notable figures and events, including the Solanki dynasty and the early Muslim invasions. The *Prabandha Chintamani* is particularly valuable for its insights into the socio-political climate of medieval Gujarat and the interactions between different religious communities. However, like many medieval historical texts, it requires careful interpretation due to its mixture of fact, legend, and didacticism.

The *Prabandha Chintamani* is written in a narrative style, with each prabandha focusing on a specific story or event. This approach makes the text engaging and accessible, but it also means that the historical information is often embedded within a larger moral or ethical framework. The *Prabandha Chintamani* exemplifies the Jain tradition of historiography, which places a strong emphasis on ethical instruction. Jain scholars continued to view history not merely as a record of events but as a means of conveying moral principles.

1.6.1.3. *Rayavachakamu*

The *Rayavachakamu* ("The Words of the King") is a Telugu historical text composed by an anonymous author, giving a detailed account of the Vijayanagara Empire, particularly during the reign of King Krishnadevaraya (1509–1529 CE). Written in the early 16th century, the *Rayavachakamu* is a unique blend of historical narrative, political treatise, and courtly literature. It provides valuable insights into the administration, diplomacy, and cultural life of the Vijayanagara Empire, one of the most powerful and prosperous kingdoms in



South India.

The *Rayavachakamu* is structured as a dialogue between King Krishnadevaraya and his ministers, offering advice on governance, diplomacy, and statecraft. This didactic tone reflects the text's purpose as a guide for rulers. The text is divided into several sections, each focusing on different aspects of kingship and administration. It provides detailed guidelines on the organisation of the kingdom, including the roles and responsibilities of various officials, the management of revenue, and the maintenance of law and order. It also provides information on the military organisation and strategies of the Vijayanagara Empire, including the training of soldiers, the use of fortifications, and the conduct of warfare. The text uses the reign of Krishnadevaraya as a case study to illustrate the principles of good governance and effective leadership. As such, it details the construction of the Vitthala Temple and the patronage of Telugu poets, reflecting the cultural achievements of Krishnadevaraya's reign.

1.6.1.4. *Kalingattuparani*

The *Kalingattuparani* is a Tamil literary and historical work composed by Jayamkondar, a court poet of the Chola dynasty, in the early 12th century. It is a *parani*, which is a genre of Tamil literature that celebrates victorious battles, and in this case, it is dedicated to the military exploits of Kulottunga Chola I (r. 1070–1122 CE), particularly his conquest of Kalinga (modern-day Odisha).

The *Kalingattuparani* is structured as a series of verses that narrate the events of Kulottunga Chola I's campaign against Kalinga. The text is divided into several sections, each focusing on different aspects of the campaign, including the preparation for war, the battles, and the aftermath. For instance, the description of the Chola army's march to Kalinga includes detailed

accounts of the terrain, the logistics of the campaign, and the composition of the army. It describes the use of elephants, cavalry, and infantry in the battles, as well as the strategic use of fortifications and terrain. The *Kalingattuparani* celebrates the valour and heroism of the Chola warriors, portraying them as ideal soldiers who embody the virtues of courage, loyalty, and sacrifice. For instance, the poem describes the warriors fearlessly charging into battle, undeterred by the prospect of death. This focus on heroism reflects the cultural values of the time. The *Kalingattuparani* has influenced later scholars, while its vivid imagery and poetic style have been emulated in various regional literatures.

1.6.2. Limitations of Regional Historiography

One of the most significant challenges in regional historiography is the blending of mythological elements with historical narratives. Despite his critical approach, Kalhana includes mythological elements and legends in his narrative, which can make it difficult to separate fact from fiction.

Regional historiographical texts were often composed by court poets or scholars who were dependent on royal patronage. As a result, these texts tend to reflect the perspectives and priorities of the ruling elite, leading to biases and subjectivity in the historical accounts. The *Rayavachakamu*, for instance, glorifies the reign of Krishnadevaraya, emphasising his achievements while downplaying or ignoring his failures and the broader socio-political challenges of his time.

In some cases, regional historiography is shaped by contemporary political or cultural identity movements. This can lead to selective historical interpretations that serve modern political agendas rather than objective historical analysis. This phenomenon is especially relevant in multi-ethnic and

diverse nations like India, where historical narratives are often influenced by regional pride, political movements, and efforts to assert cultural distinctiveness. For instance, the depiction of Shivaji in Maharashtra or Tipu Sultan in Karnataka varies significantly in different regional and national narratives.

1.6.3. Historiography of the Sultanate Period

The historiography of the Sultanate period (1206–1526 CE) in the Indian subcontinent is a multifaceted and dynamic field of study. It encompasses the analysis of primary historical sources, the perspectives of contemporary chroniclers, and the interpretations of modern historians. The period witnessed the establishment and consolidation of several dynasties, including the Mamluks, Khaljis, Tughlaqs, Sayyids, and Lodis, which shaped the socio-political and cultural landscape of medieval India. The historiographical tradition of this era is marked by the synthesis of Persian, Arabic, and indigenous Indian influences, creating a rich corpus of historical literature.

The dominant medium of historical writing during the Sultanate period was Persian, reflecting the linguistic and cultural preferences of the ruling elite. Court-sponsored historians played a pivotal role in shaping the official narrative of the ruling dynasties. The patronage extended to historians often resulted in the production of laudatory works that emphasised the legitimacy and achievements of the rulers.

The primary sources of the Sultanate period largely comprise the works of contemporary chroniclers, court historians, and travellers. These sources offer invaluable insights into the political, social, and economic conditions of the time.

1.6.3.1. *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri* by Minhaj-i-Siraj

Completed in 1260, this is one of the earliest comprehensive accounts of the Sultanate period. Minhaj-i-Siraj, a jurist and historian, provides detailed information about the Ghurid conquest and the establishment of the Delhi Sultanate. His work is structured in a tabular form, categorising historical events and figures into different *tabaqat* or classes. The use of the *tabaqat* method represents an innovative approach to historiography. By categorising history into distinct classes, Minhaj-i-Siraj provides a structured and organised account, making it easier to navigate and understand. In total, there are 23 *tabaqat*, each focusing on different dynasties, rulers, and significant events.

The last five sections contain valuable information on the rise and fall of the ruling dynasties of Central Asia, Persia, India, and the Mongol irruption under Genghis Khan. This chronicle is particularly valuable for its detailed account of the reigns of Qutb-ud-din Aibak, Iltutmish, and Razia Sultana, offering insights into the administrative and military strategies of the early Sultanate. Minhaj even critiques the reigning sultans, albeit in an indirect way, by praising the noble qualities of their rivals. Minhaj's sense of historical writing greatly influenced another scholar of the period, Ziauddin Barani, who preferred to begin his own historical account from where Minhaj had stopped.

1.6.3.2. *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi* by Ziauddin Barani

Barani's work, written in 1357 CE, provides a detailed account of the Khalji and Tughlaq dynasties. This work offers a detailed and critical account of the reigns of several sultans, beginning with the accession of Sultan Balban in 1266 and concluding with the account of the first six years of Sultan Firuz Shah Tughluq's reign. The title

“*Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi*” refers to the history of the Firuz Shahi dynasty, during whose time Barani completed the work.

Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is structured as a detailed narrative of the political, administrative, and economic history of the Delhi Sultanate. The chronicle is divided into several sections, each focusing on the reign of a particular sultan. Barani’s access to court records and his firsthand observations lend credibility to his narrative. *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi* provides detailed information about the administrative and economic policies of the Sultanate. Barani’s discussions of Alauddin Khalji’s market regulations and Muhammad bin Tughlaq’s administrative experiments are particularly valuable for understanding the economic history of the period.

Barani’s record is also notable for highlighting the role played by the ulema in the governance and society of the Delhi Sultanate. He considered the ulema not only as religious scholars but also as essential advisors in the administration of the state. This perspective reflected the broader socio-political dynamics of the time, where the ulema sought to exert influence over state policies and maintain their privileged status within the court.

Barani also declared that the job of the historian is not only to eulogise the deeds and good works of rulers but also to provide readers with a critical account of the shortcomings and drawbacks of their policies. This critical perspective is evident in his critique of Muhammad bin Tughlaq’s policies regarding the welfare of subjects and the stability of the state. Barani’s style of history writing inspired historians of the subsequent period, many of whom sought to emulate his ideas

1.6.3.3. *Khazain-ul-Futuh and Tughlaqnama* by Amir Khusrau

Amir Khusrau (1253–1325) was one of the most celebrated historians of the Delhi Sultanate. His first work *Khazain-ul-Futuh* was composed in Persian in the period 1311–1312 during the reign of Alauddin Khalji (1296–1316). The title, *Khazain-ul-Futuh*, reflects its focus on the “treasures” of Alauddin’s victories, both military and administrative.

The *ulema* refers to a group of Islamic scholars who are well-versed in Islamic law (*Sharia*), theology, and jurisprudence and served as religious authorities, interpreters of Islamic doctrine in the sultanate courts.

The work is divided into several sections, each focusing on a particular military campaign or administrative reform. Khusrau employs a highly ornate and rhetorical style, blending factual accounts with allegorical imagery and panegyric praise. The work provides a detailed account of Alauddin’s military conquests, including his campaigns in Gujarat, Ranthambore, Chittor, and the Deccan. Khusrau’s vivid descriptions of battles, sieges, and the strategies employed by Alauddin highlight the Sultan’s military genius and the expansion of the Delhi Sultanate. He documents Alauddin’s administrative innovations, such as market reforms, price controls, and revenue policies, aimed at stabilising the economy and ensuring the efficient functioning of the state. The work also touches on Alauddin’s patronage of art and architecture, including the construction of the Alai Darwaza and the expansion of the Qutb Minar complex. Khusrau’s descriptions provide insights into the cultural milieu of the Sultanate.

Khusrau’s second work, the *Tughlaqnama*, was composed in 1321 to commemorate the

rise of the Tughlaq dynasty and the reign of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq. The work is a masnavi, a poetic form in Persian literature. It provides valuable insights into the political transition from the Khalji to the Tughlaq dynasty, beginning with an account of the political turmoil following the death of Alauddin Khalji and the subsequent decline of the Khalji dynasty. Khusrau describes the rise of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq, a former governor who seized power and established the Tughlaq dynasty. The work also discusses Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq's administrative reforms, including efforts to improve revenue collection and strengthen the bureaucracy. He documents Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq's patronage of art and architecture, including the construction of Tughlaqabad, the new capital of the Sultanate.

The significance of both works lies not only in their historical content but also in their methodological approach. Khusrau's proximity to the Sultanate court allowed him to document events with a level of detail and authenticity that few contemporary sources can match.

1.6.4. Limitations

One of the most significant limitations of Delhi Sultanate historiography is its elite-centric focus. The majority of contemporary sources, such as Persian chronicles, were written by court historians, poets, and administrators closely associated with the ruling elite. Works like Ziauddin Barani's *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi* and Amir Khusrau's *Khazain-ul-Futuh* primarily document the achievements, policies, and personalities of the sultans and their courts. This focus on the ruling class often neglects the experiences, struggles, and contributions of common people, including peasants, artisans, merchants, and women.

The historiography of the Delhi Sultanate has traditionally focused on the central authority in Delhi, often neglecting the

histories of regional polities and their interactions with the Sultanate. While sources like *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri* and *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi* provide valuable insights into the Delhi-centric narrative, they offer limited information about the Deccan, Bengal, Gujarat, and other regions. This neglect of regional histories creates an incomplete picture of the Sultanate period, which was characterised by a complex interplay between central authority and regional autonomy.

Another shortcoming of Sultanate historiography is its heavy focus on political and military history, particularly the exploits of the sultans and their campaigns. While these aspects are undoubtedly important, they often overshadow other dimensions of history, such as economic systems, social structures, cultural developments, and everyday life. Apart from Alauddin Khalji and Firuz Shah Tughluq, the impact of Sultanate rule on agrarian economies, trade networks, and regional cultures remains underexplored in many traditional accounts.

1.6.5. Historiography under the Mughal Period

The Mughal Empire, which spanned from the early 16th to the mid-19th century, represents one of the most significant periods in South Asian history. The historiography of the Mughals, or the study of how historians have interpreted and written about this empire, has evolved considerably over time.

The earliest accounts of the Mughal Empire come from official court chronicles written under the patronage of the emperors themselves. These works, often written in Persian, the court language, provide detailed accounts of the reigns of the Mughal emperors, their military campaigns, administrative policies, and courtly life.

1.6.5.1. Baburnama of Babur

The *Baburnama*, also known as *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* or Babur's Memoirs, is the



autobiography of Zahir-ud-din Muhammad Babur, the founder of the Mughal Empire in India. Written in Chagatai Turkic in 1529 and 1530, the *Baburnama* provides a vivid, personal, and detailed account of Babur's life, his conquests, and his observations on the people, geography, and culture of the regions he ruled or traversed. The *Baburnama* is valued for its candidness and literary quality, providing insights into the founder of the Mughal dynasty.

The first part of the *Baburnama* details Babur's early years, his accession to the throne of Fergana, and his attempts to consolidate power in Central Asia. It provides insights into the political fragmentation and constant warfare among the Timurid princes. Babur's descriptions of his victories and defeats, his alliances and betrayals, and his reflections on leadership and governance are particularly noteworthy. After losing his ancestral lands, Babur turned his attention to Kabul, which he conquered in 1504. This section of the *Baburnama* describes his efforts to establish a stable base in Kabul, his interactions with local tribes, and his preparations for further conquests. Babur's observations on the geography, climate, and people of Kabul are detailed and vivid, reflecting his keen interest in the natural world. The final part of the *Baburnama* covers Babur's campaigns in India, culminating in the Battle of Panipat in 1526 and the establishment of the Mughal Empire. Babur provides a detailed account of his military strategies, the challenges he faced, and his interactions with Indian rulers and subjects. His descriptions of Indian society, culture, and geography are invaluable for understanding the early Mughal period.

Babur's keen powers of observation are evident throughout the *Baburnama*. He provides detailed descriptions of the landscapes, flora, fauna, and people he encountered. "The elephant, Babur tells us, is native to the borders of the Kalpi country (present-day Uttar Pradesh) and further east.

It is a noble creature and understands what people say to it and obeys their commands" he says. Regarding the rhinoceros, Babur has this to say, "The rhinoceros (karg) is also a large animal equivalent in size to three buffaloes, but the story that it can lift an elephant on its horn is false. It has one horn on its nose and its hide is very thick. It is ferocious and unlike the elephant cannot be tamed". Babur mentions "several kinds of monkeys (*maymūn* "called *bāndar* in Hindustani")": one which is yellow with a white face and short tail, which is exported and taught to do tricks, another, (*langūr*) is larger with white hair, a black face and long tail." He often referred to the Indian subcontinent as "Hindustan" when describing its flora and fauna. Similarly Babur's accounts of cities, markets, and social customs are particularly valuable for historians and anthropologists.

Upon entering Hindustan, Babur provides detailed descriptions of Delhi and Agra, the two major cities he encountered. He notes the bustling streets, impressive fortifications, and the grandeur of the palaces and mosques. Babur describes the layout of these cities, including the markets, residential areas, and public spaces. In his descriptions of Indian markets, he highlights the diversity of goods available, including precious stones, textiles, and exotic spices, and is particularly impressed by the variety and quality of Indian fabrics. Babur's accounts shed light on the social hierarchies and caste system in India, describing the roles and status of different social groups, including Brahmins, warriors, merchants, and artisans. He also details the rituals and ceremonies of Hindus, including temple worship, festivals, and pilgrimages, noting the diversity of religious beliefs and the coexistence of different faiths.

During the reign of his grandson, the emperor Akbar, the work was translated into Persian by the courtier Abdul Rahim Khan-i-Khan in 1589 CE, with over 191 illustrations added.

1.6.5.2 *Tarikh-i Alfi* and *Akbarnama* during Akbar's reign

With Akbar's ascension to the throne (1556-1605), significant changes occurred in the approach to history writing and the social class of historians. Akbar's reign was marked by a deliberate effort to synthesise diverse religious, cultural, and intellectual traditions. The emperor sought to create a unified and inclusive historical narrative that would reflect the pluralistic ethos of his empire. The completion of the first millennium of Islam provided an opportunity to reflect on the history of the Islamic world and its place within the broader context of human civilisation. Thus, the *Tarik-i Alfi* was commissioned in 1582 during a period of great intellectual and cultural ferment in the Mughal Empire.

The *Tarik-i Alfī* (“The History of a Thousand Years”) was compiled by a team of scholars under the supervision of Mulla Ahmad Thattvi, who worked meticulously for ten years, completing the final draft in 1592. It covers the history of the Islamic world from the advent of Islam in the 7th century to the end of the first millennium of the Hijri calendar (1000 AH/1591–1592 CE). The work is divided into several sections, each focusing on different periods and dynasties, including various regional dynasties and sultanates that emerged in the Islamic world, such as the Fatimids, Seljuks, Ghaznavids, and Mamluks. The chronicle concludes with a detailed account of the Mughal Empire, focusing on the reigns of Babur, Humayun, and Akbar. It provides insights into their political, military, and cultural contributions, as well as their interactions with other Islamic and non-Islamic powers. The structure and content of the *Tarik-i Alfī* reflect its dual purpose as a historical record and a tool for promoting Akbar’s vision of a unified and inclusive empire.

Not satisfied with this monumental account of his reign, Akbar ordered Abul Fazl, his courtier, in 1589 to compile a new record of his reign, beginning with an account of Babur. A bureau was established with compilers and writers to assist Abul Fazl, and the entire archival material of the Mughal Empire was placed at his disposal. It took seven years (1590-97) and five revisions to create the final compilation.

The result, *Akbarnama* (“Book of Akbar”), written in Persian, is one of the most comprehensive accounts of Akbar’s reign. Abul Fazl presents a detailed narrative of the emperor’s policies, including his administrative reforms, religious tolerance, and cultural patronage. The *Akbarnama* is divided into three volumes, each focusing on different aspects of Akbar’s reign. The first volume provides a genealogical account of Akbar’s ancestors, tracing his lineage back to Timur and Genghis Khan. It also covers Akbar’s early life, including his birth, upbringing, and accession to the throne at the age of 13.

The second volume is the most extensive and detailed part of the *Akbarnama*, chronicling Akbar's reign year by year, covering his military campaigns, administrative reforms, and cultural achievements. Key events include the conquest of Gujarat, the annexation of Bengal, and the establishment of the Mansabdari system. The volume also provides insights into Akbar's interactions with various religious and ethnic groups, his policy of religious tolerance, and his efforts to foster a syncretic culture called *Din-i-Ilahi*. In his treatment of Akbar's military expeditions against the Rajputs, Abul Fazl emphasises that there was no justification for any chief, Hindu or Muslim, not to join the Mughal confederation, given Akbar's reconciliatory policy. In fact, Abul Fazl's secular interpretation of history gained ground during the subsequent century.



The third volume, known as the *Ain-i-Akbari*, is a detailed administrative report of the Mughal Empire. It provides statistical and descriptive information on various aspects of the empire, including its geography, population, economy, and administration. The *Ain-i-Akbari* is divided into five books, each focusing on different subjects such as the imperial household, the army, revenue systems, and social customs. The fifth book, in particular, contains a detailed account of the social and cultural life of the Mughal Empire, including the caste system. It includes descriptions of the various ethnic and religious groups, their customs, and their contributions to the empire. This volume is an invaluable source for understanding the administrative machinery and socio-economic conditions of the Mughal Empire.

The *Akbarnama* is also famous for its miniature paintings created by artists from the Mughal court, such as Basawan, Daswanth, and Faruk Beg. These paintings visually depict important events from Akbar's reign and are considered masterpieces of Mughal art.



Fig. 1.6.1. Painting by Baswan, 1595

The *Akbarnama* and *Ain-i Akbari* provide exhaustive details of the events and policies

introduced by Akbar up to the year 1602. However, Abul Fazl fails to mention or raise any issues that cast aspersions on Akbar. While the *Ain-i Akbari* is abundant in economic details, these do not shed light on the life and conditions of the mass of peasantry or the working class.

Historians therefore validate the information in the *Ain-i Akbari* by comparing it with the works of Abdul Qadir Badauni and Nizamuddin Ahmad, thereby providing a holistic understanding of Akbar's reign.

1.6.5.3. Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri of Jahangir

The *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri*, also known as the *Jahangirnama*, is the autobiographical memoir of Nur-ud-din Muhammad Jahangir, the fourth Mughal Emperor of India, who ruled from 1605 to 1627. Written in Persian, the official language of the Mughal court, the *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* is a unique and invaluable historical document that provides a firsthand account of Jahangir's reign, his personal reflections, and his observations on the natural world, art, culture, and governance.

The Mughal Empire during Jahangir's reign was at its zenith, both in terms of territorial expansion and cultural flourishing. His father, Akbar, had established a vast and powerful empire, leaving behind a legacy of administrative excellence and religious tolerance. Jahangir's memoir continues this narrative, offering a firsthand account of the Mughal court's inner workings, the political landscape, and the emperor's philosophical reflections.

The *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* is divided into two main parts: the first part, written by Jahangir himself, covers the years 1605 to 1622, while the second part, compiled by court historians, covers the remaining years of his reign until 1627. The memoir is organised chronologically, with detailed entries for each year of Jahangir's rule. The

text is marked by its candid tone, offering both praise and criticism of his own rule and those around him.

One of the central themes of the *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* is the emperor's role as a ruler and administrator. Jahangir provides detailed accounts of his decrees, appointments, and administrative reforms. The famous chain of justice (*Zanjir-i-Adl*), installed outside the Agra Fort, symbolised his commitment to providing accessible justice to all his subjects. Jahangir also provides a detailed account of the major political and military events of his reign, including his accession to the throne, the rebellion of his son Khusrau, and the campaigns against the Rajputs, Sikhs, and Deccan Sultanates.

What sets the *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* apart from other royal memoirs is its deeply personal nature. Jahangir does not shy away from discussing his own flaws, writing openly about his struggles with alcohol and opium addiction, his love for his wife Nur Jahan, and his grief over the deaths of family members. He provides glimpses into his daily routines, including his interest in hunting, his passion for art and nature, and his participation in courtly rituals and festivals.

Jahangir was a keen observer of the natural world, and his memoir includes detailed descriptions of flora, fauna, and geographical features. He records his encounters with exotic animals, such as cheetahs and elephants, and his experiments with crossbreeding plants and animals. He writes about his love for gardens and his efforts to create beautiful landscapes, such as the Shalimar Bagh in Kashmir. His interest in science and medicine is evident in his descriptions of medical treatments and his observations on the effects of opium and alcohol on the human body.

The memoir provides valuable information on Jahangir's diplomatic relations with contemporary powers, including the

Safavid Empire of Persia and the British East India Company. His interactions with Sir Thomas Roe, the English ambassador, are particularly significant, offering insights into the early stages of British involvement in India. Additionally, Jahangir maintained correspondence with rulers of Central Asia, the Ottoman Empire, and various Indian kingdoms. His diplomatic efforts sought to secure alliances, enhance trade networks, and promote political stability across his realm.

The *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* reveals his respect for different faiths, including his interactions with Jesuit missionaries and his reverence for the teachings of Sufi saints. However, his memoir also records instances of religious persecution, reflecting the complexities of his rule.



Fig.1.6.2. Jahangir standing on a globe shooting poverty, painting by Abu'l Hasan, 1625

1.6.5.4. Alamgirnama of Aurangzeb

The *Alamgirnama* is a historical chronicle that documents the reign of Emperor Aurangzeb (r. 1658–1707), the sixth Mughal

emperor, who assumed the title 'Alamgir', meaning "Conqueror of the World." Written by Mirza Muhammad Kazim, a court historian during Aurangzeb's reign, the *Alamgirnama* is an official account of the first ten years of Aurangzeb's rule (1658–1668). Composed in Persian, it provides a detailed narrative of Aurangzeb's rise to power, his military campaigns, administrative policies, and the challenges he faced in consolidating and expanding the Mughal Empire.

The *Alamgirnama* begins with a detailed account of Aurangzeb's ascension to power following the brutal war of succession that arose after the illness of Shah Jahan. It describes the political intrigue, military confrontations, and strategic manoeuvres that led to Aurangzeb's victory over his brothers Dara Shikoh, Shuja, and Murad. The text portrays Aurangzeb's rise as divinely ordained, emphasising his piety and adherence to Islamic law. A significant portion of the *Alamgirnama* is devoted to Aurangzeb's military campaigns, both within the empire and on its frontiers. The chronicle meticulously records his expeditions against regional powers, including the conquest of Golconda, Bijapur, and various Rajput states. The text also highlights Aurangzeb's relentless efforts to suppress revolts and consolidate Mughal authority in the Deccan and other frontier regions. The detailed descriptions of battles, strategies, and the valour of Mughal commanders offer a comprehensive view of the empire's military prowess during this period. As such, the *Alamgirnama* differs from earlier Mughal chronicles, such as the *Akbarnama* and the

Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri, in its formal tone and focus on military and administrative matters.

The *Alamgirnama* outlines Aurangzeb's administrative policies, including his efforts to centralise power, reform the revenue system, and enforce Islamic law (*Sharia*). It describes his appointments of key officials, his efforts to curb corruption, and his emphasis on justice and efficiency. The chronicle also highlights Aurangzeb's commitment to religious orthodoxy, including his policies toward non-Muslims, such as the imposition of the *jizya* (a tax on non-Muslims) and the destruction of Hindu temples, which he justified for political reasons rather than religious bigotry.

1.6.6. Limitations

One of the most prominent limitations of Mughal historiography is its court-centric perspective. Most Mughal chronicles, such as the *Akbarnama* by Abu'l-Fazl, the *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri*, and the *Alamgirnama*, were written by court-appointed historians under royal patronage. As a result, these works primarily focus on the actions, achievements, and perspectives of the emperor and the nobility, often neglecting the lives and experiences of ordinary people.

Much of Mughal historiography also tends to prioritise political and military history, often at the expense of other aspects of society, such as economic conditions, cultural practices, and religious life, especially of the non-Muslim populations.

Recap

- ◆ Regional historiography revealed diverse political, social, and cultural histories
- ◆ Sources included court chronicles, inscriptions, religious texts, and literary works
- ◆ Persian became the dominant language for historical writing during sultanate rule
- ◆ Persian acted as *a lingua franca* uniting diverse linguistic communities
- ◆ It linked India closely with the eastern Islamic cultural world
- ◆ Mughal historiography blended Persian influence with local Indian traditions
- ◆ Babur's memoirs documented India's geography, climate, flora, fauna, and society
- ◆ Babur provided valuable ethnographic observations about Indian life and environment
- ◆ Akbar promoted a unified historical narrative for his pluralistic empire
- ◆ Works like *Tarikh-i-Alfi* and *Akbarnama* were commissioned during Akbar's reign
- ◆ Medieval histories often centered on rulers, dynasties, and military events
- ◆ Some chronicles detailed revenue systems, market policies, and administrative reforms
- ◆ Patronage shaped content, introducing bias and selective historical emphasis
- ◆ Court historians often focused on elite affairs rather than common life

Objective Questions

1. What is the primary focus of *Rajatarangini* by Kalhana?
2. The *Prabandha Chintamani* was composed by which Jain scholar?
3. Who wrote the *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi*?
4. What is the main theme of the *Kalingattuparani*?
5. Name the author of the work *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri*.
6. Which two Mughal emperors wrote their own autobiographies?
7. What is the primary language of *Baburnama*?
8. Which text provides a detailed account of Alauddin Khalji's market reforms?
9. Who commissioned the *Akbarnama*?
10. What is *parani*?
11. What was the official court language of the Mughal Empire?
12. Who supervised the compilation of the *Tarikh-i-Alfi*?
13. Which Mughal emperor introduced the "Chain of Justice" (*Zanjir-i-Adl*)?
14. Mention any one of the major limitations of Mughal historiography.

Answers

1. History of Kashmir
2. Merutunga
3. Ziauddin Barani
4. Military exploits of Kulottunga Chola I
5. Minhaj-i-Siraj



6. Babur and Jahangir
7. Chagatai Turkic
8. Amir Khusrau's *Khazain-ul-Futuh*
9. Akbar
10. The genre of Tamil literature that celebrates victorious battles
11. Persian
12. Mulla Ahmad Thattvi
13. Jahangir
14. Elitist and Court-centric perspectives

Assignments

1. Discuss how royal patronage influenced the writing of historical texts in medieval India. Use examples from both regional historiography and Sultanate historiography to illustrate how court historians, poets, and scholars shaped historical narratives to align with the interests of their patrons.
2. Discuss the contributions of Abul Fazl in writing Mughal history. Explain the historical significance of the *Akbarnama* and *Ain-i-Akbari*, considering both their strengths and limitations.
3. Explore the impact of natural disasters and environmental changes on medieval Indian societies as depicted in historical texts like *Rajatarangini* and *Akbarnama*.
4. Examine the themes of religious tolerance and orthodoxy in Mughal historiography. How do the writings of Akbar's and Aurangzeb's reigns reflect their respective policies on religion?

Reference

1. Beveridge, Annette Susannah (trans.), *Baburnama*, Rupa Publications, New Delhi, 2017.
2. Beveridge, H. (trans.), *The Akbar-Nama of Abu-l-Fazl*, 3 vols., Manohar, New Delhi, 2022.
3. Chandra, Satish, *Medieval India: From Sultanat to the Mughals*, Part One, Har-Anand, New Delhi, 2006.
4. Chattopadhyaya, Brajadulal, *The Making of Early Medieval India*, Oxford University Press, New Delhi, 2008.
5. Eaton, Richard M., *India in the Persianate Age, 1000-1765*, University of California Press, California, 2019.
6. Elliot, H.M. and John Dowson (eds.), *The History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*, 8 vols., Trubner and Co., London, 1867–1877.
7. Habib, Irfan, *Medieval India: The Study of a Civilisation*, National Book Trust, New Delhi, 2008.
8. Habib, Muhammad (trans.), *The Campaigns of Alaud-din Khalji Being Hazrat Amir Khusrau's Khaza'inul Futuh*, Diocesan Press, Madras, 1931.
9. <https://blogs.bl.uk/asian-and-african/2023/07/babur-the-naturalist.html>

Suggested Reading

1. Hardy, Peter. *Historians of Medieval India: Studies in Indo-Muslim Historical Writing*. Greenwood Press, 1982.
2. Kulke, Hermann, and Dietmar Rothermund. *A History of India*. Routledge, 2004.
3. Mukhia, Harbans. *The Mughals of India*. Blackwell, 2008.
4. Nizami, K. A. "Historical Literature of Akbar's Reign." *On History and Historians of Medieval India*, Munshiram Manoharlal, 1983.

5. Raverty, H. G., translator. *Tabakat-i-Nasiri: A General History of the Muhammadan Dynasties of Asia*. Gilbert & Rivington, 1881.
6. Rogers, Alexander, and Henry Beveridge, translators. *The Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri or Memoirs of Jahangir*. Franklin Classics, 2018.
7. Sastri, K. A. Nilakanta. *A History of South India: From Prehistoric Times to the Fall of Vijayanagar*. Oxford University Press, 1958.
8. Stein, M. A., translator. *Kalhana's Rajatarangini: A Chronicle of the Kings of Kashmir*. Motilal Banarsidass, 1900.
9. Thapar, Romila. *The Past Before Us*. Harvard University Press, 2013.
10. Wink, Andre. *Al-Hind: The Making of the Indo-Islamic World. Vol. 3*. Brill, 2004.



BLOCK

Evolution of Modern Theories of Historical Writings



UNIT

Vico and New Science

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ understand the historical and intellectual context in which Giambattista Vico developed *The New Science*, particularly in relation to Enlightenment thought
- ◆ gain a foundational grasp of Enlightenment principles, including rationalism and empiricism, and evaluate Vico's critical departure from them
- ◆ develop historiographical insight by analysing how Vico challenged prevailing notions of history, truth, and knowledge
- ◆ examine Vico's concept of the cyclical development of human societies and its relevance to the broader understanding of historical processes

Prerequisites

This unit focuses on the basic concepts of historiography, including the distinction between narrative and analytical approaches to history, the role of sources, and the evolution of historical thinking. A working understanding of Enlightenment philosophy, especially the ideas of reason, progress and individualism as advocated by thinkers like Descartes, Locke, and Voltaire, will help contextualise Vico's work. This will enable us to understand how *The New Science* positions itself both within and against the dominant intellectual currents of its time. Vico's contribution lies in his radical critique of rationalism and his emphasis on the poetic, social, and imaginative foundations of human knowledge, insights that continue to inform debates in historical theory and the philosophy of history.

Keywords

Scienza Nuova, Cartesian Approach, Descartes, Heroic Age, *Novum Organum*, Intellegere, *Disserere Scienza Nuova*, Cartesian Approach, Descartes, Heroic Age, *Novum Organum*, Intellegere

Discussion

2.1.1 Vico's Theory of Knowledge

In his *Scienza Nuova* (1725), Giambattista Vico set out to bridge the gap between historical study and the emerging social sciences, aiming to shape a unified discipline focused on understanding human society. To do this, he believed history needed to rest not just on facts, but also on solid theoretical and critical foundations. This vision led him to challenge Cartesian philosophy, which had dismissed history as unreliable and incapable of yielding certain knowledge. Rather than questioning the accuracy of mathematics, Vico targeted Descartes' broader claim that only mathematical reasoning could lead to true understanding. He argued that historical knowledge, while different in nature, deserves its own distinct framework of certainty, separate from the methods used in the natural sciences.

Vico argued that humans are capable of truly understanding history, its events, institutions, and intellectual creations, because we are the ones who bring them into existence. He challenged the core of Cartesian thinking, particularly the belief that truth is guaranteed by how clear and distinct an idea appears to the mind. He stated, "The fact that I think my ideas clear only proves that I believe them, not that they are true." People can easily mistake their own assumptions for undeniable facts. Instead, Vico insisted that what we really need is a way to determine the boundaries

of human knowledge, a framework that helps us distinguish what can genuinely be understood from what lies beyond our capacity to know.

Vico bases his argument on a central idea: that truth and creation are one and the same, and that we can only truly understand what we ourselves have made. This notion, captured in the phrase *verum et factum convertuntur*, means that genuine knowledge isn't just about observing something, but about having a hand in its creation. Humans can fully grasp mathematics because mathematical concepts are invented by us. When a mathematician begins with something like "Let ABC be a triangle, with AB equal to AC," it is his factum. It is precisely because the mathematician has constructed this triangle himself that he can claim to truly know it.

2.1.2 Understanding *Verum Factum*

René Descartes (1596–1650) was not only a brilliant philosopher but also a scientist whose ideas reshaped the way people thought about knowledge. Modern philosophy is often said to begin with him. His *Discourse on Method* (1637) was groundbreaking and marked a turning point in intellectual history. At the heart of Descartes' philosophy is what he called methodical doubt - a systematic process of doubting everything that could possibly be doubted (*de omnibus dubitandum*). He questioned the reality of the physical world, the reliability of the senses, and even the existence of his own

body. But there was one thing he could not doubt: the fact that he was thinking. This insight led to his famous statement: “Cogito, ergo sum,” which means “I think, therefore I am.” Thought, Descartes argued, proves existence. Starting from this certainty, he made the thinking self the foundation of his entire philosophy.

Vico disagreed with Descartes’ famous idea, “I think therefore I am,” because he felt it did not fully answer the doubts raised by skeptics. Sure, a skeptic may know they exist, but they still do not know where their thoughts or ideas come from, so they remain unsure about what’s real. Vico offered a different solution: we can truly know something if we made it. This is the heart of the *verum-factum* principle. For example, we humans created language, laws, customs, and society. Because we made them, we understand where they came from and why they exist. Thus, we can know the truth about them. In short, Vico says: if humans created it, humans can know it, and that is why knowledge is possible, despite what skeptics say.

Building on the idea that we can truly understand only what we create, Vico argues that history is particularly suited to human understanding because it is entirely the product of human thought and action. He sees the historical process as the gradual construction of language, traditions, laws, political systems, and other social frameworks by people over time. For Vico, history is essentially the story of how human societies and their institutions come into being and evolve. It is the first time history is clearly defined as the study of human-made realities. History isn’t the unfolding of a pre-set plan or intention. Rather, like God, humans act as true creators, shaping society from the ground up.

The historian’s task, as Vico sees it, is to mentally retrace how people in the past

shaped the world around them. There’s an innate connection between the historian and the historical subject, not because of any mysterious force, but because both share the same human nature. It’s this shared humanity that allows the historian to understand the past.

Vico’s view of history stands in sharp contrast to the Cartesian approach. Descartes brought a deep skepticism to knowledge, always questioning whether our ideas truly matched reality - a stance that made sense in the study of nature, but not in the study of human history. For Vico, history deals with the human world: our languages, customs, institutions, and the things we live and participate in every day. These things don’t require us to prove their existence; they are part of the shared fabric of life.

Descartes might question whether the fire he sees is real or just an idea in his mind. In the realm of history, there’s no need to separate the idea of something from the thing itself; they are one and the same. That’s the core of Vico’s insight: in history, facts and human meaning are inseparable, whereas Descartes built his philosophy on keeping those two apart.

The question has no meaning. Descartes, looking at the fire, asked himself whether, in addition to his own idea of a fire, there was also a real fire. For Vico, looking at something like the Italian language of his own day, no parallel question could arise. The distinction between the idea of such a historical reality and the reality itself would be meaningless. The Italian language is exactly what the people who use it think it is. For the historian, the human point of view is final. When it comes to history, you can’t really separate what people believed from what actually took place; they’re deeply intertwined. That’s the opposite of Descartes’ approach, which was all about drawing a firm line between thought and reality, between ideas and facts.



2.1.3 Idea of History

In response to Descartes' deep skepticism about what can truly be known, Vico offered a powerful alternative rooted in his *verum-factum* principle, the idea that we can genuinely understand what we ourselves have created. Since the core elements of history, like language, customs, laws, and institutions, are all human-made, they fall within the realm of knowledge that humans can access and comprehend.

Having laid this philosophical foundation, Vico turned to the practical side of things. He argued that history isn't just legitimate in theory; it can also be studied methodically. He developed a clear approach to historical inquiry, aimed at helping scholars avoid common mistakes and better understand the past. These methodological principles, later summarised by philosopher R.G. Collingwood, reflect Vico's vision of what history truly is and how it should be studied.

Vico believed that certain historical periods shared a distinct overall spirit or character, which shaped every aspect of life during those times and even echoed across different ages. He pointed out the strong similarities between ancient Greece during Homer's time and medieval Europe, two eras he grouped together as "heroic periods." Both were marked by rule through warrior elites, farming-based economies, storytelling traditions, and a value system centred on courage, honour, and loyalty. Thus, Vico suggested that if we want to go beyond Homer's writings to understand his world more deeply, we should look closely at the Middle Ages for parallels.

Vico observed that these types of historical eras didn't just resemble each other; they often unfolded in a recurring sequence. After a "heroic age" marked by imagination, poetry, and traditional values comes a more refined phase dominated by reason,

practical thinking, and a shift from rural life to industry. However, this high point doesn't last forever. Eventually, society slips into a new kind of chaos, the new barbarism of early times, but what Vico called a "barbarism of reflection," where intellectual life becomes hollow, caught up in abstract theories and pointless debates that no longer connect to real human experience.

According to Vico, history doesn't move in cyclical order; it moves in spirals. While certain patterns and stages may return, they always do so in a changed form, shaped by everything that came before. For instance, the roughness of medieval Europe wasn't just a repeat of the chaos in Homer's time; it was a new kind of disorder, deeply influenced by Christianity rather than ancient pagan beliefs. Each age is marked by its own distinct character because history is always generating something new. This is why, in Vico's view, we can't predict what's coming next. The job of the historian isn't to foresee the future but to understand the unfolding of the past in all its complexity.

After laying out his vision of what history truly is, Vico turns to warn historians about common pitfalls they must avoid. These mistakes, he suggests, are much like the "idols" Francis Bacon described in his *Novum Organum*, deeply rooted biases that distort understanding. Vico identifies five key sources of such error, each one a kind of trap that can lead historical thinking away from the right direction.

One common mistake historians make is overstating how rich, powerful, or impressive a certain period was, often simply because they admire it. Collingwood points out that this bias is very real. For example, he mentions how people are often unwilling to accept that Roman London may have had just 10,000 to 15,000 residents, even though archaeological findings support this number. Instead, they prefer to imagine a bustling city of 50,000 or more, driven by

their romanticised views of the ancient world.

When nations look back on their own history, there's often a tendency to present it in the best possible light. Collingwood notes that, for instance, histories of England, especially those written by and for the English tend to downplay military defeats and focus instead on victories or national pride.

Vico highlights a particular bias he calls the “conceit of the learned.” Historians often assume that the people they study were much like themselves educated, thoughtful, and intellectually inclined. Scholars tend to imagine historical figures as fellow academics. Vico believed that throughout history, the most impactful individuals were rarely those focused on academic or intellectual pursuits.

Another common mistake, according to Vico, is assuming that when two cultures share similar ideas or institutions, one must have borrowed them from the other. This overlooks the creative ability of the human mind to come up with similar concepts independently. Even in cases where one culture clearly influences another, like China's impact on Japan or Rome's on Gaul, the receiving culture doesn't simply copy what it's taught. Instead, it adopts only those aspects that fit with its own unique historical background and development.

Historians sometimes mistakenly assume that people from the past had better insight into earlier times simply because they lived closer to them. Collingwood gives a clear example of this by noting that the scholars in King Alfred's era actually knew far less about the origins of the Anglo-Saxons than we do today. Vico's point here is crucial: historical knowledge doesn't rely on an unbroken chain of memory or the accounts of earlier authorities. Instead, it can be pieced together through careful, scientific investigation, allowing us to understand the past even better than those who came

shortly after it.

Vico didn't stop at simply cautioning historians about common errors; he also offered constructive methods to help them move beyond just repeating what earlier sources claim. He emphasised that understanding the past isn't a passive act; it requires active effort and critical thinking.

One of Vico's most original contributions was showing how the study of language could help uncover historical truths. For him, the words a society uses reflect the way its people think. When a culture adapts an existing word to express a new idea, especially through metaphor, it reveals the conceptual tools they had before that new idea emerged. For example, Latin terms like *intellegere* (to understand) and *disserere* (to discuss) originated in farming vocabulary, meaning to “gather” and “sow.”

Vico approached mythology in much the same way. He believed that the gods of early religions were imaginative expressions reflecting the social and political realities of the people who created them. For example, in Greek and Roman myths, he saw vivid portrayals of family life, economic practices, and governance. These stories served as a poetic way for societies with limited reflective thinking to communicate ideas that later cultures would formalise into laws and moral codes.

Vico also introduced a fresh way of interpreting tradition. Instead of taking traditions at face value, he suggested viewing them as distorted memories of real events, filtered through the beliefs and perspectives of the people who passed them down. Every tradition holds some truth, but rarely in the form it appears. To understand what these stories truly mean, we need to consider who created them and what those people would have intended by those particular expressions.



Recap

- ◆ A pivotal moment came in 1708 with a public lecture that sowed the seeds of Vico's magnum opus, *Scienza Nuova* (The New Science), published in 1725.
- ◆ Vico boldly challenged Descartes' methodical doubt and his claim that only mathematical reasoning leads to certain knowledge.
- ◆ Instead, Vico asserted that history and human institutions, though not mathematical, are intelligible because they are our own creations.
- ◆ His verum-factum principle, "truth and the made are convertible," argues that we can truly know only what we have made, such as laws, language, and institutions.
- ◆ Vico rejected the idea of a divinely scripted history, instead framing history as a human endeavour shaped by evolving cultures and civilisations.
- ◆ He encouraged trust in the humanities, claiming they offer a legitimate path to knowledge, meaning, and collective understanding.
- ◆ Vico developed a methodical approach to studying history, treating it not as myth or memory, but as a science rooted in human agency.
- ◆ He introduced the idea of distinct historical epochs, each shaped by a unique "spirit of the age," laying the groundwork for modern philosophy of history.
- ◆ In doing so, Vico gave history its dignity by elevating it from mere chronicle to a disciplined, human-centred pursuit of truth. In essence, it was a new philosophy of history.

Objective Questions

1. What is the word meaning of *Scienza Nuova*?
2. In which year was Vico's *New Science* published?
3. Vico criticised which major philosopher's method of reasoning?
4. Which three stages of human development does Vico identify in *Scienza Nuova*?
5. What is the word meaning of *intellegere*?
6. In which work did Vico aim to unify historical study and social sciences?
7. Which emerging field did Vico want history to be connected with?
8. What does the Latin phrase "verum et factum convertuntur" mean?
9. Vico compares common pitfalls in historical thinking to what earlier philosophers called "idols"?
10. In which work did Francis Bacon describe these "idols"?

Answers

1. *The New Science*
2. 1725
3. René Descartes
4. Age of Gods, Age of Heroes, Age of Men
5. *Intellegere* (to understand)
6. *The New Science (Scienza Nuova)*
7. Social sciences
8. Truth and creation are convertible or one and the same
9. Francis Bacon
10. *Novum Organum*

Assignments

1. Discuss how Vico's view of history differs from the Cartesian approach to knowledge.
2. Discuss Vico's view on the originality of human thought in the context of cultural similarities across different civilisations.
3. How does Vico's idea of tradition challenge the literal interpretation of historical accounts? What method does he propose for uncovering their true meaning?
4. What role does Vico assign to the imagination and poetic thinking in the early stages of human history?
5. Compare and contrast Vico's understanding of the historian's task with modern historical methodology.

Reference

1. Collingwood, R. G. *The Philosophy of Giambattista Vico*. London: Howard Latimer, 1910.
2. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 B.C. to A.D. 2000*. New Delhi: Orient Longman, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Collingwood, R. G. *The Idea of History*. Oxford University Press, 1994.
2. Elliot, H. M., and John Dowson. *History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*. Cambridge University Press, 2013.
3. Gauche, Karl. *Karl Marx: Theory of History*. Princeton University Press, 1978.
4. Jenkins, Keith. *Re-thinking History*. Routledge, 2003.
5. Sen, S. P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.



UNIT

Positivism

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the key principles and assumptions underlying positivism
- ◆ describe Auguste Comte's contribution to the foundation of positivism
- ◆ analyse the role of empirical observation and scientific methods in positivist thought
- ◆ recognise the influence of positivism on the development of social sciences, especially sociology

Prerequisites

Positivism holds that the true path to knowledge lies in the methods used by the natural sciences. The term “positive” implies knowledge that is unquestionable and based on concrete evidence. According to this view, reliable understanding can only come from systematic and scientific investigation. This approach began influencing historical studies after the Scientific Revolution in the seventeenth century. Historians like Niebuhr and Ranke played a key role in shaping this transformation, pushing history toward a more rigorous, evidence-based discipline.

Keywords

Positivism, Romanticism, Scientific, Objectivity, Auguste Comte, Enlightenment, Ranke

Discussion

2.2.1 The Rise of Positivism and the Scientific Approach in Historical Thought

Positivism in historical thought emerged as a counter to the Romantic approach. While Romanticism brought emotion, imagination, and a focus on individual heroes and ideals like liberty and progress, positivism shifted the lens toward broader social patterns and collective experiences. It emphasised tracing events in a logical, evolutionary sequence rather than celebrating personal narratives or abstract ideals. Positivists dismissed the Romantic tendency to moralise history and instead highlighted the complex interplay of social forces. The positivist believed that by applying scientific principles, history could be studied with the same rigour and objectivity as the natural sciences.

Niebuhr and Ranke were pioneers in shaping what came to be known as scientific history. However, their idea of “scientific” didn’t refer to experiments or formulas; it meant telling history as accurately and objectively as possible, free from personal bias or emotion. This approach was echoed by Lord Acton, who urged the writers of *Cambridge Modern History* to strive for total neutrality and fairness. Historian J.B. Bury took a similar stance, famously declaring that history should be treated as a science, no less and no more, emphasising a disciplined and factual method of studying the past.

Ranke’s vision of scientific history aimed to uncover the past with as much precision and objectivity as possible. He believed that the historian’s role was to present historical events exactly as they happened, free from personal interpretation or bias. For Ranke, simply discovering new facts was a

worthwhile goal in itself. Around the same time, however, a different form of positivism was gaining ground through the work of French philosopher Auguste Comte. In the 1830s, Comte proposed that while carefully analysing sources and establishing facts was important, it was only the beginning. The real task, he argued, was to identify underlying patterns and formulate general laws of historical development, much like the principles found in the natural sciences.



Leopold von Ranke

Source: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Leopold_von_Ranke)

2.2.2 Auguste Comte

A form of historical positivism, distinct from the Rankean tradition, finds its roots in the ideas of Francis Bacon. During the Enlightenment, thinkers such as Hume, Montesquieu, and Condorcet aimed to apply the methods of Newtonian science to the study of human society, seeking to build a rational, law-governed understanding of social dynamics. In the 19th century, French theorist Henri de Saint-Simon pushed this vision further. He rejected abstract,

metaphysical thinking and championed what he called a “positive philosophy,” where the concept of gravity served as a metaphor for a unified, systematic approach to all branches of knowledge.

Auguste Comte, once the assistant to Saint-Simon, eventually emerged as the chief architect of positivism. Born in Montpellier, Comte was intellectually gifted from a young age. After a brief stint as a teacher, he joined Saint-Simon as his secretary, but their collaboration ended after seven years due to Comte’s fiercely independent nature. Embracing an almost religious tone, he declared himself the “high priest of humanity.” He passed away in 1857, in his residence in Paris, leaving behind a legacy that helped shape both positivism and modern sociology.



Auguste Comte

Source: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Auguste_Comte#/media/File:Auguste_Comte.jpg

Auguste_Comte#/media/File:Auguste_Comte.jpg

Comte’s grand ambition was to develop an intellectual and spiritual system grounded in science, which he called positivism, that he believed was necessary to fulfil the goals of the French Revolution by building a modern industrial society. To promote these ideas, he established the Positivist Society, which, after his personal transformation in 1854, evolved into something resembling a church. In this new faith, humanity itself was worshipped, with Comte taking on the role of its high priest.

Auguste Comte, often regarded as a great philosophical thinker, was the first to introduce and define the field of sociology, striving to establish it as a true science. He viewed society as an organised system governed by rules, something that could not be simply reduced to the sum of individuals. According to Comte, sociology was one of the core branches of human knowledge, alongside disciplines like mathematics, astronomy, physics, chemistry, and biology.

His method for studying society was both comparative and historical, focusing on how different societies are structured and how human social life evolves over time. Comte divided sociology into two main parts: “statics,” which dealt with the laws that maintain social order, and “dynamics,” which focused on the principles guiding social progress. The static aspect highlighted the delicate balance between individuals and society, emphasising the crucial role played by family and religion in keeping society connected. Meanwhile, the dynamic side described a “law of stages” that mirrored mental development, both individual and collective. Society, he believed, evolves from a primitive “theistic” phase characterised by superstition and imagined causes, through an intermediate “metaphysical” phase of abstract thinking, and finally reaches a mature “positive” stage where knowledge is based on observable facts and scientific reasoning.

Collingwood described positivism as a way of thinking where philosophy plays a supporting role to natural science, much like how it once served theology during the Middle Ages. The rise of Comtean positivism and its influence on historical thinking were closely tied to the explosive growth of the natural sciences in the 19th century. Comte, originally trained in mathematics, not only organised the scientific disciplines but also coined the term “positivism.” He aimed to apply the same principles used in fields like

physics and chemistry to the study of society. His approach involved two key steps: first, gathering observable facts, and second, using inductive reasoning to formulate general laws based on those facts.

In the positivist framework, historical facts were seen as the foundation upon which broader laws about human society could be built. After carefully collecting and verifying these facts, much like Ranke had advocated, Comte's vision called for the next step: identifying the underlying causes linking them, just as one would in the natural sciences. This mindset laid the groundwork for the emergence of sociology, a discipline Comte founded. In this scheme, the historian's job was to uncover what happened, while the sociologist's task was to explain why. As Collingwood noted, the sociologist was envisioned as a historian, one who could transform the study of the past into a rigorous science.

Comte laid out the goals and foundations of his philosophy in two major works: *The Course of Positivist Philosophy* (published between 1830 and 1842 in six volumes) and *The System of Positivist Politics* (released from 1851 to 1854 in four volumes). At the heart of these writings is the idea that every event or phenomenon follows fixed natural laws, and that our task is to identify and simplify these laws as much as possible. The term "positivism" reflects the clear, definite, and absolute nature of these laws, much like those found in the physical sciences. Comte argued that his approach offered two key insights: that human societies could be studied with the same scientific rigour as natural phenomena, and that it was indeed possible to uncover precise laws governing social and historical behaviour.

Comte introduced what he called the "law of three stages," a sweeping theory of human development. According to this idea, all societies and fields of knowledge evolve through three distinct phases: first comes the

theological-military stage, associated with ancient times; then the metaphysical-legal stage, reflecting the medieval period; and finally, the positive or scientific-industrial stage, which characterises the modern era. Comte believed that just as natural laws govern the physical world, similar patterns could be uncovered in the evolution of human thought and society. Understanding these social laws, he argued, would allow governments to guide historical change and even forecast its trajectory, ultimately paving the way toward an ideal society. His vision of history wasn't just analytical; it was deeply aspirational, imagining a future where moral and material progress would uplift humanity as a whole.

Although Comte's bold interpretation of history didn't win over most professional historians, his intellectual influence ran deep. His view of social thought as a tightly connected whole helped shape the evolution of modern social sciences. Emile Faguet even hailed Comte as France's most powerful thinker since Descartes, an unmatched catalyst of ideas and innovation.

The positivist historians elevated facts to a near-sacred status and placed great value on collecting every possible piece of evidence. This led to a massive accumulation of carefully verified data, drawn from texts, inscriptions, and archaeological discoveries alike. As R.G. Collingwood noted, the finest historians, such as Mommsen and Maitland, earned their reputations through mastery of such details.

Comtean positivism offered an important counterbalance to the Rankean method by emphasising the links and patterns between historical events. While Rankean historians were deeply committed to precision and the uniqueness of each moment, their work could sometimes appear fragmented or lacking in overall structure. Both schools of thought, however, treated historical facts as isolated units, each one to be discovered through a

separate, objective act of observation. This resulted in an overwhelming accumulation of tiny, disconnected details. Every fact was seen as existing independently, not just from other facts, but also from the historian investigating them. The role of the historian, in this view, was strictly limited: they were not to interpret or judge the facts, but only to report them exactly as they occurred.

One of the most significant claims of Comtean positivism was that human society could be studied using scientific methods. This idea laid the groundwork for modern sociology, which tries to uncover broad patterns, if not universal laws, within specific areas of human behaviour. After Comte and Buckle, thinkers like Marx, Spengler, and Toynbee carried forward the ambition to identify recurring structures in historical change. Even if historians haven't always produced strict laws, they have certainly drawn general conclusions about patterns, like the causes of revolutions or the nature of industrialisation. Aristotle, for instance, after analysing 158 different constitutions, concluded that the core cause of most revolutions was the conflict between the rich and the poor. Similar broad insights have been made about topics like imperial expansion, migration trends, and the emergence of authoritarian regimes.

2.2.3 Criticism of Positivism

Many historians have viewed the positivist approach with skepticism, often finding it out of step with the nature of historical inquiry. Collingwood criticised Comtean positivism, arguing that it offered little of value to the discipline of history. He rejected the notion that history could be studied like the natural sciences, insisting that historical events are fundamentally different from natural phenomena. Science aims to uncover universal laws; history, by contrast, is concerned with understanding unique events and individual experiences. From this perspective, the

historian's responsibility is to uncover and explain what truly happened, not to impose overarching laws on human affairs, a goal that positivism was poorly equipped to serve.

Collingwood argued that positivism left a mixed legacy for modern historical writing. On the one hand, it brought an unmatched ability to handle small, specific problems with precision. On the other, it left historians ill-equipped to tackle broader, more complex questions. The positivist obsession with minute details often prevented scholars from engaging with the larger forces or major events in history. A striking example is Theodor Mommsen, often seen as the greatest historian of the positivist era. Though he compiled an enormous amount of material with meticulous care, his *History of Rome* stops abruptly at the Battle of Actium, right when his original insights into Roman history would have mattered most.

Collingwood ultimately argued that the positivist insistence on avoiding value judgments had a deeply limiting effect on historical writing. The positivist policy prevented historians from engaging with the deeper meaning of the past. This restriction meant they couldn't explore how people in earlier times understood practices like slavery or emperor worship. Romantic historians had no issue examining such questions and sought to grasp the inner life and mindset of past societies. But positivist historians dismissed these concerns as irrelevant, focusing only on surface-level events. As a result, their history became narrow and external, overlooking the ideas and beliefs that shaped actions. This is why positivist historiography often confined itself to political history, ignoring fields like art, religion, and science. At the root of all these shortcomings was a flawed assumption: that historical facts, like scientific facts, could be directly observed. But history deals with events that are no longer accessible through the senses, and therefore require interpretation, something positivism was unwilling to embrace.



Recap

- ◆ Positivism emerged as a counter to the Romantic approach
- ◆ Auguste Comte became the chief architect of positivism.
- ◆ Auguste Comte introduced sociology as a distinct science, seeking to apply scientific rigour to the study of society.
- ◆ Founded the “Positivist Society” and envisioned a quasi-religion with himself as “high priest of humanity.”
- ◆ Divided sociology into statics (laws of order) and dynamics (laws of progress).
- ◆ Emphasised observation, collection of facts, and inductive reasoning to derive general laws.
- ◆ Comte treated historical facts as the foundation for identifying causal patterns, turning history into a “science.”
- ◆ He influenced modern sociology and inspired later thinkers like Marx, Spengler, and Toynbee.
- ◆ Auguste Comte served as a bridge toward developing sociology and social sciences.

Objective Questions

1. Who is considered the father of Positivism?
2. Positivism is most closely associated with which scientific method?
3. According to Comte, which is the final and highest stage of societal development?
4. In the context of Positivism, what is considered a reliable source of knowledge?
5. Which term did Auguste Comte use for the scientific study of society?
6. Who said history should be treated as a science, no less and no more?
7. According to Aristotle’s analysis of 158 constitutions, what did he

identify as the main cause of most revolutions?

8. What are the three stages in Comte's "law of three stages" of societal development?
9. What title did Auguste Comte give himself to reflect the religious tone of his philosophy?

Answers

1. Auguste Comte
2. Empirical observation
3. The Scientific (Positive) Stage
4. Systematic experimentation
5. Sociology
6. J.B. Bury
7. Conflict between the rich and the poor
8. Theological-Military, Metaphysical-Legal, and Positive-Scientific
9. High Priest of Humanity

Assignments

1. Discuss the role that positivism plays in the development of quantitative research methods.
2. How does Auguste Comte's version of positivism differ from other philosophical approaches?
3. Discuss the role of observation and empirical evidence in positivist philosophy.
4. What are the strengths and limitations of positivism as a scientific method?



Reference

1. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. New Delhi: Orient Longman, 2004.
2. Turner, Bryan S., editor. *The Cambridge Dictionary of Sociology*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006.

Suggested Reading

1. Collingwood, R. G. *The Idea of History*. Oxford University Press, 1994.
2. Elliot, H. M., and John Dowson. *History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*. Cambridge University Press, 2013.
3. Gauche, Karl. *Karl Marx: Theory of History*. Princeton University Press, 1978.
4. Jenkins, Keith. *Re-thinking History*. London: Routledge, 2003.
5. Marwick, Arthur. *The Nature of History*. London: Macmillan, 1970.
6. Sen, S. P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.
7. Upadhyay, Shashi Bhushan. *Historiography in the Modern World: Western and Indian Perspectives*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2016.



UNIT

Cultural History

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the importance of culture in shaping historical narratives and human societies
- ◆ identify key methods and sources used by historians to study cultural history, including art, literature, rituals, and oral traditions
- ◆ understand the evolution of historical inquiry from economic determinism to cultural analysis
- ◆ explain Interdisciplinary approaches to the study of society and history

Prerequisites

This unit focuses on building a foundational understanding of key intellectual developments that have shaped contemporary historical thinking. Among these is the ‘cultural turn’, a significant interdisciplinary shift that influenced disciplines such as history, political science, geography, economics, psychology, anthropology, and archaeology. This transformation redirected the focus of social sciences towards the interpretation of symbols, meanings, and representations, fundamentally reshaping the objectives and methodologies of social history. A crucial context for this turn lies in the crisis of classical Marxist social theory, particularly its base-superstructure model, which envisioned culture as a mere reflection of economic structures. This reductive and deterministic view of culture was challenged both from outside and within Marxism. Thinkers such as Antonio Gramsci revised Marxist thought by introducing the concept of hegemony, highlighting the complex and reciprocal relationship between economic forces and cultural institutions. This laid the groundwork for what is now broadly referred to as Cultural Marxism, which has significantly influenced the methods and aims of cultural historians.

Keywords

Cultural Turn, Jacob Burckhardt, New Cultural History, Anthropology, Culturalism

Discussion

2.3.1 Cultural History

What comes to mind when you hear the word culture? Arts, literature, movies...? Of course. Those are cultural activities. But is there anything else? Culture was previously defined in such a way that activities related to the realm of arts and literature constituted culture. However, this definition was excessively limited in scope. As a result of prolonged debates among scholars, the term “culture” acquired a new definition in the latter half of the twentieth century. Culture came to be defined as a way of life in a particular society. Due to its broader usage in common language, culture, as Raymond Williams states, is the most challenging concept in English to define. The fluidity of its meaning makes this word complex. It has been employed in various senses.

2.3.1.1 Rediscovery of Cultural History

Cultural history, as a distinct approach to understanding the past, gained renewed attention in the 1970s. It has evolved through four key phases: the early ‘classical’ phase; the emergence of the ‘social history of art’ in the 1930s; a growing interest in popular culture during the 1960s; and, more recently, the development of what is termed the ‘new cultural history.’ This field represents a relatively modern trend in historiography, shaped by extensive intellectual debates within Western academic circles. At its core, cultural history seeks to explore how cultures change and influence societies over time. However, defining “culture” itself remains

a complex challenge. The way we interpret culture and what constitutes cultural change continues to shape and expand the boundaries of this historical approach.

Germany and the broader German-speaking world have a deep-rooted tradition in the field of cultural history, one that dates back centuries and gained significant strength with thinkers like Jacob Burckhardt. This tradition developed in close connection with the hermeneutic philosophy shaped by figures like Schleiermacher and Wilhelm Dilthey. The term “cultural history” itself emerged in the German context in the late 18th century, originally envisioned as a comprehensive form of history that stood apart from more specialised disciplines such as the histories of philosophy, literature, music, art, or science.

By the late 19th century, debates around the value and purpose of cultural history intensified primarily in Germany, with some advocates drawing on sociological theories of cultural evolution, including those of Herbert Spencer. Although Jacob Burckhardt’s *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy* (1860) would later become a foundational work in the field, it received limited attention at the time of its publication and only gained recognition in the decades that followed.

Since the late 1970s and 1980s, cultural history has firmly established itself as a vital and distinctive field within historical scholarship. In recent times, it has gained even more prominence, emerging as a dynamic area of study at the intersection of history and cultural analysis. Back in the 1960s, the rise of social history, often

influenced by Marxist thought, began to incorporate cultural elements, broadening its scope. In Britain, Marxist literary critic Raymond Williams played a key role in shaping this shift with his work exploring the relationship between culture and society, which left a lasting impression on historians like Peter Burke. Edward Thompson's landmark book *The Making of the English Working Class* (1963) also reflected this trend. Although groundbreaking, it faced criticism from some Marxist circles for its focus on cultural expressions like folksongs and urban rituals, which they saw as diverging from more traditional class-based analyses.

2.3.1.2 The Anthropological Idea of Culture

The 1970s marked two significant shifts in historical thinking, one toward anthropology and the other toward psychoanalysis. The turn to anthropology, in particular, played a crucial role in shaping many studies on popular culture that emerged during this period. Meanwhile, folklore, later known as 'ethnology', remained somewhat marginal in the academic world in England but gained much more attention from cultural historians in other parts of Europe, especially in Scandinavia. The influence of anthropology on historical research wasn't uniform; it differed widely depending on the scholar and the cultural or national context in which they worked.

The approach known as "history from below" played a key role in bringing popular culture into historical analysis. It pushed historians to engage more deeply with anthropology, a discipline focused on understanding human cultures. This engagement significantly reshaped historical methods and perspectives. Thinkers like Clifford Geertz, Claude Lévi-Strauss, and Marcel Mauss profoundly influenced how historians began to interpret cultural practices. This blending of historical and anthropological

approaches came to be known as historical anthropology. One of the most notable examples of this method is Emmanuel Le Roy Ladurie's *Montaillou*. Combined with the insights of post-structuralist linguistics, the anthropological turn encouraged historians to study the symbolic practices and cultural meanings embedded in everyday life. Anthropological research on diverse social structures offered valuable frameworks for these new historical interpretations.

2.3.1.3 The Literary Turn

By the 1980s, historical scholarship began to show a noticeable shift towards literature, building on earlier developments, particularly the influential work of Hayden White in 1973. White stirred debate by suggesting that historical writing shares features with fiction, introducing the idea of 'emplotment', a concept later expanded by Paul Ricoeur. His arguments took time to gain traction among historians. What stood out during this period, both in anthropology and cultural history, was a renewed emphasis on close textual analysis. Scholars began treating archival documents not just as sources of information but as crafted texts, shaped by their own rhetorical structures. Alongside this, historians rekindled their interest in narrative as a key element of historical interpretation.

2.3.1.4 New Historicism

On the literary front, a renewed engagement with history emerged as a defining characteristic of the American movement known as New Historicism. This approach rejected the notion of literature as an autonomous or purely aesthetic phenomenon, instead insisting that literary texts be read as embedded within the broader web of historical, social, and cultural forces. New Historicists argued that texts both reflect and participate in the power dynamics, ideologies, and material conditions of their time. Rather

than treating history as a linear progression of facts, they conceptualised it as a discursive and contested field, deeply shaped by the interplay of power and knowledge.

The intellectual origins of New Historicism were strongly influenced by theoretical developments in historiography during the late 20th century. Traditional historicism, with its emphasis on objective archival research and the search for empirical truth, gave way to a more critical perspective that interrogated the very processes by which historical knowledge is constructed. Thinkers such as Michel Foucault challenged the idea of history as a transparent recounting of facts, focusing instead on how discourses shape the production of knowledge, subjectivity, and power. Similarly, Pierre Bourdieu's concepts of habitus and cultural capital highlighted the embeddedness of social structures in the production of historical and literary meaning, while Erving Goffman's work on performance and identity suggested the constructed nature of social roles.

New Historicists, led by figures such as Stephen Greenblatt, who drew particular attention to the English Renaissance, became pioneers in integrating these historiographical shifts into literary studies. Their method involved close readings of literary texts alongside contemporary historical documents, court records, pamphlets, and other cultural artefacts, all understood as part of a dynamic field of competing discourses. The movement's interdisciplinary character encouraged productive dialogue with historians who were themselves rethinking their practices. This mutual exchange of ideas led to the establishment of a joint academic journal in 1983, symbolising the collaborative spirit between literary scholars and historians eager to transcend disciplinary boundaries in pursuit of a more nuanced understanding of the past.

2.3.1.5 Concept of Social Memory

That same pivotal year witnessed the release of two books that would leave a lasting impact on both social and cultural studies: *Imagined Communities* by political scientist Benedict Anderson, and *The Invention of Tradition*, edited by Eric Hobsbawm and Terence Ranger. At the same time in Germany, Egyptologist Jan Assmann (1988, 1997) and his wife Aleida Assmann (1993, 1999), a professor of English literature, introduced the influential idea of 'cultural memory'. Their work quickly caught the attention of historians and became widely adopted within the field. Meanwhile, other historians gravitated towards the concept of 'social memory', a term originally developed by sociologist Maurice Halbwachs.

Over the past decade, the term 'social memory' has gained widespread use as a convenient shorthand to capture the complex processes through which societies select, interpret, and remember the past. It highlights the parallels between how memories are recorded collectively and individually. Historians now approach memory not just as a personal experience but as a historical phenomenon in itself, what we might call the social history of remembering. Since social memory, like individual memory, is selective, it becomes important to examine the underlying principles that guide this selection. These principles often differ across regions, communities, and time periods, reflecting broader shifts in cultural and historical consciousness.

2.3.2 New Cultural History

The 1990s marked a significant moment in the evolution of historical scholarship, often referred to as the era of the "cultural turn." This shift was sparked in part by Roger Chartier's influential essays on cultural history (1988) and followed closely by Daniel

Roche's work on the culture of clothing. In 1989, Lynn Hunt edited a groundbreaking volume that further solidified this new direction in historical thinking.

The New Cultural History at times evolved into a field defined primarily by its subject matter rather than by a cohesive approach or framework. Much like how social history often shifted focus from one group to another - workers, women, children, ethnic communities, the elderly, the youth, without necessarily connecting these themes or examining their interactions, cultural history too risked becoming fragmented. When driven mainly by the pursuit of novel or unusual topics, such as carnivals, cat massacres, or court cases on impotence, it could easily slip into a pattern of endlessly cataloguing cultural curiosities without deeper analytical integration.

Historians like Roger Chartier and Jacques Revel have done more than introduce new subjects for historical inquiry; they have fundamentally challenged the methods and aims of the discipline itself. Rather than merely continuing the tradition of studying *mentalités*, they have pushed for a deeper reflection on how history is practised, which is why their work often includes extensive discussions on methodology. Influenced by Michel Foucault, they have embraced the idea that the core subjects of the human sciences, such as the individual, madness, punishment, and sexuality, are not fixed or universal, but rather shaped by historically specific discursive frameworks.

The cultural turn is, in many ways, a reflection of the broader cultural history of the past generation. Beyond academic circles, it mirrors a wider shift in public perception, evident in the growing use of expressions like "the culture of poverty," "culture of fear," "gun culture," "teen culture," and "corporate culture." It also connects to larger societal debates, such as the "culture wars"

in the United States and ongoing discussions around multiculturalism in various parts of the world. Where people might have once referred to "society" a few decades ago, they now more commonly use the term "culture" in everyday conversations.

During this period, even political historians began engaging with cultural approaches. The concept of "*political culture*," adapted from North American political science, became increasingly common in historical analysis. Cultural perspectives were applied to the study of diplomacy and warfare, and some political scientists began exploring the ideas of cultural anthropologist Clifford Geertz. Geertz's seminal essay collection, *The Interpretation of Cultures*, has become a key reference point for historians across different time periods and regions, shaping the way cultural practices are analysed and understood.

Economic historians, too, began to expand their focus. Moving beyond traditional studies of production, they turned their attention to consumption and everyday practices. This led to productive collaborations with cultural historians, one notable example being the influential volume edited by John Brewer and Roy Porter, which drew inspiration from the pioneering ideas of British anthropologist Mary Douglas. Overall, the 1990s saw a blurring of disciplinary boundaries, as historians, political scientists, and anthropologists came together to explore how culture shapes and is shaped by historical experience.

By the 1980s, the New Cultural History movement, particularly in the United States, had begun to reshape historical inquiry by placing strong emphasis on representation and social practices. These two concepts became central to the approach. Culture, in this framework, is seen not as a static body of knowledge or customs, but as a set of dynamic, lived practices and performances that continually evolve. The ways



people act, interact, and express themselves reveal how society is structured and how its values are maintained or challenged. By analysing these everyday practices, historians can uncover the deeper cultural codes and norms that shaped life in the past. It is within these performances that the issue of representation, how meaning is constructed and conveyed comes to the fore.

Cultural history, as a result, has significantly broadened the scope of historical research. Since culture touches every aspect of social life, it invites inquiry into previously overlooked or marginalised topics.

This includes the histories of food, clothing, colour, emotion, the body, and sexuality, among others. Over time, cultural history has also absorbed insights from linguistic theory, psychoanalysis, communication theory, and network theory, constantly evolving as new methods and perspectives emerge.

Rather than being viewed as a narrow branch of historiography, cultural history represents a fundamental rethinking of how we understand human interaction, meaning, and change across time. It offers historians a richer and more nuanced lens through which to explore the complexity of past societies.

Recap

- ◆ Cultural history emerged in the 1970s, with roots going back to 18th-century Germany.
- ◆ Influenced by thinkers like Schleiermacher, Dilthey, and Jacob Burckhardt.
- ◆ Developed through four phases: Early “classical” phase, social history of art (1930s), interest in popular culture (1960s), New Cultural History (1970s onwards).
- ◆ Cultural history focuses on how cultures change, shape society, and influence historical development.
- ◆ The 1970s saw the “anthropological turn” in history.
- ◆ The 1980s saw a focus on narrative and textuality in historical writing.
- ◆ New Cultural History encouraged the study of marginalised topics like food, clothing, emotions, sexuality, and the body.
- ◆ It expanded historical inquiry beyond production to consumption and cultural practices.
- ◆ It encouraged interdisciplinary collaboration with anthropology, sociology, and political science.
- ◆ Cultural history redefined the scope of historiography.
- ◆ It shifted focus from purely political or economic history to meaning-making and symbolic practices.

Objective Questions

1. The cultural turn in history began to gain prominence in which decade?
2. The rise of cultural history is closely associated with which broader academic shift?
3. Who introduced the concept of 'hegemony' to describe a more flexible relation between economy and culture?
4. In which decade did cultural history begin to gain renewed attention as a distinct approach?
5. The German tradition of cultural history is closely associated with which thinker?
6. Who is considered a key figure in the development of New Historicism in American literary studies?
7. In which decade did New Historicism emerge as a significant movement?
8. Which historical period did Stephen Greenblatt focus on in his foundational work?
9. Which scholar's work in 1973 played a pivotal role in linking history and literature?
10. What is the concept introduced by Hayden White that compares historical writing to fiction?

Answers

1. 1980s
2. The cultural turn
3. Antonio Gramsci
4. 1970s
5. Jacob Burckhardt



6. Stephen Greenblatt
7. 1980s
8. English Renaissance
9. Hayden White
10. Emplotment

Assignments

1. Explain the role of symbols, rituals, and traditions in cultural history.
2. How do historians study cultural history? Mention some key sources and methods.
3. Discuss the relationship between art, literature, and cultural history.
4. Analyse how specific cultural practices, narratives, or symbols have contributed to the formation of individual or collective identities.

Reference

1. Burke, Peter. *Cultural History: An Interdisciplinary Approach*. University of Cambridge, 2024.
2. —. *Varieties of Cultural History*. New York: Cornell University Press, 1997.
3. —. *What Is Cultural History?* Malden: Polity, 2008.
4. —. “*Cultural History: An Interdisciplinary Approach*.” *CulturaHistorica.org*, 2020
5. <https://culturahistorica.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/02/burke-cultural-history.pdf>.
6. Hunt, Lynn. *The New Cultural History*. London: University of California Press. 1989



Suggested Reading

1. Bennett, Tony, and John Frow, editors. *The SAGE Handbook of Cultural Analysis*. Los Angeles: SAGE Publications, 2008.
2. Bonnell, Victoria E., and Lynn Hunt, editors. *Beyond the Cultural Turn: New Directions in the Study of Society and Culture*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999.
3. Burckhardt, Jacob. *The Greeks and Greek Civilization*. Translated by Sheila Stern. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1998.
4. Burke, Peter. *Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe*. 3rd ed., England: Ashgate Publishing, 2009.
5. —. *Varieties of Cultural History*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1997.
6. Chaney, David. *The Cultural Turn: Scene-Setting Essays on Contemporary Cultural History*. London: Routledge, 1994.



UNIT

A. J. Toynbee and the Study of Civilizations

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the historical context in which Arnold J. Toynbee developed his theory of civilizations
- ◆ describe the main features of Toynbee's model of the rise and fall of civilizations
- ◆ critically analyse Toynbee's comparative approach to the study of civilizations in contrast with other historical theories
- ◆ assess the strengths and limitations of Toynbee's theory in understanding cultural and civilizational development

Prerequisites

Before engaging with the theories of Arnold J. Toynbee, we should develop a foundational understanding of both his intellectual background and the historical context that shaped his work. Born in London in 1889 and educated at Balliol College, Oxford, Toynbee combined rigorous academic training with practical experience in international affairs, notably serving as Director of Studies at the Royal Institute of International Affairs from 1925 to 1955. His dual engagement with history and global politics provided a unique vantage point from which he analysed the cyclical patterns of civilizations.

We should be familiar with Toynbee's most influential work, *A Study of History*, in which he presents his core concepts such as the "challenge and response" mechanism and the cyclical rise and fall of civilizations. In addition, understanding his other major works, *Civilization on Trial*, *The World and the West*, *Nationality and War*, *Greek Historical Thought*, *Hellenism: A History of a Civilization*, and

Keywords

Discussion

Toynbee saw civilizations as a relatively recent development in the long span of human history. He challenged popular ideas such as the “unity of civilization” or a single, continuous “unity of history,” arguing instead that these are misleading simplifications. In his view, civilizations share only one essential trait: they are distinct from primitive societies. He firmly rejected the belief that Western



civilization is the sole or ultimate form of human progress, as well as the diffusionist theory that traces all civilizations back to ancient Egypt.



Arnold Toynbee

Source <https://www.shutterstock.com/id/editorial/image-editorial/>

prof-arnold-toynbee-joseph-ch-14-april-2232441a

Over the course of 6,000 years, Toynbee identified and examined the life cycles of 21 different civilizations or “societies.” Of these, fifteen evolved from earlier civilizations, while six, including the Egyptian, Sumerian, Minoan, Sinic (Chinese), Mayan, and Andean, developed independently from primitive cultures. He further classified civilizations based on their current status: some, like the Egyptian, Babylonian, and Minoan, have died out; others, such as the Polynesian, Eskimo, and nomadic, have become stagnant or “arrested”; while a few, including Western Christian, Orthodox Christian, Islamic, Hindu, and Far Eastern civilizations, remain active and evolving.

2.4.2 Genesis of Civilizations

According to Toynbee, the birth of civilizations—the shift from primitive or stagnant societies to dynamic ones - cannot be explained by race or geography alone. He believed that civilization emerges when two key factors come together: first, the rise of a creative minority or visionary elite

capable of inspiring and leading change; and second, an environment that presents just the right level of challenge. If conditions are too easy, they breed complacency; if they are too harsh, they stifle effort. It is in this delicate balance, where obstacles provoke innovation and leadership channels it, that civilization takes root. In Toynbee’s view, the act of creation springs from confrontation, and the beginning of civilization is always born from interaction.

At the heart of Toynbee’s interpretation of history lies his well-known theory of *challenge and response*. He believed that civilizations come into being through a dynamic process: they are forged in the way societies challenge and response. A challenge, in this sense, is any significant obstacle or crisis a society faces, while a response is the innovative solution or adaptation it develops. When a society, guided by a creative and capable minority, manages to respond effectively to a series of such challenges, it gives rise to civilization.

Toynbee illustrates this with the example of the Afrasian grasslands, which gradually became more arid over time. Most people in the region failed to adapt, but a portion retreated to the Nile Delta, where they drained marshes and cleared jungle—an impressive response that laid the foundation for ancient Egyptian civilization. For Toynbee, this pattern repeats across history: every civilization is essentially a story of how human societies have answered the trials thrown at them. This ongoing cycle of challenge and response, he argues, forms the underlying rhythm of historical development.

2.4.3 Growth of Civilizations

Toynbee reminds us that it is a mistake to believe civilization naturally continues to grow once it has taken shape. In reality, not all civilizations that emerge continue to develop. Some reach a point of stagnation

- what he calls “arrested civilizations” with examples being the Polynesians, Eskimos, and nomadic societies. For growth to happen, it is not enough to simply overcome a challenge. True development occurs when each successful response leads to new challenges, which are then also met with creativity and determination.

Take the ancient Greeks, for instance. They responded effectively to the disorder of their early environment by forming organised city-states instead of scattered villages. However, this success led to a new problem: population pressure, a challenge similar to what Thomas Robert Malthus later described. Their ability to respond to this second challenge determined whether their civilization would continue to grow or stall. For Toynbee, growth is a continuous process of adaptation, not a one-time achievement. The Greeks initially addressed the problem of overpopulation by expanding into *Magna Graecia*, establishing colonies throughout the eastern Mediterranean. However, their efforts were eventually blocked by non-Greek groups, leaving the core issue unresolved.

In Athens, the looming threat of social unrest was defused by visionary leaders who implemented sweeping economic and political reforms, most notably under Solon. Rather than collapse into chaos, the city redirected its path through internal transformation. Toynbee suggests that this kind of forward movement in a civilization depends on a vital creative force. It is this energy, embodied by a dynamic and imaginative minority, that drives a civilization forward, guiding it through recurring challenges and shaping its continued evolution.

Toynbee believed that a civilization’s true growth should be judged by its journey toward greater self-mastery and inner freedom. He described this process with the term *etherealization*, the gradual refinement and simplification of methods and technologies.

A classic example would be the evolution from wired to wireless communication. At the heart of this progress are creative individuals or pioneering groups who spark transformation.

Toynbee saw their role as involving a dual movement: first, a ‘withdrawal’ from society to seek deeper understanding or vision, followed by a ‘return’ to share that insight and inspire change. This pattern can be seen in the lives of transformative figures such as St. Paul, the Buddha, Muhammad, St. Benedict, St. Gregory the Great, and Dante. The same cycle of retreat and re-engagement, he argued, applies not only to individuals but to creative minorities as well - those small groups that shape the destiny of civilizations.

Toynbee points to how Athens responded to the population crisis that unsettled Hellenic society. While much of Greece spent two centuries establishing colonies to ease the pressure, Athens held back from the rush. However, this period of restraint later positioned it to emerge as the leading force in the confrontation with the Persian Empire. Similarly, Italy turned inward from the mid-1200s to the late 1400s, retreating from broader European affairs. Yet this inward focus allowed Italy to cultivate the intellectual and cultural resources that would later enable it to take centre stage in the Renaissance and shape the future of Europe.

2.4.4 Decay or Breakdown of Civilizations

According to Toynbee, with the exception of Western civilization, all others have either collapsed or are clearly in decline. He rejects deterministic theories and economic explanations for why civilizations fall, such as those that attribute the decline of the ancient world solely to material causes. Instead, Toynbee sees the breakdown as something that begins from within. Civilizations, he argues, do not die from external attacks but

from internal decay, which he describes as a kind of collective self-destruction. This occurs when the once-creative elite, who originally inspired progress, shift from leading by example to ruling by force, transforming into a “dominant minority.” As a result, the wider population becomes alienated and disconnected, reduced to a passive, disengaged proletariat. When this divide becomes too great, society fractures, and having lost its inner drive and unity, the civilization begins to unravel.

Toynbee outlines several ways in which civilizations bring about their own downfall - not through external defeat, but by losing their ability to steer themselves from within. This self-destruction often takes subtle and ironic forms:

- a. **Nemesis of Creativity:** Sometimes, the very success of a civilization becomes its undoing. Toynbee calls this the *nemesis of creativity*. A striking example is the ancient Israelites, whose discovery of monotheism led them to believe they held a unique divine status as God’s Chosen People - a belief that later proved limiting. A similar downfall rooted in past success can be seen in the Hellenistic world’s idealisation of the city-state and in Athens’s self-glorification as “the school of Greece.” Their pride in earlier achievements became a barrier to adaptation and growth.
- b. **Militarism:** Civilizations built on military strength often fall by the same sword they wield. Assyria, once dominant through sheer force, had already exhausted itself by the time it was overtaken by the Medes and Babylonians. Toynbee refers to Assyria as a “corpse in armour.” Sparta’s fate mirrors this slow self-destruction through excessive militarisation.
- c. **The Intoxication of Victory:** Sometimes, a civilization collapses

under the weight of its own success. Toynbee highlights the fall of the Hildebrandine Church, which aspired to create a Christian world order. Its eventual decline reflected the dangers of triumph turning into pride.

Toynbee describes the breakdown of a civilization as marked by a deep fracture, both in society and in the individual psyche. The *Schism in the Body Social* becomes visible when society fragments into dominant minorities, such as military rulers, legal experts, bureaucrats, or intellectual elites, who no longer lead through inspiration but control through power. Meanwhile, internal groups, like rising religious movements (such as early Christianity or Mahayana Buddhism), begin to challenge the status quo from within, while external groups, like invading tribes or “barbarians,” press from the outside.

At the same time, a *Schism in the Soul* takes shape. Individuals become torn between extremes of self-indulgence and strict discipline, drifting aimlessness and an overwhelming sense of guilt. Cultural life reflects this disorientation: art and behaviour become coarse or chaotic, language becomes muddled, religions blend into confused hybrids, and people either cling to the past (archaism) or obsess over the future (futurism). Detachment and disillusionment set in.

In this climate of disintegration, some creative individuals rise with the hope of rescuing their crumbling world. One such figure is the “Saviour with the sword,” who imposes order through conquest and finds a universal state. Yet, as Toynbee warns, any civilization built on force alone is ultimately short-lived; its achievements, however grand, cannot endure.

2.4.5 Criticism

Arthur Marwick observes that while Toynbee found widespread popularity among general readers, he was often dismissed by academic historians. Most scholars agree that, despite the impressive scope of *A Study of History*, it doesn't quite qualify as history in the conventional sense. Though Toynbee repeatedly insisted his approach was grounded in observation and inductive reasoning, critics argue that he began with a theoretical framework and then shaped the facts to fit it. Rather than letting the evidence speak for itself, he filtered historical developments through a set of fixed categories and abstract concepts. His interpretations leaned heavily on overarching ideas like "challenge and response," "apparentation and affiliation," and the pattern of "withdrawal and return," turning history into a grand narrative governed by pre-established patterns.

This criticism partly stems from the fact that *A Study of History*, as Collingwood points out, essentially revives the spirit of 19th-century historical positivism. Toynbee's approach draws heavily from the methods of the natural sciences, treating history more like a process of biological or physical development than a product of human thought and experience. His view of civilization reflects a naturalistic model; societies grow, evolve, and decay much like organisms, and the historian's role is that of an impartial observer, much like a scientist studying nature.

Because of this outlook, Toynbee never embraces the idea that understanding history involves mentally reliving or reenacting the past. For him, the past is something detached and complete, not something that continues to live in the present through interpretation. As a result, history becomes static, reduced to a series of external events rather than a dynamic, ongoing dialogue between past and present. Instead of treating historical

knowledge as something that involves active engagement and insight, Toynbee's positivism turns it into a lifeless record, as if the past were no more than a sequence of natural phenomena.

Toynbee, critics argue, overlooks a vital truth: that the historian is not just an outsider observing history, but an active participant in the process, reconstructing and reliving past experiences in order to understand them. Professor A.L. Rowse sees *A Study of History* as dominated by a rigid sociological framework, which flattens the richness and unpredictability of the historical record. According to Rowse, Toynbee forces events to conform to his preconceived patterns, adopting the role of a prophet rather than a historian, and offering sweeping solutions to modern-day issues. But history, Rowse insists, is not meant to serve as a vehicle for prophecy or moral instruction. When a historian bends facts to fit a grand thesis, he argues, it ceases to be true history; it becomes distortion.

E. Barnes critiques Toynbee's grand comparative study of civilizations, arguing that its potential was undermined by deeply theological undertones. Rather than offering a purely historical analysis, Toynbee's work veers into the realm of theodicy, a justification of divine purpose in history. His interpretation often places religious developments above political or technological achievements. For Toynbee, the most significant turning points in human history weren't the building of empires or groundbreaking innovations, but the emergence of major world religions.

While the early volumes of *A Study of History* focus more on the empirical patterns of rise and decline among civilizations, the later ones, especially those written after World War II, reflect a shift toward spiritual interpretation. These volumes increasingly frame historical cycles as part of a divine plan, infused with a messianic tone. Among



the many figures Toynbee identifies as potential saviours of crumbling civilizations, only Jesus is seen as having triumphed over death, because, Toynbee asserts, he is the incarnation of God. Ultimately, Toynbee presents history as being shaped by spiritual forces, with its final destination not in secular progress, but in the realisation of the Kingdom of God. Many critics have pointed out that Toynbee's conclusions often reflect the perspective of a Christian moralist more than that of an objective historian.

Even his central idea, that civilizations rise, grow, and eventually collapse, has been widely debated. One major flaw in his argument is the rigid notion that when a civilization undergoes significant change, it must be considered dead and replaced by an entirely new one. This view leaves no room for the idea that a civilization can evolve and adapt while still retaining its core identity.

But do civilizations truly die? Or do they transform, leaving behind elements that continue to influence future societies? After all, we still use the alphabet, scientific principles, and artistic traditions that originated in ancient cultures long since "fallen." These contributions didn't vanish; they were absorbed, adapted, and passed down. Culture is not something that perishes with its creators; it evolves. While outward forms may shift, the essential threads often endure. In this sense, civilizations are not born or buried

in the way Toynbee suggests; they persist, change, and leave lasting legacies.

2.4.6 Contributions

Arnold Toynbee's monumental *Study of History* marked a significant departure from the traditionally Eurocentric approach to historiography. His effort to construct a truly universal history, rather than one centred on the West, gained even more relevance in the post-Second World War era, when formerly colonised and underdeveloped nations were beginning to assert their place on the world stage. Toynbee examined a remarkable range of civilizations from the Polynesian and Andean to the Egyptian, Babylonian, and modern Western Christian, demonstrating a breadth that few historians before him had attempted. As a British metahistorian, he went beyond the narrow confines of conventional historical writing, offering a sweeping comparative perspective that resonated with a broad audience.

His work served as a much-needed antidote to the increasing specialisation in academic history, encouraging a more holistic view of the human past. Ultimately, Toynbee's comparative approach to civilizations fosters greater cross-cultural understanding, inviting readers to recognise the shared contributions of different societies and to view human history as a collective achievement of all humankind.

Recap

- ◆ *A Study of History* (10 volumes, 1934–1961) is one of the most significant attempts to trace the story of human civilization.
- ◆ Toynbee focused on civilizations, not nations or time periods, as the central units of historical analysis.
- ◆ He compared 21 civilizations, studying their rise, growth, and fall.
- ◆ He was influenced by 19th-century positivism but was more empirical and comparative than Oswald Spengler.
- ◆ He classified civilizations as: Dead: Egyptian, Babylonian, Minoan. Arrested/Stagnant: Polynesian, Eskimo, Nomadic. Alive: Western Christian, Orthodox Christian, Islamic, Hindu, Far Eastern.
- ◆ Civilization emerges through two factors: a creative minority or visionary elite and a challenge of the right intensity, neither too easy nor too harsh.
- ◆ Challenge and Response Theory: Civilizations rise when they respond creatively to crises.
- ◆ Civilizations collapse from internal decay, not merely external invasion.
- ◆ The creative minority turns into a dominant minority, ruling by force.
- ◆ Toynbee offered a holistic vision of history, countering excessive academic specialisation.

Objective Questions

1. What was the name of the annual chronicle authored by Toynbee?
2. Toynbee analysed how many civilizations in *A Study of History*?
3. Who was the proponent of the theory of *challenge and response*?
4. Who was the author of the work *The Decline of the West*?
5. What is the title of Arnold Toynbee's major historical work?
6. How many volumes are included in Toynbee's *A Study of History*?

7. Between which years was *A Study of History* published?
8. Which historian praised the scale and vision of Toynbee's work as metahistory?
9. Toynbee's approach to history is most closely aligned with which historical approach?
10. Toynbee's *A Study of History* was partly a response to which earlier historical work?

Answers

1. *Survey of International Affairs*
2. 21
3. Toynbee
4. Oswald Spengler
5. *A Study of History*
6. 10
7. 1934–1961
8. Arthur Marwick
9. Positivist History
10. *The Decline of the West*

Assignments

1. Discuss the concept of “challenge and response” in Toynbee’s analysis of civilizations.
2. How does Toynbee differentiate between ‘civilization’ and ‘society’?
3. Analyse the role of religion and spirituality in Toynbee’s view of civilizations.
4. What are the key factors that, according to Toynbee, lead to the decline of a civilization?
5. How did Toynbee’s approach differ from that of other historians, such as Oswald Spengler?

Reference

1. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. New Delhi: Orient Longman, 2004.
2. Toynbee, Arnold J. *A Study of History*. Oxford University Press.

Suggested Reading

1. Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1982.
2. Elliot, H. M., and John Dowson. *History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*. Cambridge University Press, 2013.
3. Jenkins, Keith. *Re-thinking History*. London: Routledge, 2003.
4. Sen, S. P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.
5. Thomson, J. W. *A History of Historical Writings*. Macmillan, 1942.



BLOCK

Impact of Renaissance on Theories of Historical Writings



UNIT

Renaissance

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ examine the origins and development of Renaissance historiography
- ◆ explain the role of Humanism in shaping historical thought
- ◆ identify the contributions of key Renaissance historians and thinkers
- ◆ assess the influence of Renaissance historiography

Prerequisites

The Renaissance was not only a period of cultural and artistic flourishing but also a crucial turning point in the evolution of historical thought. Emerging in Europe between the 14th and 17th centuries, this era witnessed a fundamental reimagining of how the past was studied, interpreted and written. Renaissance historiography marked a decisive break from the theological frameworks and chronicle traditions of the medieval period. Instead of viewing history as a linear unfolding of divine will, Renaissance historians, deeply influenced by classical antiquity and humanist began to approach the past with a critical, secular and analytical lens.

At the heart of this transformation was the humanist movement, which emphasised a return to original sources (*ad fontes*), critical philology and the study of history as a tool for moral instruction and civic virtue. Thinkers like Leonardo Bruni, Flavio Biondo and Petrarch developed new methods of periodisation, questioned the authenticity of sources and emphasised individual agency and empirical evidence in historical The invention of the printing press further democratised access to texts and accelerated the spread of historiographical innovations.

This unit examines how Renaissance thinkers historicised their own age, forging a new discipline that blended classical with innovative critical methods.



Keywords

Rebirth, Humanism, Mechanical Printing Press, Studia humanitas, Periodisation, Classical Revival, Secular, Protestant Reformation

Discussion

3.1.1 Renaissance: Meaning and Historicisation

The term 'Renaissance', in a simple sense, means rebirth or reawakening. It was a transformative period in European history that spanned roughly from the 14th to the 17th century. It marked the transition from the Middle Ages to modernity, characterised by a renewed interest in the classical knowledge of ancient Greece and Rome, a flourishing of the arts and significant advancements in science, technology and exploration. The Renaissance was not merely a historical epoch but a cultural movement that reshaped the intellectual, artistic and social fabric of Europe.

This period marked a profound transformation in European thought, including the study and writing of history. Renaissance historiography emerged as part of a broader revival of classical antiquity, driven by humanist ideals. It introduced critical methodologies, literary refinement and a secular outlook to historical writing, marking a departure from the theological and often allegorical approach of medieval chronicles. Renaissance historians laid the foundations for modern historical scholarship by emphasising empirical evidence, individual agency and stylistic excellence.

One of the earliest historians to popularise the term “Renaissance” was Jules Michelet in his 1855 work *Histoire de France*, where he emphasised the cultural and intellectual awakening that distinguished this period. Later, the Swiss historian Jacob Burckhardt

further established the term in his influential book *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy* (1860), which provided a comprehensive analysis of the era’s artistic and cultural achievements.

3.1.2 Origins of Renaissance Historiography

Renaissance historiography developed in a period characterised by a revival of classical learning, the growth of humanism, the spread of printing technology and the gradual decline of feudalism. These developments had a profound influence on how history was conceived and practised.

The Renaissance emerged in the wake of the decline of feudalism, a medieval system of social and economic organisation based on land ownership and loyalty to a lord. As feudalism waned, Europe saw the rise of powerful city-states, particularly in Italy, where the Renaissance first took root. Cities like Florence, Venice and Milan became centres of trade, commerce and wealth, fostering an environment conducive to cultural and intellectual growth. These city-states provided new subjects for historical inquiry. Historians began to focus on national histories, statecraft and civic identity.

This Renaissance culture kickstarted with the rediscovery of classical antiquity. Full-time scholars and artists of the period sought to revive the knowledge and aesthetics of ancient Greece and Rome, which had been largely neglected during the Middle Ages. The fall of Constantinople in 1453 to the

Ottoman Turks prompted an influx of Greek scholars and texts into Italy, further fuelling the Renaissance's engagement with classical thought. Renaissance historians looked to ancient Greek and Roman historians like Livy, Tacitus and Thucydides for inspiration. This classical revival was part of a broader Renaissance trend of *ad fontes* ("to the sources"), where scholars sought original texts to bypass medieval distortions.

Humanism, a key intellectual movement of the Renaissance, emphasised the study of classical texts and the potential for human achievement. Humanists like Petrarch and Erasmus advocated for a return to the original sources of knowledge, promoting critical thinking and the study of literature, history and philosophy. This revival of classical learning had a profound impact on education, art and science, shaping the Renaissance worldview.

However, such artistic and scientific revivals have taken place in other parts of the world, such as the Islamic Golden Age or the Chinese cultural revival under the Yuan dynasty, to name a few. This raises the question: What made the European Renaissance such a widespread and impactful movement? The invention of the mechanical printing press. Johannes Gutenberg invented the mechanical printing press around 1440 and it was quickly replicated by other inventors and financiers across Europe. Unlike earlier printing methods that relied on carving entire wooden blocks for each page, Gutenberg's press used individual metal letters made of a special alloy of lead, tin and antimony that could be assembled and reused to create different text combinations. The printing press revolutionised the dissemination of knowledge, making books more accessible and affordable. This democratisation of information facilitated the spread of Renaissance ideas, enabling a broader audience to engage with classical texts, scientific discoveries and literary works.

3.1.3 Humanism

Humanism was the intellectual bedrock upon which the Renaissance was built. The humanist emphasis on the study of classical antiquity, the dignity and potential of human beings and the importance of education and civic engagement resonated deeply with the cultural and intellectual aspirations of the Renaissance. Humanist scholars sought to revive the wisdom of ancient Greece and Rome, advocating for a return to the original sources of knowledge and a more human-centred approach to learning. This revival of classical learning had a profound impact on the Renaissance, shaping literature, philosophy and science. Humanist principles encouraged a focus on individualism, critical thinking and the pursuit of excellence, fostering an environment of creativity and innovation that defined the Renaissance.

The Renaissance marked a shift back to the humanistic outlook on life, inspired by the traditions of ancient Greece and Rome. As a result, historical thought once again placed man at its centre. Humanism had a profound impact on education during the Renaissance, leading to the development of a more well-rounded and human-centred curriculum. Humanist educators emphasised the importance of studying the humanities, including grammar, rhetoric, poetry, history and moral philosophy, as a means of developing critical thinking, eloquence and ethical reasoning. The humanist educational ideal was reflected in the establishment of new schools and academies, such as the Platonic Academy in Florence, which became centres of humanist learning and scholarship.

Humanism criticised the existing scholastic focus on abstract theological debates, advocating instead for a more practical and human-centred approach to learning. Humanist scholars devoted themselves to *studia humanitas*, which included the study of rhetoric, grammar, poetry and ethics.

3.1.4 The Growth of Literature

3.1.4.1 Historical and Political Treatises

Throughout the period of the Middle Ages, all scholarly and religious literature was written in Latin. This was the language of the elite and upper classes. The Renaissance created a distinct literary culture that made works of poetry, drama and history accessible to a wider public. Not only was Latin replaced as the medium, but there was also a very significant growth of vernacular literature in the commonly spoken languages of the time: Tuscan, English, German, French and Spanish.

The Renaissance was marked by a profound revival of interest in the literature of ancient Greece and Rome. Humanist scholars, such as Petrarch and Boccaccio, sought to rediscover and study classical texts, which had been largely neglected during the Middle Ages. This revival of classical learning had a significant impact on Renaissance literature, inspiring writers to emulate the styles, themes and forms of ancient authors. Francesco Petrarch, often considered the “Father of Humanism,” criticised medieval historiography for its lack of critical engagement with sources. His main historical works, including *On Famous Men* and *Africa*, sought to revive classical models of history, focusing on individual virtue and civic responsibility rather than divine intervention. He proved that a grant, which had supposedly been written by Caesar and which exempted Austria from imperial jurisdiction, was a forgery.

Leonardo Bruni was a Florentine humanist who is often regarded as the father of Renaissance historiography. In his *History of the Florentine People*, he adopted a secular, civic-oriented approach, dividing history into three periods: Antiquity, the Middle

Ages (which he called a “dark age”) and his own era of rebirth. His use of classical Latin, critical methods and civic humanist ideals was foundational. Flavio Biondo was another pioneering historian and antiquarian known for his *Decades of History from the Deterioration of the Roman Empire*, written from 1439 to 1453 and published in 1483. This work documented the history of Europe after the fall of Rome. He is noted for introducing the idea of the “Middle Ages,” which he viewed as a period of decline that focused on antiquarian details and geography, foreshadowing later historical techniques.

As mentioned earlier, this growth of literature during the Renaissance was significantly fuelled by the invention of the printing press, which facilitated the wider distribution of books and ideas. The flourishing of vernacular languages allowed writers to reach broader audiences beyond the Latin-speaking elite. Writers began to craft works that not only reflected classical influences but also addressed contemporary social, political and philosophical issues.

The revival of classical antiquity, the rise of humanism and the changing political landscape of Europe all contributed to the evolution of new ideas about governance, statecraft and the role of the individual in society. The rise of nation-states was accompanied by the development of new forms of governance and administration, as well as the growth of bureaucratic institutions. This period also saw the increasing influence of secular authority and the gradual decline of the political power of the Catholic Church, setting the stage for the development of modern political theory.

Niccolò Machiavelli is one of the most influential political thinkers of the Renaissance, known for his pragmatic and often controversial views on power and governance. Born in Florence, Machiavelli served as a diplomat and political advisor

before being exiled by the Medici family. During his exile, he wrote his most famous work, “*The Prince*,” a treatise on political power and statecraft. Machiavelli’s political theory is often characterised as realist, emphasising the importance of power, pragmatism and the practicalities of governance. In “*The Prince*,” Machiavelli argues that a ruler must be willing to use any means necessary to maintain power and ensure the stability of the state. He famously states that it is better for a ruler to be feared than loved, as fear is more reliable and enduring. Machiavelli’s work marked a departure from the traditional emphasis on moral and religious principles in governance, advocating instead for a more secular and pragmatic approach to politics. His ideas challenged medieval notions of virtue and morality, focusing instead on the effective exercise of power and the preservation of the state.

Francesco Guicciardini, a Florentine like Machiavelli, was considered his greatest successor and rival as a historian. At the young age of twenty-seven, he wrote the *History of Florence*, covering the years 1378 to 1509. His work was praised for its accuracy, careful use of sources, deep analysis and fair judgement. Critics admired his clear narrative, sharp understanding of politics, detailed character studies and precise descriptions. Although he gave little importance to literary style, his writing remained lively and forceful.

Guicciardini’s masterpiece was the *History of Italy* (1492–1534), written in ten volumes. This work was broader in scope, covering Italy and its connections with the rest of Europe. It was one of the first histories to view European politics as a single system and set a model for political and diplomatic history. Guicciardini relied on his own experiences and rich archival material, though he sometimes used invented

speeches, admitting they were only true in spirit. He was still considered more reliable than Machiavelli.

The *History of Italy* became highly popular, with many editions and translations in European languages. Together with the *History of Florence*, it established Guicciardini as the greatest historian of the sixteenth century. His reputation was so high that even Emperor Charles V admired him deeply, declaring that while he could create nobles easily, he could not produce a historian like Guicciardini even in twenty years.

Another equally important political thinker was **Jean Bodin**, the French political philosopher and jurist whose work, *Six Books of the Commonwealth*, is a foundational text in the development of modern political theory. In this work, Bodin argues that sovereignty is indivisible and supreme, residing in the authority of the ruler or governing body. Bodin’s theory of sovereignty marked a shift from the medieval notion of divided authority, where power was shared between the church, the nobility and the monarchy, to a more centralised and unified conception of the state. His ideas laid the groundwork for the development of modern nation-states and the concept of state sovereignty in international law.

The Renaissance’s focus on the practicalities of power and the importance of reason and education in politics also contributed to the development of democratic ideals and the concept of the social contract, as explored by later Enlightenment thinkers such as Thomas Hobbes, John Locke and Jean-Jacques Rousseau.

3.1.4.2 Scientific Treatises

The Renaissance was a period of significant scientific advancement, marked by a shift from reliance on ancient authorities to

empirical observation and experimentation. The work of figures like Nicolaus Copernicus, Galileo Galilei and Leonardo da Vinci laid the groundwork for the Scientific Revolution, challenging traditional views of the universe and advancing our understanding of the natural world. Copernicus's heliocentric theory, which posited that the Earth and other planets revolve around the sun, was a radical departure from the geocentric model of the universe that had dominated medieval thought. Galileo's use of the telescope to observe celestial bodies provided empirical evidence to support Copernican theory. He also observed that three moons circled around the planet Jupiter and that the moon was not a perfect, round and smooth body, but had ridges and valleys. He published all these discoveries in his book *Siderius Nuntius* (Messenger from the Stars) in 1610. However, this new knowledge threatened the stability of the Church and the social order it created, leading to conflict with the Church that resulted in Galileo's trial, where he was condemned and forced to retract his statements.

Artists like Leonardo da Vinci and Albrecht Dürer combined their artistic talents with scientific inquiry, producing detailed anatomical drawings, studies of perspective and explorations of the natural world. Leonardo's notebooks, filled with sketches and observations on anatomy, engineering and botany, exemplify the humanist ideal of the Renaissance man—a polymath who excelled in multiple fields of study and creativity. This integration of art and science contributed to the period's spirit of curiosity and innovation, fostering a deeper understanding of the natural world and the human condition.

The scientific advancements of the Renaissance laid the groundwork for the Scientific Revolution, a period of rapid scientific progress that began in the 16th century and continued into the 18th century.

The Renaissance's emphasis on empirical observation, experimentation and the questioning of traditional beliefs set the stage for the development of modern science.

Humanist scholars like Francis Bacon and René Descartes advocated for a systematic approach to scientific inquiry, emphasising the importance of observation, experimentation and the formulation of hypotheses. Bacon's *Novum Organum* and Descartes's *Discourse on the Method* laid the foundations for modern scientific thought, promoting a methodical and empirical approach to understanding the natural world. This shift from reliance on authority to empirical observation and rational inquiry was a hallmark of the Renaissance and a key contribution of humanism to the development of science.

Francis Bacon (1561–1626) strongly reflected the spirit of modern science in his philosophy. His ideas predated the discoveries of Galileo and Newton, yet they were already shaped by a scientific outlook and aimed at practical application. Bacon is remembered for creating a new method of inquiry and for defining the goals of science.

In his *Novum Organum* (*New Method*), he urged people to reject Aristotle's deductive reasoning and adopt induction, or the scientific method, to discover truth. He believed this method would reveal the causes and hidden movements of things. A key part of his philosophy was identifying “idols,” or mental habits, that mislead people. He argued that true scientific study requires clearing the mind of prejudice, assumptions and false traditions.

Through induction, we can understand nature's laws and use them to master nature. Bacon often reiterated that “knowledge is power” and that its purpose is usefulness. In *The Advancement of Learning*, he expressed the belief that expanding knowledge could improve human life. He even imagined a perfect society in *The New Atlantis*, where

science was guided and controlled to create a better world.

René Descartes (1596–1650) was both a scientist and a philosopher, often regarded as the father of modern philosophy. His book *Discourse on Method* (1637) was highly influential. The central idea in his philosophy was methodical doubt, meaning he questioned the reality of everything. However, he realised there was one thing he could not doubt: his own thinking. Even if the body or senses were deceptive, the act of thinking proved his existence. This led to his famous statement: “*I think, therefore I am.*”

From this, Descartes argued that anything we understand clearly and distinctly must be true. He believed certain ideas, such as God, the self, space, time, motion, mathematics and free will, are innate truths, arising from human reason rather than experience. With this foundation, Descartes aimed to create a universal system of knowledge and his logical, mathematical approach strongly shaped the philosophy of his time.

3.1.5 Impact of the Renaissance on Historiography

The Renaissance brought a fresh spirit of confidence in human potential. People believed that man had free will and could shape his own life. This idea was modern, unlike the medieval outlook. The new spirit influenced the writing of history by encouraging humanistic perspectives, creating lay historians, increasing interest in past remains, improving historical criticism and inspiring humanist historians like Machiavelli and Guicciardini. Beyond documenting the past, history was seen as a tool for moral education, political instruction and public virtue. Historical writing was deeply connected to humanist ideals, which linked classical wisdom with the improvement of society.

During the Renaissance, interest shifted from medieval religious concerns to human

life and the world. This brought a revival of historical studies influenced by the ancient Greeks and Romans, focusing once again on human affairs.

History moved away from Christian traditions and became more secular. People no longer saw history as guided by divine plans. Instead, history was written in a worldly, realistic way. Old forms like monastic chronicles and the lives of saints lost importance, giving rise to lay historians, especially in Italy. The survival of lay schools, the study of Roman law and the political independence of cities in Lombardy, Piedmont and Tuscany encouraged this new approach. Their republican governments and active civic life fostered practical and realistic historical writing.

Humanism deeply influenced Renaissance historiography by creating a new interest in ancient remains. Herbert Butterfield described this as an attraction to “the pastness of the past.” Earlier, Italians showed little care for monuments and even Pope Nicholas V allowed the Colosseum to be stripped for stone. However, attitudes began to change. By the fourteenth century, historians started valuing inscriptions, coins and medals as sources. In the fifteenth century, a passion for antiquities grew, leading to the search for old manuscripts, the creation of museums and important publications. Works by Tacitus and Polybius were rediscovered, Poggio Bracciolini hunted for manuscripts, Nicolao Nicoli collected rare books, Lorenzo de’ Medici maintained a museum and Pope Sixtus IV founded the Capitoline Museum. Archaeology became recognised as a scholarly discipline through Flavio Biondo, who helped establish it as a science that supported critical historical interpretation.

Alongside archaeology, humanist historiography advanced historical criticism. Italian humanists cleared away many errors of medieval historiography. A key development



was philological criticism, which challenged blind acceptance of tradition and authority. In 1440, Lorenzo Valla proved that the Donation of Constantine, a document supporting papal power, was a forgery. Working under King Alfonso of Aragon, he employed history, philology, numismatics, psychology and common sense in his arguments. He questioned why an emperor would disinherit his children or why the Senate would accept such a decision. By highlighting absurdities, poor Latin and incorrect terminology, Valla concluded that the document could only belong to 752–756 CE, proving it was false. This was the first major success of humanist critical scholarship and the beginning of textual criticism.

Jean Bodin, in his book *The Method for the Easy Comprehension of History* (1566), argued that the common idea of dividing history into Four Empires was not based on real facts but was borrowed from the *Book of Daniel*. He accepted Aristotle's view that very old or very recent sources were unreliable and in cases of conflict, he trusted recent ones more. He also believed that writers who were neutral, rather than hostile or overly friendly, were more dependable.

Similarly, humanist scholars challenged false origin stories. Polydore Virgil in England rejected the myths of Brutus founding Britain and the legends of King Arthur, while L.V. de la Popelinière dismissed the belief that the Franks descended from the Trojans. However, despite these efforts, such works did not establish a consistent method of historical criticism. As Butterfield noted, historical techniques had not yet developed into an organised system and old errors continued to resurface.

The new humanist historiography grew alongside modern political thinking. In Florence, it focused on praising the city's greatness, particularly under Bruni's influence. Soon, other Italian states hired humanists

as official historians and from 1450 to the 1530s, they worked in many European countries, including Germany, France, England, Spain, Poland and Hungary. This connection between humanist historiography and the rise of territorial states later evolved into modern nationalist historiography.

Inspired by Plutarch, Renaissance historians utilised biography to explore virtue, vice, leadership and civic responsibility. This reflected a belief in the importance of individuals in shaping history. The works of Petrarch, Bruni and others portrayed historical figures as models for emulation or caution.

One could argue that Renaissance historiography and its critical approach to tradition and authority also influenced religious thought, leading to the Protestant Reformation. Humanist scholars like Erasmus of Rotterdam critiqued the corruption and practices of the Catholic Church, inspiring reformers such as Martin Luther and John Calvin. Thinkers like Martin Luther challenged the authority of the Catholic Church, resulting in the creation of Protestant denominations. This religious upheaval led to wars, reforms and changes in European religious practices, eventually shaping the modern Christian landscape. The Reformation emphasised literacy and education, as Protestants believed individuals should read and interpret the Bible for themselves. This contributed to the spread of education and literacy across Europe.

Recap

- ◆ The Renaissance was a rebirth that shifted Europe from the medieval to the modern age.
- ◆ Historical writing transitioned from religious chronicles to secular, human-centred accounts.
- ◆ Historiography became analytical and critical, drawing inspiration from classical traditions.
- ◆ Humanism emphasised human agency, secularism and evidence-based historical writing.
- ◆ Vernacular languages replaced Latin, widening access to literature and history.
- ◆ Gutenberg's printing press spread knowledge, revolutionising communication and scholarship.
- ◆ Machiavelli and Bodin advanced secular, pragmatic ideas in political theory.
- ◆ Copernicus, Galileo and da Vinci promoted empirical observation and rational inquiry.
- ◆ Renaissance historians employed source criticism, manuscript comparison and periodisation methods.
- ◆ Reformers like Erasmus and Luther reshaped religion, sparking the Protestant Reformation in Europe.
- ◆ The Renaissance encouraged rational inquiry, bridging science, politics and history.
- ◆ The Renaissance marked an intellectual transformation that influenced politics, religion, science and history.

Objective Questions

1. What does the term “Renaissance” mean?
2. Which historian popularised the term “Renaissance”?
3. What intellectual movement was central to Renaissance thought?
4. Which language dominated medieval scholarly literature?
5. What invention revolutionised the dissemination of knowledge during the Renaissance?
6. Which French thinker authored *Six Books of the Commonwealth*?
7. Who wrote *The Prince*?
8. What term describes the method of dividing history into time periods?
9. Which humanist divided history into three periods: Antiquity, the Middle Ages and the Renaissance?
10. Which religious movement was influenced by Renaissance humanism?

Answers

1. Rebirth or re-awakening
2. Jules Michelet
3. Humanism
4. Latin
5. Mechanical Printing press
6. Jean Bodin
7. Niccolò Machiavelli

8. Periodisation
9. Leonardo Bruni
10. Protestant Reformation

Assignments

1. Discuss the origins of Renaissance historiography. How did classical revival, humanism and printing technology shape the practice of history during this period?
2. Examine the role of humanism in shaping Renaissance historical thought. Highlight the contributions of key figures.
3. Examine the historiographical contributions of Petrarch, Leonardo Bruni and Flavio Biondo. How did each influence the development of Renaissance historical methods and periodisation?
4. Petrarch and Bruni labeled the Middle Ages a 'Dark Age.' Was this characterisation justified, or did it reflect Renaissance bias?
5. Evaluate the political ideas of Renaissance thinkers such as Machiavelli and Jean Bodin. How did their works reflect the changing realities of power, governance and state formation?

Reference

1. Bruni, Leonardo, *History of the Florentine People*, edited and translated by James Hankins, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 2007.
2. Burckhardt, Jacob, *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy*, Penguin, New York, 1990.
3. Grafton, Anthony, *What Was History? The Art of History in Early Modern Europe*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2007.

4. Burke, Peter, *The Renaissance*, Macmillan, London, 1987.
5. Durant, Will, *The Story of Civilization, Vol.5, The Renaissance*, Simon & Schuster, New York, 1953.
6. Hale, J.R., *Renaissance Europe: The Individual and Society 1480-1520*, University of California Press, Berkeley, 1971.
7. Nauert, Charles G., *Humanism and the Culture of Renaissance Europe*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2006.

Suggested Reading

1. Burd, L. Arthur (ed.), *Il Principe by Niccolo Machiavelli*, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1891.
2. Grafton, Anthony, *New Worlds, Ancient Texts, The Power of Tradition and the Shock of Discovery*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1995.
3. Grafton, Anthony. *The Renaissance Rediscovery of Classical Antiquity*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1992.
4. Hall, A. Rupert, *The Revolution in Science, 1500-1750*, Longman, London, 1983.
5. Kristeller, P. O., *Renaissance Thought and Its Sources*, Columbia University Press, New York, 1961.
6. Machiavelli, Niccolò, *The Prince*, translated by Harvey C. Mansfield, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1998.
7. Michelet, J., *Histoire de France*, Vol.7 of 19 vols., Librairie Internationale, 1874.
8. Rubin, Patricia, *Images and Identity in Fifteenth-Century Florence*, Yale University Press, Connecticut, 1991.



UNIT

Enlightenment

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the philosophical foundations of Enlightenment historiography
- ◆ familiarised themselves with major Enlightenment thinkers and their contributions
- ◆ identify the shift from providential to secular history
- ◆ examine the limitations and criticisms of Enlightenment historiography

Prerequisites

The Enlightenment, often referred to as the “Age of Reason,” was a transformative intellectual and cultural movement that swept through Europe in the 17th and 18th centuries. Emerging from the fertile ground of the Renaissance, Scientific Revolution and Protestant Reformation, the Enlightenment challenged traditional authorities and reshaped the way people thought about reason, science, politics and society. At its core, the movement emphasised the power of human reason, empirical observation and individual rights, advocating for progress through education, scientific inquiry and political reform. This shift was not confined to philosophy, science, or politics; it profoundly reshaped the writing of history. Enlightenment historiography represents a significant turning point in the development of historical thought. By introducing secular, rational and empirical approaches to understanding the past, Enlightenment thinkers laid the groundwork for modern historical inquiry.

This unit foundations of Enlightenment historiography, tracing its etymological roots, core ideas, contributions of leading figures and criticisms. It how history was transformed from a moralistic narrative or theological explanation into a critical, analytical and secular discipline.



Keywords

Enlightenment, Age of Reason, Empiricism, Secularism, Universal History, Eurocentrism, Teleology

Discussion

3.2.1 Path to Enlightenment Historiography

The Enlightenment of the 17th and 18th centuries marked a revolutionary turning point in how Western thinkers conceptualised and wrote history. Moving beyond mere chronicles of kings and battles, Enlightenment historiography introduced new methodologies, philosophical frameworks and purposes for historical study that continue to influence the discipline today. This intellectual transformation was deeply intertwined with the broader Enlightenment project the application of reason to human affairs, the belief in progress and the critical examination of traditional authorities. From Voltaire's universal histories to Gibbon's monumental *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, Enlightenment historians reshaped historical writing by emphasising empirical evidence, comparative analysis and the study of social and cultural developments alongside political narratives.

3.2.2 Etymology of "Enlightenment"

The word "Enlightenment" was first coined by the German philosopher Immanuel Kant in 1784. Kant used the German term "Aufklärung" in his famous essay "*Answering the Question: What is Enlightenment?*" (*Beantwortung der Frage: Was ist Aufklärung?*). In this work, Kant described the Enlightenment as "Man's emergence from his self-imposed immaturity."

Essentially, he meant that Enlightenment was the act of humans learning to think for themselves instead of blindly following authority such as the Church, monarchy, or tradition. Later, the French Enlightenment movement, led by thinkers like Voltaire, Diderot and Rousseau, referred to it as "Siècle des Lumières" (*Century of Lights*). This term was subsequently translated into English as the "Age of Enlightenment" or "Age of Reason," further solidifying its place in historical discourse.



Fig. 3.2.1 Portrait of Immanuel Kant

By the late 19th and early 20th centuries, the term had become firmly established in English-language historiography, thanks to the works of historians such as Thomas Carlyle and Ernst Cassirer, who extensively studied and popularised the Enlightenment as a distinct historical period.

3.2.3 Major Ideas and Themes

1. Rationalism and Empiricism:

Enlightenment historiography was shaped by two major intellectual currents: rationalism and empiricism. The emphasis on rationality led to the development of critical thinking and the application of logic to solve problems in the humanities. Thinkers like René Descartes, with his famous dictum “Cogito, ergo sum” (“I think, therefore I am”), emphasised the power of human reason to discern truth. This rationalist approach was further developed by philosophers such as John Locke, Immanuel Kant and Voltaire, who argued that reason could be used to critique and reform society, politics and religion. Empiricism was the idea that knowledge comes from observation, experimentation and evidence. The scientific method became a model for understanding not only the natural world but also human behaviour and society. This approach was applied not only to the natural sciences but also to the study of human society, leading to the development of the social sciences. Enlightenment historians sought to apply these principles to historical writing.

2. Secularism and Anti-clericalism:

The Enlightenment promoted secularism, the separation of religion from public life and advocated for religious tolerance and freedom of thought. As Enlightenment thinkers questioned traditional religious authority, historiography also moved away from ecclesiastical control. Historians like Voltaire and Gibbon criticised the Church’s role in suppressing knowledge and distorting history. Voltaire famously declared “Écrasez l’infâme!” (“Crush the infamous thing!”), targeting the abuses of power by the clergy and royalty, as well as the intolerance and

superstition they promoted. This secular turn enabled the study of history as an autonomous field, independent of theological narratives.

3. Human Progress and Universal History:

Enlightenment thinkers believed that through the application of reason and science, society could be improved and human suffering alleviated. This belief in human perfectibility and progress led to the writing of “universal histories” sweeping narratives that traced the development of human societies from barbarism to civilisation. These histories often emphasised the progress of reason, science and liberty. Thinkers like the Marquis de Condorcet wrote about the idea of human perfectibility and the potential for endless progress.

3.2.4 Enlightenment Historians and Their Works

Several towering intellectual figures shaped Enlightenment historiography through their distinctive approaches:

Voltaire (1694-1778)

The pen name of François-Marie Arouet, Voltaire was a French writer, philosopher and satirist who became one of the most prominent figures of the Enlightenment. Though he cynically referred to history as “a pack of tricks we play on the dead,” Voltaire produced significant historical works, including *The Century of Louis XIV* (1751) and the groundbreaking *Essay on the Manners and Spirits of Nations* (1756).

Voltaire’s historical writings reveal both his literary brilliance and his radical rethinking of history. His first major work, *The History of Charles XII* (1731), combined extensive use of state papers and eyewitness accounts to create a vivid narrative of the Swedish king’s adventurous life. While it



was immensely popular and read like a novel, critics complained that Voltaire's storytelling blurred the lines between fact and fiction. He portrayed Charles as remarkable but not truly great, emphasising how the king's recklessness weakened Sweden.

A much more ambitious undertaking was *The Age of Louis XIV* (1751), in which Voltaire shifted the historical focus away from battles and diplomacy to the growth of arts, sciences, commerce and culture. For him, the greatness of an age lay not in its conquerors but in its thinkers, artists and innovators. This marked a new form of historiography, treating history as the biography of civilisation rather than a mere record of wars. Voltaire idealised Louis XIV for fostering culture and intellectual life, seeing in him the patron of France's artistic and scientific glory.

Voltaire's *Essay on the Morals and Character of the Nations from Charlemagne to Louis XIII* (1757) took this philosophy further, attempting a universal history. He sought to explain humanity's passage from barbarism to civilisation, rejecting the Christian theological framework of Bossuet and instead embracing a cosmopolitan view that honoured China, India, Persia and Arabia alongside Europe. He celebrated Chinese antiquity, India's early innovations and Arab science, while condemning the brutality of the Inquisition and the destructive role of Christianity in weakening Rome and fostering intolerance. For Voltaire, medieval Europe offered little of value, while the true heritage of civilisation lay in non-European cultures as well as the Enlightenment.

Voltaire's historiography became explicitly philosophical. In both *The Age of Louis XIV* and the *Essay*, he stressed the primacy of the "spirit of the times" in shaping events. He argued that climate, government, religion and custom moulded human behaviour, while chance and collective action mattered more

than the genius of individuals. Civilisation, he believed, had existed long before biblical creation and the story of history was the gradual march of the human mind expressed in the arts, sciences, morals and laws.

Despite his rational optimism, Voltaire ended with a somber recognition that much of history was a tragic cycle of cruelty, folly and disaster, with only rare moments of happiness. Yet he did not despair. He believed history could serve as a remedy, enlightening people and fostering a more rational, humane society through education, better laws and improved customs. Ideas had changed the world before and better ideas, he argued, could do so again. His seven-volume *Essay* thus stands not merely as a work of scholarship but as a plea for the progress of reason and the hope of a more just human future.

Voltaire rejected providential explanations and sought to understand historical change through human factors, particularly the progress of the arts and sciences. His universal history deliberately marginalised religious events to focus on secular cultural achievements.

David Hume (1711-1776)

A Scottish philosopher, historian and economist, Hume was a key figure in the Scottish Enlightenment. His empiricist philosophy, particularly his scepticism towards causality and induction, had a profound impact on his philosophical thought. As such, Hume's *The History of England* (1754–62) combined empirical rigour with philosophical insight. He broke from partisan narratives by critiquing both Whig and Tory biases. Voltaire praised it as "the only history written with impartiality." His book analysed how trade, legal systems and social customs shaped national development, thereby expanding the scope of history beyond kings and battles.

Hume viewed history as a record of human passions and institutions rather than divine providence. Unlike antiquarians who catalogued facts, Hume sought explanatory narratives grounded in verifiable causes. He also questioned the idea of progress, introducing a more sceptical tone to Enlightenment historiography.

Montesquieu (1689-1755)

While not a historian in the traditional sense, Montesquieu's work, especially his comparative, analytical and sociological approach, laid important groundwork for historical analysis. Montesquieu sought to understand the underlying causes of historical phenomena, not just through events and individuals but through laws, customs, climate and institutions. This marked a major shift from narrative or providential history towards systematic and structural analysis. His best-known work, *The Spirit of the Laws* (1748), systematically analysed how physical and social environments shape political systems, arguing that "the size of the territory to be governed also determines what kind of government it can have." He analysed how geography, climate, religion and the economy shaped the development of legal and political systems in different societies.

Montesquieu pioneered the comparative method in historical and political analysis. He studied various civilisations (e.g., Rome, France, Persia, England) to compare their political structures, legal systems and cultures. This approach encouraged historians to look beyond Europe and consider non-Western societies in shaping a universal understanding of human development. His comparative method and theory of climatic determinism influenced later social scientists.

Edward Gibbon (1737-1794)

Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776-88) synthesised Enlightenment

erudition and philosophy into what remains perhaps the greatest historical work of the period. Combining exhaustive research with literary flair, Gibbon explained Rome's collapse through natural causes rather than divine intervention, emphasising Christianity's role in undermining civic virtue. His critical use of sources, irony and sweeping narrative style exemplified Enlightenment values.

Gibbon was meticulous in consulting original texts, including Roman historians like Tacitus and Byzantine chroniclers, as well as ecclesiastical records. Unlike many Enlightenment historians who relied on secondary accounts, he prioritised primary sources, cross-referencing them to verify accuracy. His footnotes, often laced with irony, became a model for scholarly documentation, blending evidence with interpretive commentary. We discuss the historiographical contribution of Gibbon in detail in the fifth unit.

Condorcet (1743–1794)

While not a historian in the traditional sense, Condorcet made a major contribution to the historical method by formulating a philosophy of history based on reason, progress and universal human development. His work, *Sketch for an Historical Picture of the Progress of the Human Mind* (1795), offered a rational, progressive and optimistic vision of history.

The work proposed that human development could be understood through ten stages of progress, from primitive hunter-gatherers to the French Revolution and beyond. Each stage represented an advancement in reason, science, ethics and political institutions. The final stage, which he optimistically anticipated, would bring equality, education and universal rights. This progressive view, though later criticised as Eurocentric, represented a radical departure from cyclical or providential models of



history. This model introduced a teleological or developmental framework that shaped 19th-century historiography, particularly Hegelian and Marxist interpretations of history.

3.2.4.1 Impact of Enlightenment on Historiography

The Enlightenment was essentially a revolt against religion and a deliberate effort to secularise every sphere of human life and thought. Philosophers such as Voltaire openly criticised Christianity and priestly authority, treating them as tools of superstition and oppression while dismissing theology as outdated and regressive. Enlightenment historiography broke away from the Church-dominated narratives of writers like Bossuet, replacing providential explanations with human-centred interpretations. Works like Bayle's *Critical Dictionary* and Diderot's *Encyclopaedia* symbolised this transformation, while historians including Voltaire, Montesquieu, Hume, Robertson and Gibbon recast history as the product of human action rather than divine will.

This new historical perspective emphasised history not as a defence of theology but as a rational account of humanity's progress from primitive barbarism to advanced civilisation. Thinkers of the period underlined the unity of human history, made sweeping generalisations about social development and widened the scope of historical study to embrace civilisations outside Europe, notably China, India and Persia. Inspired by scientific progress, they searched for general principles governing human development and highlighted the significance of cultural, intellectual and social change. Voltaire proclaimed that his concern was the history of the human mind, while Condorcet traced human progress as a sequence of stages shaped by discoveries and inventions leading toward civilisation.

At the heart of this intellectual movement

lay the idea of progress, nourished by faith in science and reason. Figures such as Turgot, Lessing and Condorcet maintained that history followed a continuous path of advancement, even if occasionally interrupted. Condorcet's *Sketch of the Progress of the Human Spirit* presented an optimistic vision of a future in which science and reason would abolish crime, inequality, slavery and warfare. Although he perished during the turmoil of the French Revolution, his ideals gave historical study a new direction, transforming time itself into a generative force. In rejecting theological history, Enlightenment thinkers developed "philosophies of history" that embraced the cultural and social dimensions of the entire world, laying the groundwork for the modern understanding of history.

3.2.5 Criticisms

While transformative, Enlightenment historiography faced significant criticisms even in its own time. Its progressive narratives often dismissed non-European cultures as backward and its rationalist biases led to condescending treatments of the Middle Ages and religion. The Enlightenment has sometimes been condemned as being 'unhistorical' for lacking sympathy towards certain periods and cultures.

One of the most enduring criticisms of Enlightenment historiography is its Eurocentric bias. Despite gestures towards global history, many Enlightenment historians assumed a European model of progress and civilisation. Non-European societies were often portrayed as "primitive" or static, lacking the rational and political development seen in the West. For instance, even progressive thinkers like Voltaire celebrated Chinese philosophy only insofar as it mirrored Enlightenment rationalism, often ignoring the complexities and autonomy of other cultures.

Enlightenment historiography is often

faulted for placing excessive trust in reason, assuming that human behaviour and historical events can be fully understood through rational analysis and scientific methods. This faith in reason and progress sometimes led to deterministic or teleological views of history. Historians like Condorcet believed in the perfectibility of mankind through reason and education, projecting an overly optimistic view of human progress.

Enlightenment historiography tended to focus on elite male actors – philosophers, kings and generals. The roles of women, the working class and marginalised groups were largely ignored or patronised. It was a

history of elite institutions, governments and intellectual movements, rather than social, economic, or cultural history.

Despite these limitations, the legacy of Enlightenment historiography remains profound. It established history as a critical discipline independent of theology, expanded its subject matter beyond politics and war and introduced systematic methods for comparing societies. Perhaps most importantly, Enlightenment historians demonstrated how historical understanding could serve as a tool for human improvement a legacy that continues to inspire historians today.

Recap

- ◆ Enlightenment emphasised reason, science and rights over tradition and authority.
- ◆ Historical writing shifted from religious narratives to secular, rational interpretations.
- ◆ The term “Enlightenment” was first used by Immanuel Kant.
- ◆ Historiography emphasised rationalism, empiricism and scientific methods of inquiry.
- ◆ Voltaire and Gibbon criticised distortions by the Church, supporting secular history.
- ◆ Condorcet envisioned human progress as a linear path through reason.
- ◆ History expanded beyond politics to include culture, trade and institutions.
- ◆ Hume and Voltaire highlighted the role of social customs in historical development.
- ◆ Montesquieu employed comparative analysis of climate, geography and institutions.
- ◆ Enlightenment historiography often remained Eurocentric and male-centred.
- ◆ Non-European cultures and women were marginalised in Enlightenment narratives.
- ◆ Thinkers were optimistic about reason guiding continuous human progress.

Objective Questions

1. Who coined the term “Aufklärung” to define Enlightenment?
2. Condorcet divided history into how many stages?
3. Which Enlightenment thinker wrote *The Spirit of the Laws*?
4. Which Enlightenment value emphasised knowledge based on evidence and experience?
5. What philosophical current emphasised the role of logic and human reasoning?
6. What is the name of Hume’s famous work?
7. Who authored *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*?
8. Gibbon attributed Rome’s fall partly to what factor?
9. Which term describes the belief that history follows a purposeful developmental path?
10. What type of history focuses on broad, global patterns of human development?

Answers

1. Immanuel Kant
2. Ten
3. Montesquieu
4. Empiricism
5. Rationalism
6. *The History of England*

7. Gibbon
8. Christianity
9. Teleology
10. Universal histories

Assignments

1. Discuss the role of rationalism and empiricism in shaping Enlightenment historiography. How did these philosophies influence the way history was written and interpreted during this period?
2. Analyse the criticisms of Enlightenment historiography with reference to Eurocentrism, elitism and exclusion of marginalised voices.
3. Examine the role of secularism and anti-clericalism in Voltaire's historical writings.
4. Evaluate Montesquieu's comparative method and its significance for modern historical studies

Reference

1. Cassirer, Ernst, *The Philosophy of the Enlightenment*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1951.
2. Gay, Peter, *The Enlightenment: An Interpretation*, 2 Vols., Knopf, New York, 1966.
3. Gibbon, Edward, *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–1789), edited by David Womersley, Penguin, London, 1994.
4. Kant, Immanuel, "An answer to the question: What is enlightenment? (1784)" in Wood, Allen W. Wood, *Immanuel Kant: Practical Philosophy*, Cambridge University Press, 1996.

5. Meek, Ronald L, *Social Science and the Ignoble Savage*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1976.
6. Montesquieu, *The Spirit of the Laws*, translated by Anne M. Cohler, Basia Carolyn Miller and Harold Samuel Stone, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1989.
7. Voltaire, *Essay on the Manners and Spirit of Nations* (1756), edited by Robert M. Adams, Norton, New York, 1973.

Suggested Reading

1. Butterfield, Herbert, *Man on His Past: The Study of the History of Historical Scholarship*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1955.
2. Condorcet, Nicolas de, *Sketch for a Historical Picture of the Progress of the Human Mind* (1795), translated by June Barraclough, Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1955.
3. Gibbon, Edward, *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, 6 vols., W. Strahan & T. Cadell, London, 1776-1788.
4. Hume, David, *An Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*, ed. by Peter Millican, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2008.
5. Israel, Jonathan, *Radical Enlightenment: Philosophy and the Making of Modernity, 1650-1750*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2001.
6. Jacob, Margaret C, *The Secular Enlightenment*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 2019.
7. O'Brien, Karen, *Narratives of Enlightenment: Cosmopolitan History from Voltaire to Gibbon*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997.
8. Porter, Roy, *The Enlightenment*, Palgrave Macmillan, London, 1990.
9. Tallentyre, S. G. (trans.), *Voltaire in His Letters*, G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1919.
10. Toulmin, Stephen, *Cosmopolis: The Hidden Agenda of Modernity*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1990.



UNIT

Romanticism

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ understand the philosophical roots of Romantic historiography
- ◆ analyse the contributions of historians of the romantic historiography
- ◆ examine the role of nationalism and the concept of Volksgeist
- ◆ discuss the impact and limitations of romanticism

Prerequisites

Romanticism emerged in the late 18th and early 19th centuries as a profound artistic, literary and intellectual movement that responded to the sweeping changes of the era. Marked by the Industrial Revolution and the French Revolution, this period rapid technological advancements and social upheaval, to both progress and dislocation.

As Romantic historiography as a reaction against the Enlightenment's emphasis on reason, universalism and scientific objectivity. Romantic historians sought to infuse history with emotion, national identity and cultural uniqueness, emphasising the role of individuals, traditions and organic development in shaping historical narratives. This approach significantly influenced modern historiography by introducing new themes such as nationalism, folklore and the spiritual essence of historical events.

This unit explores the philosophical underpinnings, defining characteristics and important historians of Romantic historiography, while also assessing its contributions and limitations. It reveals how this movement transformed the historian's role from detached chronicler to engaged storyteller, shaping the evolution of modern historical consciousness.



Keywords

Romanticism, Volksgeist, Nationalism, Great Man Theory, Subjectivity, Narrative, Organic View, Historicism

Discussion

3.3.1 Intellectual Foundations of Romantic Historiography

Romantic historiography was deeply influenced by the broader Romantic movement, which reacted against the Enlightenment's mechanical view of the universe and the rigid application of reason. Instead of seeing history as a linear progression governed by universal laws, thinkers of Romanticism emphasised the organic, spiritual and emotional dimensions of historical life. This shift was inspired by philosophical developments in Germany, particularly the works of Johann Gottfried Herder and Immanuel Kant.

Herder's idea that each historical epoch and culture had its own intrinsic value and spirit (Volksgeist) laid the groundwork for a relativistic and empathetic understanding of the past. This idea challenged the Enlightenment notion of a single, universal human nature. Instead, Romantic historicism embraced cultural relativism, suggesting that different societies should be understood on their own terms. German Idealist philosophers like Fichte, Hegel and Schelling further developed this view by proposing that history unfolds according to a dialectical or spiritual process. For them, history was not just a collection of events but a dynamic evolution of human consciousness and freedom.

Romanticism was deeply intertwined with developments in literature, art and aesthetics, which greatly influenced the historical imagination. The Romantic ideal held that

the historian, like the poet or novelist, must engage with the past not merely through facts but through intuition, feeling and creativity. This belief in the aesthetic dimension of historical knowledge elevated the role of imagination in reconstructing the past. Historians were encouraged to explore myths, legends and folklore as legitimate windows into the cultural psyche of earlier times. The aesthetic turn also promoted a literary style of writing history, one that sought to move and inspire readers, not just inform them. This artistic sensibility distinguished Romantic historiography from earlier traditions and allowed it to capture the richness and complexity of historical life in ways that purely analytical approaches could not.

The Napoleonic Wars (1803–1815) and the subsequent revolutions across Europe fuelled nationalist sentiments. Romantic historians sought to construct national histories that celebrated indigenous traditions, folklore and heroic figures.

3.3.2 Definition

The term “Romanticism” is widely debated. In his book *The Decline and Fall of the Romantic Ideal* (1948), F.L. Lucas identified as many as 11,396 different definitions. The word itself originates from “Rome.” The term “Romantic” is linked to the Romance languages (French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese and Romanian), representing a peripheral linguistic tradition rather than the main Latin tradition. These vernacular languages were used to write

popular stories of chivalry, adventure and love, often set in distant or imaginary lands during the medieval period. These stories were called “romances.”

By the 17th century, “romantic” began to take on a broader meaning, referring to anything picturesque, imaginative, or emotionally appealing. The term was frequently used to describe the beauty of nature, sentimental experiences, or artistic expressions that evoked deep feelings.

During the late 18th and early 19th centuries, German thinkers and critics, such as Friedrich Schlegel, played a key role in shaping the term “Romanticism” as an intellectual and artistic movement. Schlegel used the German word *romantisch* to distinguish the creative, subjective and emotional spirit of Romantic literature from the structured, rational works of the Enlightenment and Classical antiquity.

3.3.3 Characteristics of Romanticism

- 1. Emphasis on Emotion and Subjectivity:** Romantic historians believed that understanding the past required emotional identification with historical figures and events. They often used dramatic narratives to invoke empathy and bring the past vividly to life. Romantic historians incorporated legends, ballads and oral traditions into their narratives, arguing that these sources revealed the “soul” of a people. Rather than relying solely on empirical evidence, Romantic historians used imagination to reconstruct the inner lives and motives of historical actors. History was seen as a form of art as much as a science.
- 2. Nationalism and Cultural Identity:** The late 18th and early 19th centuries also saw the rise of nationalism, as people across Europe began to assert their cultural and

political identities in opposition to foreign domination. The Napoleonic Wars, in particular, fuelled nationalist sentiments, as countries such as Germany, Italy and Spain resisted French imperialism. Romantic historiography played a vital role in the formation of national identities, especially in 19th-century Europe. Historians sought to trace the unique spirit of nations through myths, language, folk traditions and heroic figures. Romantic historians, such as Jules Michelet in France and Thomas Carlyle in Britain, wrote histories that glorified the nation’s past, often portraying it as a collective struggle for freedom and cultural survival.

- 3. Focus on Great Individuals:** Unlike Enlightenment historians who emphasised structural forces, Romantic historiography highlighted the role of the heroic individual in shaping history. Figures such as Napoleon, Charlemagne and Joan of Arc were portrayed not just as political actors, but as embodiments of national or moral ideals.
- 4. Organic View of History:** Romantic historians saw history as a living organism, growing and evolving like a tree. This organic metaphor rejected mechanical and linear models of historical development in favour of complex, intertwined growth. Nations and cultures were seen as growing entities with life cycles.
- 5. Glorification of the Medieval Past:** In contrast to the Enlightenment’s disdain for the “Dark Ages,” Romantic historians celebrated the medieval period as a time of spiritual depth, cultural richness and moral clarity. The Gothic aesthetic and interest in chivalry, feudalism and religion reflected this outlook.



6. **Historical Particularism:** Unlike the Enlightenment belief in universal laws, Romantic historians emphasised the uniqueness of each historical period and culture. They often resisted abstract generalisations and instead focused on the particularities of time, place and people.

3.3.4. Major Figures in Romantic Historiography

Jean Jacques Rousseau (1712- 1778)

Born in the Enlightenment age, became the leading figure of the Romantic movement by valuing emotion over reason and calling for freedom, natural living and originality. His writings strongly influenced politics, philosophy, literature, education and history. In his *Discourses*, he argued that civilisation and private property corrupted human beings, turning progress into decline and praising the “natural man.” His novel *New Heloise* highlighted passion and sentiment, shaping Romantic literature. In *The Social Contract*, he declared that sovereignty belongs to the people and that laws should express the general will. In *Emile*, he demonstrated how proper education could preserve man’s natural goodness. Rousseau’s ideas spread widely across Europe, inspiring writers like Goethe and Schiller and influencing philosophers like Kant and Herder, making him a true guide of the Romantic spirit.

Johann Gottfried Herder (1744–1803)

Johann Gottfried Herder was a foundational figure in the development of modern historical thought. Herder challenged Enlightenment notions of universal reason and progress, proposing instead that each historical era and culture should be understood on its own terms.

In contrast to the rational, universalist outlook of Enlightenment thinkers like Voltaire and Montesquieu, Herder emphasised historical particularism and cultural relativism. He rejected the Enlightenment’s

linear, Eurocentric view of history as a march toward universal reason. This is exemplified in his *Another Philosophy of History for the Education of Humankind* (1774). Instead, he argued that each historical period and culture must be understood on its own terms a principle now central to historicism. He criticised Voltaire and other Enlightenment thinkers for dismissing medieval and non-European cultures as “barbaric,” insisting that every society has its own intrinsic value and developmental logic.

Herder introduced the influential idea of *Volksgeist*, meaning the unique spirit or character of a people. According to him, every nation and culture possesses its own internal logic, worldview and values shaped by language, tradition, environment and historical experience. This idea emphasised the importance of studying cultures and historical periods in their own context rather than judging them by the standards of modern rationalism. Herder’s *Volksgeist* became a key concept in Romantic historiography and later in the development of national histories and cultural anthropology. His work *Ideas for a Philosophy of the History of Mankind* (1784–91) explores how climate, geography and folk traditions shape civilisations.

Herder believed that language was the key to understanding a people’s history and identity. He collected folk songs, myths and oral traditions, arguing that they revealed the authentic spirit of a culture. He emphasised the intimate connection between language, thought and historical development. His insights encouraged historians to explore cultural expressions, including myths, rituals and poetry, as valuable historical sources, thereby broadening the scope of historical inquiry beyond political and military narratives. Herder rejected purely rationalist historiography, advocating for an intuitive understanding (*Einfühlung*) of past societies. The historian, he argued, must enter into the mindset of past peoples rather

than impose present-day judgments on them. This approach foreshadowed hermeneutic methods and inspired historians like Dilthey and Ranke, who emphasised reconstructing “what actually happened”.

Herder was also critical of European colonialism and the Enlightenment tendency to view non-European societies as “primitive”. He challenged the notion of European superiority, arguing that historical greatness was not exclusive to any one civilisation.

Hegel (1770–1831)

Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel, an important Romantic-Idealist historian, viewed history as a rational and progressive process shaped by thought and freedom. Unlike the repetitive cycles of nature, he explained history as moving forward in spirals through the dialectical method thesis, antithesis and synthesis- leading to higher stages of life and ideas. He traced the growth of human freedom from Oriental despotism (where one is free) to Greek and Roman citizenship (where some are free) and finally to modern constitutional monarchy (where all are free). For Hegel, the ultimate goal of history was the realisation of the Absolute Spirit, best expressed in the rational state, which he saw as humanity’s greatest achievement. He also stressed the importance of the spirit of the times (Zeitgeist) and the role of great individuals in driving progress. His philosophy was both idealist and highly influential in Romantic thought. We discuss Hegel in detail in the next block.

Thomas Carlyle (1795–1881)

Carlyle made lasting contributions to the historical method by emphasising the emotional, moral and imaginative dimensions of history. His work reflected a deep belief in the spiritual significance of historical events and the transformative power of individual human agency.

Carlyle’s most famous contribution is the “Great Man Theory of History,” articulated in his lectures and in the book *On Heroes, Hero-Worship and the Heroic in History* (1841). He argued that history is fundamentally shaped by the actions of extraordinary individuals or heroes who possess vision, moral courage and a sense of destiny. In this view, progress is driven not by impersonal social or economic forces but by inspired leaders such as prophets, poets, kings and revolutionaries. Carlyle’s approach shifted the historical focus toward biographical storytelling, giving prominence to character, willpower and moral strength as central forces in historical change. Critics later challenged this as elitist, but it underscored the role of leadership and charisma in historical transformation.

Carlyle viewed history not just as a record of past events but as a moral and spiritual drama that reveals the underlying truths of the human condition. He believed that historians must go beyond surface facts and statistics to uncover the deeper moral meaning of history. For Carlyle, writing history involved engaging with the soul of past events and individuals, conveying their inner struggles and values. His *The French Revolution* (1837) exemplified this, combining vivid storytelling with philosophical reflection. This approach brought narrative passion and emotional depth to historical writing, influencing future historians and historical novelists alike.

Influenced by German idealism, Carlyle saw history as cyclical, with societies undergoing phases of decay and rebirth, which he called “Palingenesis.” He likened civilizations to a “World-Phoenix” burning and regenerating, a metaphor reflecting his belief in recurring crises and renewals, as seen in his analysis of the French Revolution.

Barthold Niebuhr (1776–1831)

During the Romantic era, when historical change began to receive greater attention,



historians felt the need for a critical method supported by strong documentation. Barthold Georg Niebuhr stood at the forefront of this shift, raising history to the level of an independent science. Gifted from childhood, his deep knowledge and passion led to pioneering work that transformed historical studies. His lectures at the University of Berlin and the publication of his *History of Rome* (1811–12) marked the beginning of modern historical methodology. By shifting focus from individuals and events to institutions, social classes and customs, he exposed the roots of Roman society and offered new insights into major issues such as the agrarian problem.

Niebuhr's most lasting contribution was his rigorous analysis of historical sources. A master of many languages and inspired by philological methods, he believed that early Roman traditions had been passed down in poetic lays and that much of Livy's narrative was patriotic invention. To address this, he introduced two methods: external criticism, which dissected sources to separate reliable elements from later additions and internal criticism, which examined how authors' viewpoints influenced their accounts. Though his *History of Rome* was considered stylistically difficult, it broke new ground by exposing distortions, discrediting long-accepted traditions and proving that history could be written as a critical and scientific discipline rather than as storytelling. Alongside Niebuhr, Leopold von Ranke carried this spirit further, rejecting invention and imagination in favour of facts, thus laying the next foundation stone in the growth of scientific historiography.

Leopold von Ranke (1795–1886)

Although often associated with scientific history, Ranke's early works reflected Romantic influences. While he introduced empirical rigour and source criticism, he remained committed to the Romantic ideals

of cultural uniqueness, spiritual depth and faithful reconstruction of historical reality.

Though Ranke is associated with objectivity, he shared with Romantic historians like Herder a belief in the unique character of nations and cultures. He argued that each state had a distinct "spiritual essence" shaped by divine providence, reflecting the Romantic ideal of organic national identity. His histories of Prussia, England and France explored these national trajectories, aligning with Romantic nationalism.

Ranke rejected Enlightenment universalism and the idea that history progresses in a straight line towards a single ideal of modernity. He argued that each epoch is "immediate to God", meaning every historical period had inherent dignity and worth, independent of modern judgments. This reflects the Romantic commitment to cultural relativism a belief that history should not impose present-day values on the past.

While Ranke is credited with professionalising historical research through the critical use of archives, manuscripts and diplomatic records, his goal was not dry factualism. He believed that only through careful engagement with authentic sources could the historian truly grasp the soul of an era. His archival work was guided by a Romantic desire to enter into the worldview of historical actors and to capture the moral and emotional texture of historical experience. In the fourth block, Ranke's contribution to historiography is discussed comprehensively.

Jules Michelet (1798–1874)

Michelet's most significant contribution was his democratisation of history. In contrast to traditional historiography, which focused on kings, battles and political elites, Michelet emphasised the role of the masses peasants, workers, women and revolutionaries in shaping history. In works like *Histoire de*

France (History of France) (1833) and *Histoire de la Révolution française* (History of the French Revolution) (1847-53), he sought to uncover the collective soul of the French people. He viewed history as a living force of national identity and his writing often celebrated the heroism and suffering of the common citizen. This focus aligned with Romantic ideals of the *Volksgeist* (spirit of the people) and laid the groundwork for social and cultural history.

Michelet famously declared that history should be a “resurrection” of the past, aiming to breathe life into historical events and figures rather than merely chronicling facts. He sought to recreate the sensory, emotional and spiritual dimensions of history, immersing readers in the lived experience of earlier eras. In his work *Histoire de France* (1833), he depicted Joan of Arc not just as a political figure but as the “soul of France,” using vivid prose to evoke her struggles and triumphs. This approach challenged the dry, analytical style of Enlightenment historians and inspired narrative-driven historiography.

Michelet was among the first to argue that history must encompass all aspects of human life, such as art, religion, geography, folklore and daily customs, not just politics and wars. He often wrote about nature, seasons and landscapes to frame historical narratives, suggesting that nature and humanity were interwoven in the making of civilisation. His *Tableau de la France* (1833) analysed how France’s geography shaped its national character, pioneering environmental history. Additionally, he treated historical time not as a collection of isolated events but as a continuous flow of meaning and transformation.

Michelet coined the term *Renaissance* to describe the cultural rebirth of Europe after the Middle Ages, framing it as a decisive break from feudalism and clerical dominance. He interpreted art and literature as historical

evidence, arguing that cultural production revealed societal values.

3.3.5 Impact of Romantic Historiography

Romanticist historians expanded the boundaries of history far beyond the framework set by Enlightenment thinkers. As H.E. Barnes, an American historian, noted, Romanticism gave history a more human dimension by freeing it from the purely didactic role of teaching virtue and prudence. This new vision inspired interest in distant civilisations such as Chinese, Indian, Persian, Arabic and Egyptian cultures, as well as in previously neglected epochs like the Middle Ages. Rousseau’s philosophy, particularly his idea of the general will and his educational theory in *Emile*, encouraged historians to approach earlier ages with sympathy and respect rather than scorn, recognising them as meaningful stages in human development. History thus came to be seen as a continuous and universal process.

Collingwood highlighted that Romanticists regarded history as a story of progress, in which each age carried its own intrinsic value while also serving as a step toward greater human advancement. Unlike the Enlightenment’s selective outlook, Romantic historiography embraced the whole of the past as a unified process, moving from primitive beginnings toward a rational and civilised society. This perspective introduced the principle of “genetic relationism,” which emphasised understanding institutions, individuals and ideas within the context of their own time while tracing their development from earlier phases.

Romanticist historiography introduced the idea that history is not just an objective recording of facts but also a deeply human experience, filled with passion, emotion and moral struggle. Historians like Carlyle and Michelet believed that historical



understanding required empathy and imagination, not just analysis. This shift brought narrative depth and emotional resonance to historical writing, making it more accessible and engaging to the general public. It also encouraged historians to view historical figures not as abstract agents but as complex individuals with hopes, fears and inner conflicts.

One of the most enduring impacts of Romantic historiography was its role in nation-building. Inspired by the ideas of Herder and others, Romantic historians emphasised the unique spirit (*Volksgeist*) of each nation, often rooted in its language, folklore, religion and medieval past. By romanticising national origins, myths and heroes, historians helped construct national narratives that were essential to the formation of modern nation-states, especially in 19th-century Europe. These histories reinforced a sense of shared identity and collective memory, contributing to the rise of nationalism.

Romantic historiography broadened the focus of historical study beyond kings, generals and elites. Historians like Michelet and others turned their attention to the lives of ordinary people, the marginalised and the oppressed. Folklore, oral traditions, popular uprisings and everyday struggles were regarded as worthy of historical investigation. This marked an important step toward social and cultural history, anticipating later movements such as history from below, microhistory and people's history.

3.3.5.1 Criticisms

While Romantic historiography had many positive effects, it also faced criticism for mythologising the past, indulging in hero-worship and promoting nationalistic bias. The romanticised versions of national history sometimes supported exclusionary ideologies or glorified violent pasts. Its subjective and

emotional style, though engaging, was often accused of lacking critical rigour and empirical discipline, which later historians sought to correct through more scientific and archival methods.

Romanticist historiography viewed each nation as a unique cultural unit and encouraged historians to immerse themselves in it. In trying to make history more appealing, Romanticists focused on castles, cathedrals, wars, crusades and chivalry, while overlooking other important aspects of life. They believed history was guided by mysterious forces beyond reason and often dismissed rational explanations, making their outlook similar to that of the Church.

This romantic-nationalist view also encouraged harmful theories of race and culture, which later supported Western imperialism. What was really a desire for power and exploitation was disguised as science, religion, or morality. The idea of White or Aryan superiority, supported by Social Darwinism, claimed that some races were naturally stronger and more fit to survive. Missionaries presented imperialism as saving souls, while others justified it as a “civilising mission” or the “White man’s burden.” These ideas fueled extreme racism, most horrifically seen in Hitler’s attempt to preserve so-called Aryan purity, which led to the mass killing of Jews.

The focus on national identity also strengthened nationalism, which boosted history writing in the nineteenth century. However, this strength turned harmful when pride became excessive. Many historians began praising their own nations while demeaning others, leading to chauvinism and jingoism. Such exaggerated nationalism distorted historical writing, reducing its fairness and weakening its truthfulness.

Recap

- ◆ Romantic historiography arose in opposition to the Enlightenment's rational, universal and objective ideals.
- ◆ It emphasised intuition, emotion and cultural uniqueness over linear historical progress.
- ◆ Herder shaped Romantic thought by advancing historicism and cultural relativism in history.
- ◆ Herder's Volksgeist highlighted each nation's cultural uniqueness and historical individuality.
- ◆ Language, folk traditions and cultural relativism were central to Herder's ideas.
- ◆ Carlyle's "Great Man Theory" viewed history as a moral and spiritual drama.
- ◆ Ranke pioneered scientific history yet upheld Romantic ideals of cultural distinctiveness.
- ◆ Michelet democratised history by focusing on common people, folklore and national spirit.
- ◆ Romantic historians wrote with poetic narratives, blending literature and historical storytelling.
- ◆ Nationalism shaped Romantic history, celebrating legends, heroes and collective memory.
- ◆ Romanticism paved the way for social, cultural and microhistorical approaches later.
- ◆ Critics argue that it mythologised the past, was overly emotional and exhibited nationalistic bias.

Objective Questions

1. Who introduced the concept of *Volksgeist*?
2. Which movement's principles were challenged by Romanticism?
3. Which historian is associated with the "Great Man Theory"?
4. Romantic historiography emphasised the uniqueness of cultures, a concept called?
5. Who wrote the work *Histoire de France*?
6. Which war fueled nationalist sentiments during the Romantic era?
7. What is the German term for the rebirth or regeneration of societies popularised by Carlyle?
8. What term describes the historian's attempt to grasp the spirit of an age?
9. Which historian stated that French geography shaped its national character?
10. What did Herder believe was key to understanding a culture's spirit?

Answers

1. Herder
2. Enlightenment
3. Carlyle
4. Relativism
5. Jules Michelet
6. Napoleonic Wars (1803–1815)
7. Palingenesis

8. Historicism
9. Michelet
10. Language

Assignments

1. How did Romantic historiography contribute to the rise of nationalism in Europe during the 19th century?
2. Compare and contrast Romantic historiography with Enlightenment historiography. In what ways did Romanticism reject the Enlightenment view of history?
3. Romantic historiography is often described as emotionally rich but methodologically weak. Do you agree with this statement?
4. Explain Thomas Carlyle's "Great Man Theory of History." To what extent does it reflect the Romantic historiographical emphasis on individuals and moral drama?
5. Compare the contributions of Barthold Niebuhr, Leopold von Ranke and Jules Michelet in advancing Romantic historiography. How did each balance Romantic ideals with the emerging scientific approach to history?

Reference

1. Abrams, M.H., *The Mirror and the Lamp: Romantic Theory and the Critical Tradition*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1971.
2. Beiser, Frederick C, *The Romantic Imperative: The Concept of Early German Romanticism*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 2003.
3. Berger, Stefan, *Writing the Nation: A Global Perspective*, Palgrave Macmillan, London, 2007.



4. Berlin, Isaiah, *The Roots of Romanticism*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, 2001.
5. Butler, Marilyn, *Romantics, Rebels and Reactionaries: English Literature and Its Background, 1760-1830*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1981.
6. Gossman, Lionel, *Between History and Literature*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1990.
7. Iggers, Georg G, *The German Conception of History: The National Tradition of Historical Thought from Herder to the Present*, Wesleyan University Press, Connecticut, 1983.
8. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook Of Historiography 500 BC To AD 2000*, Orient Blackswan Private Limited, 2018.

Suggested Reading

1. Carlyle, Thomas, *On Heroes, Hero-Worship and the Heroic in History*, Oxford University Press, London, 2013.
2. Herder, Johann Gottfried, *Ideas for a Philosophy of the History of Mankind* (1784–91), translated by T. Churchill, Bergman Publishers, New York, 1966.
3. Levinson, Marjorie, “The New Historicism: Back to the Future”, in Levinson, Marjorie, Butler, Marilyn, McGann, Jerome and Hamilton, Paul (eds.), *Rethinking Historicism: Critical Readings in Romantic History*, Basil Blackwell, Oxford, 1989.
4. Lucas, F. L., *The Decline and Fall of the Romantic Ideal*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1948.
5. Michelet, Jules, *History of France*, Vol.1 (1833), translated by G. H. Smith, D. Appleton & Co., Philadelphia, 1847.
6. Ranke, Leopold von, *The Theory and Practice of History*, edited by Georg G. Iggers, Routledge, London, 2011.
7. Richardson, Alan, *British Romanticism and the Science of the Mind*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994.
8. White, Hayden, *Metahistory: The Historical Imagination in Nineteenth-Century Europe*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Maryland, 1973.



UNIT

Rationalism

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the core principles of rationalist historiography
- ◆ analyse the contributions of key thinkers
- ◆ examine the methodological shifts
- ◆ explain the limitations of rationalist historiography

Prerequisites

The development of rationalist thought in historiography represents a pivotal transformation in how history was conceived, studied and written. Arising in the wake of the Enlightenment, rationalist historiography rejected the traditional reliance on divine providence, myth and uncritical tradition, instead championing reason, empirical evidence and critical inquiry as the foundations for understanding the past. This shift a move away from history as a sacred narrative shaped by supernatural forces, interpreting it as a secular, intelligible process by human agency, social structures and natural laws.

Rooted in the philosophical contributions of thinkers like René Descartes, Baruch Spinoza and Immanuel Kant, rationalist historiography applied systematic doubt, logical analysis and secular interpretation to historical inquiry. These philosophers laid the groundwork for a historical method that emphasised chronology, objectivity, causality and the search for universal patterns in human development. Figures such as Cesare Beccaria further extended these principles into the realms of law, justice and governance, reinforcing the belief that history could and should contribute to

social progress through reasoned reflection and reform. This mode of historiography the foundation for modern historical methodologies and played a pivotal role in transforming history into a scientific discipline.

This unit explores the historical development, key principles, major figures and enduring legacy of rationalist demonstrating its role in shaping modern historical scholarship.

Keywords

Rationalism, Secularism, Deduction, Chronology, Causality, Objectivity, providential history, Determinism, Dialectic

Discussion

3.4.1 The Development of Rationalist Thought in Historiography

Rationalist historiography is a methodological approach to the study of history that emphasises reason, critical analysis and at times, empirical evidence over tradition, religious dogma, or speculative narratives. Emerging during the Enlightenment in the 17th and 18th centuries, rationalist historiography sought to apply the principles of scientific inquiry and philosophical scepticism to historical writing.

The philosophical basis of rationalist historiography was closely tied to Enlightenment ideals, particularly the belief in human reason as the primary tool for acquiring knowledge. Thinkers like Descartes promoted scepticism towards received traditions and encouraged the application of deductive logic to understand the world. Spinoza, too, advocated for a historical analysis free from religious dogma and superstition. The rationalist worldview saw history not as a divine narrative or cyclical pattern, but as a linear and intelligible

sequence of human actions influenced by natural and social laws.

This intellectual shift encouraged historians to ask questions about causes and consequences, to analyse sources critically and to interpret human actions within their socio-political contexts rather than through theological frameworks. In this sense, rationalist historiography marked a significant departure from earlier historiographical traditions, such as medieval chronicles and providential history, which often framed historical events as manifestations of divine will.

3.4.2 Core Principles of Rationalist Historiography

Reason and Critical Inquiry: Rationalist historiography is fundamentally rooted in the belief that human reason is the most reliable tool for understanding historical phenomena. This approach replaced faith-based and tradition-bound explanations with logical reasoning and critical analysis. Historians were encouraged to ask why events happened, not merely what happened. They applied methods akin to

those in philosophy and natural science, emphasising rational consistency, clarity and coherence. Rational inquiry discouraged blind acceptance of myths, legends and religious doctrines. History thus became a subject of interpretation and investigation, rather than simply a narration of divine plans or royal chronicles.

Secular Interpretation: Events were explained in terms of human agency, economic pressures, political decisions, or social changes rather than divine intervention. This secular orientation allowed for a more nuanced and complex understanding of historical developments. Many rationalist historians were critical of the Church and traditional authority. They viewed religious explanations as obstacles to genuine historical understanding. Thus, the Church's role was examined critically rather than as an unquestioned authority.

Empiricism and Evidence-Based Analysis: Although rooted in philosophical reason, rationalist historiography also embraced empiricism most of the time. Rationalist historians emphasised the use of primary sources like documents, letters and official records and insisted that historical claims must be grounded in verifiable evidence. This was a radical shift from the uncritical repetition of legends or religious dogma.

Chronology and Objectivity : Rationalist historiography placed importance on chronological accuracy and attempted to establish cause-and-effect relationships between events. Events were arranged in temporal sequences, highlighting how one development led to another. This method helped explain long-term processes such as the rise of capitalism, the Enlightenment, or the decline of feudalism. It sought objectivity by minimising the influence of personal biases or ideological agendas.

Didactic Purpose: Rationalist historians often believed that history should serve a moral or civic function by educating people about the mistakes of the past and promoting rational governance and enlightened citizenship. The past was not just about memorising facts; it was a guide for creating rational institutions, fair governance and ethical societies. Historians were public intellectuals who used history to educate and critique contemporary society.

3.4.3 Major Figures in Rationalism

René Descartes (1596–1650)

René Descartes, often called the “father of modern philosophy,” is one of the most influential rationalists. Though not a historian himself, his epistemological and methodological contributions profoundly shaped the rationalist approach to historical writing and thought. His emphasis on doubt, reason and systematic inquiry provided the intellectual foundation upon which Enlightenment thinkers and rationalist historians built their methods.

In his seminal work *Discourse on the Method* (1637), Descartes introduced the idea of methodical doubt, questioning all beliefs that could possibly be doubted until reaching indubitable truths. This sceptical approach encouraged historians to critically assess sources, rejecting myths, hearsay, or religious interpretations not grounded in reason or evidence.

Descartes' mind-body dualism and rejection of providential history shifted historical analysis toward human agency and explaining events through human decisions, social structures and natural causes (e.g., political conflicts, economic factors) rather than divine intervention.



Descartes promoted the use of deductive logic, starting from clear, self-evident truths and logically deriving conclusions. This influence mainly led to the search for underlying principles or laws governing human history and secondly, to the development of universal or general theories of history, as seen in the works of thinkers like Condorcet and Kant.

Baruch Spinoza (1632–1677)

Baruch Spinoza, though primarily known as a philosopher, made significant indirect contributions to the development of rationalist historiography through his radical critiques of religion, scripture and traditional authority. His philosophical works, particularly the *Theologico-Political Treatise* (1670), laid the groundwork for a secular, critical and naturalistic approach to history.

Spinoza pioneered historical-critical analysis of the Bible, treating it not as divine revelation but as a historical document shaped by human authors. He argued that Biblical texts should be studied as historical documents, written by humans in specific times and places, rather than as divinely dictated truths. Interpretation should be grounded in understanding the author's intentions, the historical context, the language used and the circumstances of the audience. An example of his textual criticism can be seen in questioning the Mosaic authorship of the Pentateuch. This laid the foundation for source criticism and the historical-critical method, which would later be central to both biblical studies and secular historiography. Spinoza's approach encouraged historians to treat all sources, sacred or secular, as human products that require contextual analysis.

Spinoza's philosophy, especially his pantheism (God/Nature as a single substance), led to a deterministic understanding of history. Human actions follow natural laws, just like physical phenomena, eliminating divine will or free will as primary causes.

History is governed by necessity, meaning events unfold due to prior causes (social, psychological, environmental) rather than chance or providence.

He was an early advocate of freedom of thought and expression, especially in interpreting historical and religious texts. He wrote that no authority, whether religious or political, should limit the critical examination of texts and ideas. This encouraged historians and other scholars to publish texts in the face of ecclesiastical censorship.

Immanuel Kant (1724–1804)

Kant, one of the most influential philosophers of the Enlightenment, made profound contributions to the philosophy of history, especially from a rationalist perspective. Kant approached history not as a mere chronicle of events but as a philosophical problem, seeking to uncover its underlying principles, purpose and moral progress.

Kant believed that human history, though appearing chaotic on the surface, followed an underlying rational order. In his essay *Idea for a Universal History from a Cosmopolitan Point of View* (1784), he argued that nature has a teleological purpose (an end-goal) and that human history unfolds toward the realisation of human reason and moral autonomy. Even the seemingly irrational actions of individuals and nations contribute, inadvertently, to a rational historical progression.

Kant argued that conflict and competition, such as war, political rivalry and economic struggle, were paradoxically necessary for progress. These tensions forced societies to improve legal systems, foster cooperation and develop more rational institutions. What appeared as disorder was part of a larger rational design that led to the advancement of civilisation. Unlike Descartes (who sought clear deductions) or Spinoza (who saw strict determinism), Kant saw history as a dialectic of human freedom and natural necessity.

subjective and interpretive nature of the historian's craft.

Rationalist historiography often presents history as a linear progression toward reason, liberty and modernity, culminating in the Enlightenment or Western liberal democracy. Thinkers like Descartes and Kant framed history as a universal journey from ignorance to enlightenment. However, this narrative has been widely criticised as Eurocentric, assuming that Western civilisation represents the pinnacle of human development. This teleological model marginalises non-Western histories, indigenous knowledge systems and alternative paths of development. It risks devaluing or ignoring cultures that do not fit into this linear schema of progress.

Rationalist historians focused heavily on political events, legal systems and philosophical ideas, often neglecting the everyday experiences of common people and the symbolic or emotional aspects of culture. By focusing on laws, institutions and elite figures, rationalist historiography silenced marginalised voices such as women, peasants, slaves and colonised peoples. Thus, rationalist historiography is often seen as elitist and exclusionary, presenting a narrow picture of the past.

Rationalist historiography tends to explain events through orderly chains of cause and effect, aiming to find universal laws or rational structures behind historical change. This method often underestimates the role of accident, chaos, emotion, irrationality and spontaneity in shaping historical events. Human behaviour does not always conform to reasoned patterns; wars, revolutions and ideologies often arise from passions, fears and collective myths. Critics argue that rationalist methods oversimplify the complexity of history, forcing unpredictable or ambiguous events into tidy frameworks that distort reality.

3.4.4 Criticisms



Recap

- ◆ Rationalist historiography emphasised reason, critical inquiry and empirical analysis of history.
- ◆ It marked a secular shift from providential, myth-based chronicle traditions.
- ◆ Descartes introduced systematic doubt and deductive reasoning into historical analysis.
- ◆ Spinoza pioneered historical-critical methods, treating scriptures as human documents.
- ◆ He advocated contextual interpretation, intellectual freedom and rational analysis of texts.
- ◆ Kant viewed history as rational, teleological progress towards human autonomy.
- ◆ For Kant, disorder in history served larger developmental purposes.
- ◆ Beccaria applied rationalist principles to legal history, emphasising reform.
- ◆ Rationalist historiography often overlooked emotions, myths and cultural symbolism.
- ◆ It also neglected the experiences of marginalised groups in historical interpretation.

Objective Questions

1. Who is considered the father of modern philosophy?
2. Which thinker argued that Nature has a teleological purpose?
3. Who wrote *Theologico-Political Treatise*?
4. What was the dominant religious institution criticized by rationalist historians?

5. Which philosopher applied critical analysis to the Bible?
6. What term describes Spinoza's view that God and Nature are one?
7. Which thinker wrote On Crimes and Punishments?
8. Which concept did Kant use to describe historical development through conflict and reason?

Answers

1. René Descartes
2. Immanuel Kant
3. Spinoza
4. Church
5. Spinoza
6. Pantheism
7. Beccaria
8. Dialectic

Assignments

1. Analyse how Descartes' method of doubt and Spinoza's biblical criticism contributed to the development of rationalist historiography.
2. Explain Kant's concept of history as a teleological process. How did this idea influence later historians? Evaluate whether this perspective is still relevant in contemporary historiography.
3. Critically evaluate the strengths and limitations of rationalist historiography.

Reference

1. Appleby, Joyce, Lynn Hunt and Margaret Jacob, *Telling the Truth About History*, W. W. Norton & Company, New York, 1994.
2. Bentley, Michael, *Modern Historiography: An Introduction*, Routledge, London, 1999.
3. Breisach, Ernst, *Historiography: Ancient, Medieval and Modern*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 2007.
4. Collingwood, R. G, *The Idea of History*, Oxford University Press, London, 1994.
5. Gay, Peter, *The Enlightenment: An Interpretation. The Rise of Modern Paganism*. W.W. Norton & Company, New York, 1995.
6. Grafton, Anthony, *The Footnote: A Curious History*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1997.
7. Iggers, Georg G., *Historiography in the Twentieth Century: From Scientific Objectivity to the Postmodern Challenge*. Wesleyan University Press, Conneticut, 2005.
8. Israel, Jonathan, *Radical Enlightenment: Philosophy and the Making of Modernity, 1650-1750*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2001.

Suggested Reading

1. Beccaria, Cesare, *On Crimes and Punishments*, translated by David Young, Hackett Publishing Company, Indianapolis, 1986.
2. Bennett, Jonathan, *Learning from Six Philosophers, Vol.I: Descartes, Spinoza, Leibniz, Locke, Berkeley, Hume*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2003.
3. Descartes, René, *Discourse on the Method*, translated by Ian Maclean, Oxford University Press, London, 2006.
4. Kant, Immanuel, “Idea for a Universal History from a Cosmopolitan Point of View” in *Perpetual Peace and Other Essays*, translated by Ted Humphrey, Hackett Publishing, Indianapolis, 1983.

5. Kenny, Anthony, *The Rise of Modern Philosophy*, 3 vols., Clarendon Press, Oxford, 2004-2006.
6. Russell, B., *History of Western Philosophy*, Routledge, London, 1996.
7. Spinoza, Baruch, *Theological-Political Treatise*, edited by Jonathan Israel, translated by Michael Silverthorne and Jonathan Israel, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2007.
8. Taylor, Charles, *Sources of the Self: The Making of Modern Identity*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1992.



UNIT

Descartes - Vico - Gibbon

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain René Descartes' contributions to modern philosophy
- ◆ analyse Giambattista Vico's critique of Cartesian rationalism and his cyclical theory of history
- ◆ explain Edward Gibbon's historiographical approach

Prerequisites

The intellectual landscape of the 17th and 18th centuries was profoundly shaped by the works of René Descartes, Giambattista Vico and Edward Gibbon. Each of these thinkers contributed uniquely to the development of modern philosophy, historiography and the understanding of human nature. Descartes, with his methodical doubt and emphasis on rationalism, laid the groundwork for modern philosophy. Vico, a critic of Cartesian rationalism, developed a cyclical theory of history and emphasised the role of culture, language and myth in shaping human knowledge. Gibbon, an Enlightenment historian, applied empirical methods and secular analysis in his study of the decline of the Roman Empire, setting new standards for historical writing. Together, these thinkers reshaped the intellectual landscape, moving away from religious and medieval frameworks to a more rational, understanding of the world. This unit explores the contributions of these three thinkers, their intellectual contexts and their lasting impact on modern thought.

Keywords

Methodical Doubt, Cartesian Dualism, Cyclical Theory, *Verum-factum*, Constructivism

Discussion

3.5.1 René Descartes: The Father of Modern Philosophy

René Descartes (1596–1650) was a French philosopher, mathematician and scientist whose work laid the foundation for modern rationalist thought. His methodological doubt and emphasis on reason over sensory experience marked a decisive break from medieval Scholasticism and challenged the authority of the Church.

3.5.1.1 *Cogito, Ergo Sum*: The Foundation of Rationalism

Descartes' philosophical project aimed to establish a secure foundation for knowledge. In his *Meditations on First Philosophy* (1641), he employed a method of radical doubt, questioning everything that could possibly be deceived – including the senses and even mathematical truths. The one certainty that emerged from this process was *Cogito, ergo sum* (“I think, therefore I am”). This statement became the bedrock of his epistemology, asserting that the act of thinking itself is undeniable proof of one's existence.

While Descartes did not directly contribute to the study of history, his method of breaking problems into smaller parts to be systematically analysed (known as *methodological reductionism*) encouraged historians to critically evaluate sources, reject assumptions and construct narratives based on rational analysis.

This emphasis on reason and method influenced later historians, particularly during the Enlightenment, who sought to move history away from myth and legend towards empirical investigation.

3.5.1.2 Dualism and the Mind-Body Problem

Descartes' *dualism* posited a fundamental distinction between mind (*res cogitans*) and body (*res extensa*). He argued that the mind, as a thinking and non-material substance, is distinct from the body, which operates in the physical world. This view laid the groundwork for later debates in the philosophy of mind.

Descartes' dualism his division between mind (*res cogitans*) and body (*res extensa*) paralleled an intellectual shift that encouraged historians to separate religious doctrine from historical investigation. Prior to Descartes, historical narratives were often framed within a theological perspective, viewing history as unfolding according to divine providence. Cartesian rationalism contributed to the rise of secular historiography, allowing history to be studied as a human-driven process rather than merely the fulfilment of divine will. This shift was crucial for later historians, such as Gibbon, who applied a more secular and critical lens to historical writing.

3.5.1.3 Mathematisation of the World

Descartes' impact extended beyond philosophy into mathematics and science. He developed analytic geometry, allowing algebraic equations to be expressed as geometric shapes and championed a mechanistic view of nature. His insistence on deductive reasoning and mathematical certainty influenced later rationalists, including Spinoza and Leibniz and helped shape the scientific method.

Descartes' search for universal principles in philosophy and science inspired historians to seek similar laws governing historical



development. This approach is evident in the works of thinkers like Giambattista Vico, who, while critical of Cartesian rationalism, sought to identify cyclical patterns in history.

3.5.2 Giambattista Vico: The Pioneer of Historicism

Giambattista Vico (1668–1744) was an Italian philosopher, historian and jurist who challenged the rationalist optimism of thinkers like Descartes and instead emphasised the role of historical and cultural contexts in shaping knowledge. His most influential work, *The New Science* (1725), laid the groundwork for what would later become historicism and the philosophy of history.

3.5.2.1 Critique of Cartesian Rationalism

Vico rejected Descartes' reliance on purely rationalist methods, arguing that human knowledge is shaped by history, culture and language. He contended that mathematics and logical deduction were insufficient to explain the complexities of human society, which instead required an understanding of myths, traditions and institutions. For Vico, history was not a mere collection of events but a structured, cyclical process governed by social development. He introduced the concept of the *verum-factum* principle, which states that we can only truly know what we have made. This principle underpins his philosophy of history, suggesting that human beings can understand history because they have created it.

3.5.2.2 The Three Ages of Civilisation

One of Vico's most original contributions was his theory of historical cycles, which divided human history into three recurring stages:

The Age of Gods: In this earliest stage, humans are governed by fear and superstition. Society is organised around religious rituals and divine authority. Laws are based on divine commands and language is poetic and symbolic.

The Age of Heroes: In this stage, society is dominated by aristocratic elites who claim divine or heroic ancestry. Laws are based on force and privilege and language becomes more formalised and hierarchical.

The Age of Men: In the final stage, society becomes more democratic and rational. Laws are based on equality and reason and language becomes more abstract and philosophical.

In this, Vico placed great importance on the role of imagination, myth and poetry in the early stages of human development. He saw these as the primary means through which early humans made sense of the world and constructed their social realities. According to Vico, civilizations inevitably decline as rationalism erodes cultural foundations, leading to a period of chaos before the cycle begins anew, returning to the Age of Gods.

3.5.2.3 The Role of Language and Myth

Vico emphasised the importance of language, poetry and mythology in shaping societies. He argued that early human consciousness was metaphorical rather than abstract and that mythmaking was essential to understanding the origins of legal and social institutions. Vico emphasised the intimate connection between language and thought, arguing that the development of language reflects the evolution of human consciousness. He studied the etymology of words to uncover the historical and cultural contexts in which they emerged.

Vico's focus on the diversity of human cultures challenged the ethnocentric

assumptions of his time. He recognised that different societies have unique ways of understanding the world, shaped by their historical and cultural contexts. Vico's work, though largely ignored in his time, later influenced thinkers such as Hegel, Marx and the 19th-century historicist tradition. His emphasis on cultural relativism and the non-linear nature of history remains relevant to modern historiography and social theory. In fact, he laid the foundation for what would later become the theory of constructivism.

3.5.3 Edward Gibbon

Edward Gibbon (1737–1794) was an English historian whose magnum opus, *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–1788), remains one of the most influential works of historical writing. This six-volume masterpiece shapes the field of historiography with its meticulous research, critical approach and literary elegance. Gibbon's contributions to history extend beyond his subject matter, as he helped establish new standards for historical writing, secular analysis and the study of empire and decline.

3.5.3.1 The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire

The first volume of Edward Gibbon's *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, published in 1776, traced the empire's decline to the accession of Commodus in 180 CE, marking the beginning of a long deterioration. His most debated claim was that the rise of Christianity contributed significantly to Rome's downfall, as it undermined the authority of traditional religion, weakened civic loyalty, discouraged military service and fostered an exclusive community that functioned like a state within a state. He further minimised the extent of Christian persecution, estimating only about two thousand martyrs and went so far as to suggest

that the Church had acquired power by fraud and sustained it through violence. These assertions provoked strong criticism, with opponents accusing him of bias, unfairness and inaccuracies. In defence, Gibbon issued a *Vindication*, acknowledging small mistakes but rejecting charges of deliberate falsification, plagiarism, or serious error.

The second and third volumes of Gibbon's *Decline and Fall* passed without much public reaction, yet they contained significant interpretations. He regarded Constantine's conversion as a calculated act of statesmanship, recognising religion as a tool to strengthen morality, social order and governance. In contrast, he devoted nearly one hundred and fifty pages to Julian the Apostate, presenting him with rare eloquence and impartiality. Volume 4, praised by Durant, contained masterly accounts of Justinian and Belisarius, along with a celebrated chapter on Roman law that won admiration from legal scholars. In Volume 5, Gibbon turned to the rise of Islam and the Arab conquests of the eastern Roman Empire, treating the Prophet and the Caliphs with a fairness and depth of understanding notably absent in his treatment of Christianity. Finally, Volume 6 offered a dramatic narrative of the Crusades, culminating in the fall of Constantinople to Muhammad II in 1453, which Gibbon presented as the fitting climax to his monumental history.

Gibbon's approach to history was influenced by the Enlightenment ideals of reason, scepticism and empiricism. He sought to provide a rational explanation for historical events, free from the influence of superstition and dogma. His critical stance towards religion, particularly Christianity, was controversial at the time but has since been recognised as a significant contribution to the secularisation of historical scholarship.

3.5.3.2 Method and Style of Gibbon

Edward Gibbon's *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* is renowned for both its grandeur of style and its philosophical insight. His prose, rich with irony and rhetorical flourish, matches the vast theme of Rome's thousand-year decay. As a product of the Enlightenment, Gibbon upheld reason and critical inquiry without attempting to turn history into rigid laws. He rejected simplistic theories based on race or geography, recognised the influence of exceptional individuals and affirmed the Enlightenment belief in human progress. Yet, he also portrayed history as a continuous record of human vices and misfortunes, grounded in the unchanging flaws of human nature.

For all his intellectual breadth, Gibbon deliberately restricted the scope of history by omitting cultural aspects such as art, science, literature and the condition of the common people. In his view, political affairs and warfare formed the true essence of historical study. His conclusions reflected the rationalist tendencies of his age, especially in his treatment of the Middle Ages. Following the lead of Voltaire and Montesquieu, he dismissed that era as one dominated by barbarism and superstition, reducing it to what he called "the triumph of barbarism and religion." Similarly, his assessment of Byzantine civilisation has been faulted as unfair and dismissive; critics like Bury emphasised that Gibbon overlooked the empire's vital role in safeguarding Europe from eastern threats and in preserving the treasures of Greek civilisation.

Gibbon's discussion of Christianity further reveals the sceptical outlook of the Enlightenment. Strongly influenced by Voltaire, he characterised the early Christians as rigid, intolerant and a destabilising force within the Roman Empire. Their rejection of

imperial religion, refusal of military duty and open prediction of Rome's fall, he argued, weakened the state from within. Although many of his claims had a factual basis, his account carried a clear bias and failed to appreciate the deeper spiritual and cultural energy of Christianity. Ultimately, Gibbon's work remains a milestone in rationalist historiography, impressive in scope and style, yet marked by the intellectual boundaries and prejudices of the Enlightenment tradition.

Gibbon's historical method was deeply influenced by Enlightenment rationalism. He relied on primary sources, critical analysis and a commitment to empirical evidence. Unlike earlier historians, who viewed history through a theological or providential lens, Gibbon sought secular and material explanations for Rome's decline. He viewed history as a human process, governed by politics, economics and cultural dynamics rather than divine intervention.

Gibbon's meticulous examination of primary sources, including classical texts, legal records and religious documents, set a new benchmark for historical accuracy. His critical approach, combined with a keen sense of irony, helped establish modern source-based historiography.

3.5.4 Impact on Modern Thought

Descartes, Vico and Gibbon each approached the problem of knowledge from different perspectives. Descartes' method of radical doubt and his emphasis on rational certainty set the stage for modern epistemology. Vico, in contrast, rejected Cartesian rationalism in favour of a more imaginative and historical approach to knowledge, encapsulated in his *verum-factum* principle. Gibbon, influenced by Enlightenment ideals, applied a critical and empirical approach to the study of history, emphasising the importance of evidence and rational analysis.

Vico's philosophy of history represents a significant departure from both Cartesian rationalism and Gibbon's empirical approach. Vico's cyclical theory of history and his emphasis on the role of myth and language in human development offer a unique perspective on the nature of historical change. Gibbon's work, while more empirical and critical, shares with Vico an interest in the broader patterns of historical development and the role of human agency in shaping history.

The contributions of Descartes, Vico and Gibbon have had a lasting impact on modern thought. Descartes' emphasis on reason and doubt laid the foundation for the Enlightenment and continues to influence contemporary philosophy. Vico's philosophy of history has shaped the fields of historiography, anthropology and cultural studies, offering a counterpoint to the rationalist and empiricist traditions. Gibbon's critical and empirical approach to history set a standard for historical scholarship that remains influential today.

Recap

- ◆ Descartes' rationalism transformed philosophy, establishing the foundations for modern epistemology.
- ◆ His method of doubt promoted analytical approaches in historical interpretation.
- ◆ Descartes' ideas remain central to debates on knowledge, consciousness and the mind-body problem.
- ◆ Vico introduced a creative philosophy of history, emphasising human imagination.
- ◆ He argued that history required symbolic, imaginative frameworks that were distinct from mathematics.
- ◆ Vico's thought reshaped the understanding of historical development through human creativity.
- ◆ Enlightenment ideals influenced Gibbon's scepticism, rationalism and empirical historical methods.
- ◆ Gibbon rejected theological explanations, prioritising evidence and reason in historiography.
- ◆ His work set rigorous standards for historical criticism and scholarship.
- ◆ Gibbon highlighted civilisational decline, exposing vulnerabilities that followed periods of greatness.

Objective Questions

1. What is the famous statement by Descartes that serves as the foundation of rationalism?
2. Descartes' methodological approach is best described as?
3. Which philosopher is considered the pioneer of historicism?
4. In Vico's philosophy of history, what marks the "Age of Heroes"?
5. What is the title of Edward Gibbon's most famous work?
6. Which work is considered Descartes' foundational text in philosophy?
7. What does *verum-factum* principle state?
8. According to Gibbon, what played a significant role in the decline of the Roman Empire?

Answers

1. *Cogito, ergo sum*
2. Radical doubt
3. Giambattista Vico
4. Aristocratic rule and hierarchy
5. *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*
6. *Meditations on First Philosophy*
7. We can only truly know what we have made
8. Christianity

Assignments

1. Compare and contrast Descartes' dualism (mind-body distinction) with Vico's emphasis on the role of myth, language and cultural context in shaping human understanding. How do their approaches differ in explaining human consciousness and knowledge?
2. Edward Gibbon's *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* is celebrated not only for its historical analysis but also for its literary style. Analyse how Gibbon's use of irony, narrative structure and engaging prose contributed to the work's enduring influence.
3. How did the approach to mathematical reasoning influence not only philosophy but also the study of history and science?

Reference

1. Clarke, Desmond M., *Descartes: A Biography*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2009.
2. Collingwood, R. G., *The Idea of History*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1994.
3. Gibbon, Edward, *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–1789), edited by David Womersley, Penguin, London, 1994.
4. Pocock, J.G.A., *Barbarism and Religion: Volume 1: The Enlightenments of Edward Gibbon, 1737-1764*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999.
5. Pompa, Leon, *Vico: A Study of the 'New Science'*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1990.
6. Popkin, R. H., *The History of Scepticism: From Savonarola to Bayle*, Oxford University Press, New York, 2003.
7. Russell, B., *History of Western Philosophy*, Routledge, London, 1996.

Suggested Reading

1. Descartes, R, *Meditations on First Philosophy*, tr. and ed. by John Cottingham, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2013.
2. Gibbon, Edward, *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, 6 vols., W. Strahan & T. Cadell, London, 1776-1788.
3. Lilla, Mark, "G.B. Vico: The Antimodernist" in *The Wilson Quarterly*, Vol. 17, No. 3, 1993.
4. Mali, Joseph, *The Rehabilitation of Myth: Vico's 'New Science'*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1992.
5. Porter, Roy, *Enlightenment: Britain and the Creation of the Modern World*, Penguin Books, London, 2001.
6. Taylor, Charles, *Sources of the Self: The Making of Modern Identity*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA, 1992.
7. Vico, Giambattista, *The New Science*, tr. by T.G. Bergin & M.H., Cornell University Press, New York, 2015.
8. Womersley, David, *The Transformation of 'The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire'*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1988.



New Trends and Theories on Historical Writing





UNIT

Trends in Writings of History - Ranke and Modern Scientific Way of Writing History

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain Leopold von Ranke's role in making history an academic discipline
- ◆ engage with the Rankean emphasis on objectivity, archival fidelity, and the centrality of primary sources in historical reconstruction
- ◆ assess the methodological strengths and ideological limitations of Ranke's historiography
- ◆ equip themselves with a foundational understanding of scientific historiography

Prerequisites

Classical historians laid the groundwork by introducing inquiry and interpretation, transforming history into a reflective and reasoned study of the past. In the nineteenth century, Leopold von Ranke played a crucial role in establishing history as an academic discipline. His emphasis on objectivity, the use of primary sources, and reliance on archival research marked a significant methodological shift, shaping the foundations of modern historical scholarship. Over time, Ranke's ideas were reassessed as historians introduced new perspectives that questioned strict objectivity.

This unit explores Ranke's contribution to the professionalisation of history, analyses the key principles of Rankean historiography, and evaluates its methodological strengths and ideological limitations within the evolution of historical thought.

Keywords

Objectivity, Primary sources, Archival Research, Scientific Method, Professionalization, Seminar, Berlin revolution

Discussion

4.1.1 Rankean Historiography

Let us imagine a scene: a curious young boy, exploring the forgotten corners of his ancestral home, uncovers a timeworn diary belonging to his late grandfather, a man of few spoken memories but evidently rich in written ones. As he turns the brittle, yellowed pages, he finds not stories woven from imagination but precisely dated entries chronicling village life, political upheavals, and intimate family trials during the colonial era. What begins as an innocent discovery gradually transforms into a revelatory encounter with the past, mediated through direct, first-hand testimony. In this simple act of reading, the boy unknowingly steps into the domain of Rankean historical inquiry, rooted in the primacy of archival evidence and the conviction that the past must be studied “as it actually was,” not through myth or abstraction, but through documented realities.

The emergence of history as a modern academic discipline, distinct from the realms of philosophy and literature, was a relatively late development in the intellectual landscape, taking definitive form only in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Leopold von Ranke (1795–1886), revered as the father of modern historiography, was instrumental in this transformation. His teaching and scholarship, particularly at the University of Berlin, ignited what is now termed the “Berlin Revolution” in historical studies. Seeking to emancipate history from speculative metaphysics, Ranke introduced

rigorous empirical methods grounded in a critical evaluation of primary sources. He believed that authentic historical knowledge must emerge from direct engagement with original documents such as letters, official records, and diplomatic correspondence, all sources that bore the imprint of those who lived through the events. Ranke’s seminars, which emphasised close reading, textual criticism, and verification of evidence, became the model for modern historical training, establishing history as a profession governed by methodical inquiry and objective standards.

He insisted that each historical epoch must be understood in its own right, resisting the temptation to impose presentist values or overarching philosophical frameworks. Ranke distanced himself from the Romantic tendency to interpret history through emotion, myth, or nationalist passion. Instead, he approached the past with an attitude of scholarly detachment, striving for neutrality and factual accuracy. His legacy lies in institutionalising the principles of archival research, source-based analysis, and scientific rigour. These form the cornerstones that continue to shape the discipline of history today.

4.1.2 Key Principles of Rankean Historiography

The Rankean theory built the foundations of history as an academic and research-based discipline. The Berlin Revolution in historiography, which took place at the University of Berlin under his influence,



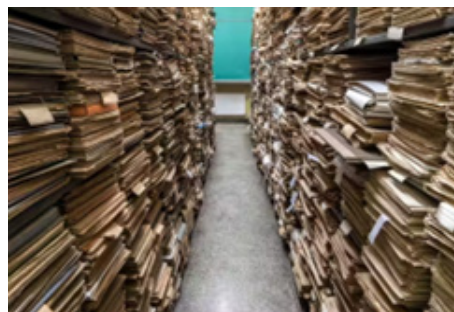
provided a platform for the development of scientific historiography. Ranke transformed the university into a centre for rigorous historical study, training scholars to analyse sources and base their conclusions on evidence critically. This revolution laid the foundation for modern historical methods used around the world today. Ranke introduced certain key expectations for a historian: a pure love for truth, the ability to comprehend the totality of an epoch, and impartiality in interpreting events. He emphasised that the historian's role was not to judge the past, but to understand and present it as it actually occurred. Other key features of his method are as follows:

- ◆ **Use of primary sources and archival data:** Ranke ascertained the need for an 'accurate history' based on primary sources. To him, 'the nearest witness to an event is the best, and that letters of the actors were of more value than the anecdote of the chronicler.'

One of Ranke's major contributions was the emphasis on **archival research**. Though archives existed earlier, it was Ranke who institutionalised their centrality in historical writing. He undertook to publish a lot of primary sources, like manuscripts, correspondence, charts, etc., from various archives all over Europe. He claimed that true history could only be written from original documents. By using archival material to check the accuracy of secondary sources and historians, he helped establish modern history as a serious and scientific field of study. However, this led to a Eurocentric view of history that excluded societies without written records, such as ancient India and China, or communities without nation-states.

His elevation of archival sources created a lasting hierarchy in historical scholarship. While the distinction between primary

and secondary sources had existed since the Renaissance, Ranke reinforced it by placing archival documents at the top and treating other materials- like oral traditions, archaeological evidence, and indirect commentaries- as less reliable.



Archives exemplify Ranke's enduring principle that genuine historical knowledge must be rooted in the critical use of primary sources.

Ranke also stressed the importance of using a scholarly apparatus in historical writing, including bibliographies, footnotes, and citations, to properly attribute sources and strengthen the credibility of historical narratives.

- ◆ **Objectivity :** Most of the history books till that time attempted to present a biased view of the past based on the current moralities or particular agendas. Ranke understood the problem associated with such writings. He emphasised that each historical event should be studied as an individual event. The personal biases of the historian should not affect their work. This approach gave rise to the idea of "history for its own sake," where the purpose of history is not to teach lessons but to understand the past on its own terms. Both Ranke and Barthold Niebuhr believed they were creating a new kind of history based on objectivity. Ranke's works clearly show his strong commitment to being fair, neutral, and focused on facts. However, he also acknowledged that historical facts possess a spiritual or inner content that

goes beyond their outward appearance and therefore, facts do not speak for themselves. The historian must interpret them carefully, separating appearance from deeper truth.

- ◆ **History as a science and art :** He viewed history as both a science and an art. There are two German words for history- Geschichte, which points towards science and objectivity, and Historie, which indicates art and subjectivity. It was a science due to its rigorous collection and documentation of facts, and an art because it sought to recreate the past with the vividness and imagination of poetry. He believed that a historian must blend critical analysis with narrative insight. However, he also asserted that history followed its own distinct principles, setting it apart from both science and art.
- ◆ **Universal History:** Ranke insisted that “no history can be written but universal history.” Although he affirmed the uniqueness of every event, he viewed each as an extract of a larger narrative. For him, local and specialised studies must connect to national histories, which themselves belong to wider epochs, ultimately forming the all-encompassing history of humanity. “The final goal-not yet realised,” he wrote, “always remains the conception and composition of a history of mankind.”
- ◆ **Seminar Method :** Ranke's seminar method, inspired possibly by philological seminars of the eighteenth century, began between 1825 and 1831, focusing on the close reading and analysis of modern official documents. He referred to these sessions as ‘exercises’ meant to train scholars in critical historical thinking and source analysis. These seminars initially took a relatively informal shape, allowing students to engage directly with materials and learn the craft of history through discussion and collaboration. Over time, however, this practice evolved into a

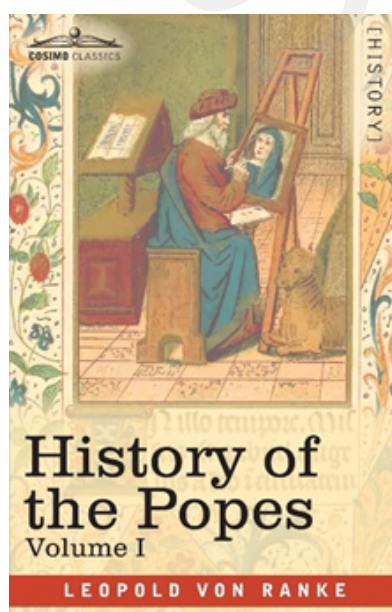
formal pedagogical tool that laid the foundation for professional historical training. By the late nineteenth century, Ranke’s disciples institutionalised the seminar system, turning it into a key part of university-based historical education. Students were expected to organise archival materials, apply historical methods, and share their findings with peers, thus fostering a community of scholarly inquiry. This model soon spread beyond Germany to countries like France, the United States, and elsewhere in Europe, and eventually became a global standard in the twentieth century.

- ◆ **Nation state and Eurocentric approach :** Another key element of Ranke’s thought was his emphasis on the nation-state. He believed that the nation was not just one among many possible ways of organizing society, but the most natural and morally necessary one. For Ranke, the idea of the nation was eternal and central to peaceful human progress. This belief led him to focus more on political and diplomatic history, especially the analysis of official state documents and relations between states, rather than on economic or social aspects of history. His vision of history was thus closely linked to the rise of modern nationalism in 19th-century Europe. However, his belief in the nation-state as the highest form of civilisation meant that people without such political structures were seen as outside the realm of history. Consequently, his historical narratives focused almost entirely on European nations- specifically the Latin and Germanic peoples- such as the French, Italians, Germans, English, and others. ‘Ranke believed that the periods and the peoples for whom no written documents exist should be excluded from history.’ This led him to disregard ancient civilizations like India and China, claiming that their chronologies were legendary rather than factual and thus could not form a legitimate basis for history.



Ranke's scholarship was deeply shaped by the major transformations taking place in 19th-century Europe. The aftermath of the Napoleonic Wars heightened his awareness of the power of states and diplomacy, leading him to emphasise political history and international relations. At the same time, the rise of nationalism encouraged him to explore the unique character of individual nations within their own historical contexts. Influenced by the era's growing faith in scientific rationalism, Ranke pioneered a more rigorous, evidence-based approach to history, insisting on the use of primary sources and objective analysis.

Alongside these intellectual trends, Ranke's personal beliefs and political outlook also shaped his work. He saw a strong connection between history and religion, believing it reflected God's will and served as a moral and spiritual guide. Politically conservative, Ranke firmly opposed the French Revolution, which distanced him from liberal thinkers of his time. He also placed great importance on individuals in shaping historical events. Men of action, he believed, were decisive forces in history- a perspective evident in the titles and structure of his works. Yet, he also acknowledged the influence of historical context on individuals.



4.1.3 Works of Ranke

Although not widely known today, Ranke authored numerous significant works. His first major work, *History of the Latin and Teutonic nations* (1824), marked the beginning of his scholarly career. *History of the Popes* (1834–36) earned him international recognition and secured his place among world historians. *In German History at the Time of the Reformation* (1839–43), he examined the rise of Protestantism with detailed source-based analysis. *Nine Books of Prussian History* (1847–48) offered a business-like study of the emergence of the Prussian state. His *History of France* was notably free from the typical German bias against France, while *History of England* emphasised the role of individual personalities in shaping events. *In The Origins of the Wars of Revolution*, Ranke presented his conservative interpretation of the French Revolution. *Ottoman and the Spanish Empires in the 16th and 17th centuries*, of Ranke projects, a comparative approach to history by analysing the rise, growth, and global influence of these two empires. His final and most ambitious work, *Weltgeschichte* (World History), reflected his lifelong commitment to understanding the broader course of human history. Ranke's efforts to history significantly influenced the founding of the first major historical journal, *Historische Zeitschrift*, which began publication in 1859. Heinrich von Sybel, one of Ranke's prominent students, founded the journal to promote rigorous, source-based historical scholarship.

Although Ranke is celebrated as a towering figure in historiography, his methods did not go unchallenged. Contemporary critics, including the noted German historian Heinrich Leo, dismissed his work as mere “porcelain painting, the delight of ladies and amateurs.” In the twentieth century, Ranke faced even sharper criticism for his narrow focus on political history. He largely ignored the lives of ordinary people,

cultural dynamics, and economic forces that shape societies. His neglect of major developments like the Industrial Revolution, science, literature, and technological change revealed a limited scope that prioritised the grandeur of states and empires. His emphasis on great individuals often rendered the masses invisible in his narratives.

Furthermore, Ranke's pursuit of objective, unbiased history did not always lead to the truth he claimed to seek. As a defender of the Church and the state, his version of truth was often shaped by conservative ideals,

offering a refined but partial perspective on the past.

Nevertheless, these limitations do not diminish his significance. Ranke remains a foundational figure in the discipline of history. Unlike Marx, who introduced theories to interpret history, Ranke developed a method to study it. He liberated history from the grip of speculative philosophy and laid the groundwork for treating it as a scientific discipline rooted in evidence and critical analysis.

Recap

- ◆ Ranke pioneered empirical study using scientific principles.
- ◆ Ranke initiated the “Berlin Revolution” at the University of Berlin.
- ◆ This transformed history into a research-oriented field.
- ◆ He championed primary sources and archival materials.
- ◆ Authentic history came from original documentation.
- ◆ Ranke advocated for objectivity in historiography.
- ◆ He sought to reconstruct the past “as it actually occurred.”
- ◆ He institutionalised the seminar method for historical training.
- ◆ Ranke saw history as both a science and an art.
- ◆ His vision had a Eurocentric bias due to the nation-state paradigm.
- ◆ His focus on elites overlooked social and economic history.
- ◆ Ranke's methodological innovations were foundational.
- ◆ His legacy is evidence-based historiography and formalised scholarly practice.

Objective Questions

1. Who is considered as the father of modern historiography ?
2. By what term Rankean structural changes in historical studies was called?
3. What type of sources did Ranke prioritise in historical writing?
4. What feature of Ranke's work distinguished it from Romantic historiography?
5. Which method did Ranke introduce to train students in historical analysis?
6. Why did Ranke exclude India and China from his historical narratives?
7. What was the name of the first book of Ranke?
8. Name the journal started by Ranke's student, Heinrich von Sybel?
9. Which historical empire did Ranke compare with the Ottoman Empire in his global analysis?
10. Which of Ranke's works examined the rise of Protestantism through detailed source-based analysis?
11. Which two types of history did Ranke balance by calling it both a science and an art?
12. Which historical stage did Ranke consider central to peaceful human progress?
13. According to Ranke, who were more decisive in shaping history: masses or individuals?

Answers

1. Ranke
2. Berlin revolution
3. Primary sources
4. His scientific approach based on objectivity and scholarly detachment.
5. Seminar
6. Because he believed they lacked authentic written records
7. History of the Latin and Teutonic nations
8. Historische Zeitschrift
9. Spanish
10. German History at the Time of the Reformation
11. *Geschichte* and *Historie*
12. Nation-state
13. Individuals

Assignments

1. Discuss Leopold von Ranke's contribution to the development of modern historiography.
2. Critically evaluate Ranke's emphasis on primary sources and archival research.
3. How did Ranke's historical method differ from the philosophical approaches to history, such as those of Hegel?
4. Assess the limitations and criticisms of Ranke's historical approach.
5. Compare Ranke's historiographical principles with those of 19th-century Romantic historians.



Reference

1. Bentley, Michael. *Modern Historiography: An Introduction*. Routledge, 1999.
2. Iggers, Georg G. *Historiography in the Twentieth Century: From Scientific Objectivity to the Postmodern Challenge*. Hardcover, Import ed., Wesleyan University Press, 1997.
3. Marwick, Arthur. *The Nature of History*. Palgrave Macmillan, 1970.
4. Marwick, Arthur. *The New Nature of History*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2001.
5. Ranke, Leopold von. *History of the Latin and Teutonic Nations (1494–1514)*. Translated by G. R. Dennis, G. Bell and Sons, 1887.
6. Ranke, Leopold von. *History of the Popes: Their Church and State in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*. Translated by E. Foster, 3 vols., Longman, Green, Longman, and Roberts, 1866.
7. Upadhyaya, Shashi Bhushan. *Historiography in the Modern World: Western and Indian Perspectives*. Orient BlackSwan, 2016.
8. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Longman, 2003.

Suggested Reading

1. Bajaj, K. Satheesh. *Recent Trends in Historiography*. Anmol Publication, 1998.
2. Sen, S. P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.
3. Sheik Ali. *History: Its Theory and Method*. Macmillan, 1980.
4. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Longman, 2003.
5. Thomson, J. W. *A History of Historical Writings*. Macmillan, 1942.



UNIT

Historical Materialism

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ analyse core Hegelian concepts to historical and political thought
- ◆ evaluate the ideological implications and limitations of Hegelian philosophy
- ◆ explain the foundational tenets of Marxian historical materialism
- ◆ synthesise the intellectual relationship between Hegel and Marx

Prerequisites

To grasp Historical Materialism and its Hegelian roots, it's essential to first build a solid foundation in key philosophical concepts. This includes understanding idealism, particularly Hegel's view that reality is mind-dependent, and dialectics, which explores the interplay of opposing forces to reach new syntheses. Crucial notions like rationality, freedom, and historical progress also provide vital context for Marx's ideas. Furthermore, familiarity with core Marxist terms such as mode of production, class consciousness, alienation, and surplus value is absolutely necessary for navigating the theory's complexities.

Beyond theoretical knowledge, a critical engagement with current social and economic issues is paramount. By analysing contemporary challenges through a Marxist lens, learners can connect abstract theory to real-world situations, discerning the enduring relevance and practical applications of these historical concepts. This active observation, coupled with a general awareness of how critical theories fundamentally question dominant systems, will empower a deeper, more nuanced examination of society and foster independent, analytical thought, moving beyond mere memorisation to active participation in intellectual discourse.

Keywords

Dialectics, Idealism, State & Freedom, Historical Materialism, Class Struggle, Surplus Value, Eurocentrism, *Zeitgeist*

Discussion

4.2.1 Hegel

Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel (1770–1831) was a major thinker in the German Idealist tradition. He is best known for developing a highly systematic philosophy based on a method called dialectics, where ideas develop through contradictions and their resolution. Hegel offered a teleological view of history, believing that human freedom and self-awareness unfold over time through historical processes. This idea later influenced Karl Marx, who reworked it into a materialist theory of history. Although interest in Hegel's logic declined in the twentieth century due to changes in modern philosophy, his ideas on politics, society, and religion continued to attract attention. Since the 1970s, there has been renewed interest in Hegel's overall system of thought, particularly his method of reasoning and its relevance to modern philosophical debates. For historians, Hegel's work offers a way to understand the deeper meaning behind historical change, not just as what happened, but why it happened in terms of ideas and progress. His method encourages researchers to look at contradictions in society and how they lead to new stages of development.

Born in Stuttgart, Germany, Hegel was educated at the University of Tübingen, where he studied theology and philosophy. Then, he worked as a professor of philosophy at the University of Jena and the University of Berlin. Although his lectures were 'notoriously dull', they were packed with rich and insightful philosophies, drawing

students across Europe. Hegel published several books, the most famous being *Phenomenology of Spirit* (1807), *Elements of the Philosophy of Right* (1821), and *Lectures on the Philosophy of History* (1837).

4.2.1.1 Dialectics

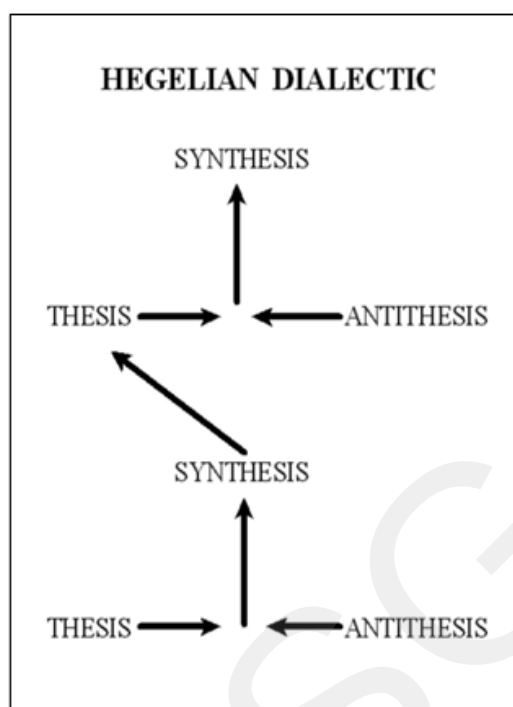
The concept of dialectics was first proposed by Plato as an art of conversation. Later, many thinkers, like Aristotle and Thomas Aquinas, contributed to its development. However, they all used it as a method of argument or logic. Hegel took a different view; he utilised dialectics not only for debate but also to explain how reality, ideas and history evolve.

According to Hegel, dialectics is a process of progressive evolution through contradiction, where two less developed contrasting entities would eventually give rise to a 'higher and more adequate entity'. His dialectics follows the pattern of thesis, antithesis and synthesis. In each historical epoch, there would be a prominent idea- the thesis. To rival the thesis, there would be an opposing idea- the antithesis. These two forces would be in constant struggle, and eventually this tension would lead to the emergence of a new idea- the synthesis, which would be an advanced and higher form than the rest.

Every historical process is a dialectical process, according to Hegel. He interprets the French Revolution from this perspective. In the French society, there was the old regime representing the monarchy and

aristocracy- the thesis, which came in conflict with the revolutionary ideals- the antithesis, resulting in the rise of the modern constitutional state- the synthesis.

Hegel's dialectics was not just about change but about progress, moving forward to greater freedom, which he saw as the main goal of history. The French Revolution, despite its violence, marked a key moment in this process by transforming the idea of freedom into a political reality.



4.2.1.3 Theory of Rationality

Hegel, in his book *Phenomenology of Spirit*, claims that “the rational alone is real”, that is, our reality is our ideas or rational thought. ‘Reason is the mainspring of historical process,’ according to him. He believed that history is the result of human actions, which in turn are driven by human passion and rational will. Therefore, actions are reason in physical form.

The rational will or human thought is the foundation of all human institutions. History is nothing but the embodiment of the rational will, which produces all art,

religion, philosophy and political systems. Thus, the world around us is determined by our ideas and therefore, only rational is real.

Although Hegel claimed that history is a logical and rational process in which nothing occurs by accident, but through necessity, he was aware of the existence of irrational elements in it. ‘People act on impulse’, they work to realise their passion and ambitions, which is indispensable, since ‘nothing great in the World has been accomplished without passion’. But many such impulsive or passionate acts have caused the destruction and death of millions. However, Hegel justifies such acts by explaining the ‘cunning of reason’. Reason ‘does not expose itself to danger’, and tricks the passion into the position of an agent for fulfilling its purpose. Thus, it ‘sets the passions to work for itself.’ Using this theory, Hegel justifies the actions of the ‘World-Historical Men’ such as Alexander, Caesar, and Napoleon. Although they are responsible for destruction, violence, and the slaughter of many, they also contributed to the creation of superior and more rational political institutions through their pursuit of power. Thus, the Hegelian idea of the ‘cunning of reason’ can be seen as indirectly justifying extortion, war, invasion, and oppression, as necessary means for historical progress.

4.2.1.4 History and Nature

Hegel differentiates between history and nature. According to him, only humans have history- because history is progressive and linear, while nature is cyclical and repetitive. Things are born, grow and decay in nature, and the cycle repeats. Nothing truly new is created; everything simply repeats in fixed patterns.

However, history is never repetitive. It moves in spirals- progressing, not just changing. Things may seem similar, but they happen differently each time. The rise

and fall of empires in history may appear repetitive, but each time it occurs differently, shaped by new conditions and therefore, it's never exactly the same.

4.2.1.5 The Supremacy of the State

For Hegel, all history is ultimately the history of states. He saw the state not just as a political institution, but as the highest achievement of human reason- a structure that enables actual freedom. Hegel examines the evolution of historical stages in connection with freedom. Hegel believed that freedom developed gradually across civilisations through historical stages. Starting in the oriental despotism where only the ruler is free, then moving to the Greek and Roman worlds where there is limited freedom and civic awareness, and finally reaching the Germanic world of Hegel's time with all citizens having personal liberty.

The state is man's highest achievement, the actuality of concrete freedom- freedom through reason. For Hegel, the ideal state was a constitutional monarchy, the one in which Hegel himself lived. He admired Prussia as an ideal example, claiming it allowed more liberty than even ancient Greece. (This admiration of Hegel drew criticism from the liberalists, who saw him as a supporter of authoritarianism.)

Hegel regarded the nation-state as the rational form of political organisation and the highest level of social unity. Unlike Kant, Hegel rejected the idea of a confederation of states for the sake of peace. He believed that eliminating war among nation-states was impossible, and that war itself was not a threat to civilisation, but rather a progressive force. In his view, war could ethically elevate humanity by helping people transcend selfish individualism and align with universal values.

4.2.1.6 *Zeitgeist* and the Genius

Hegel believed that history is a dialectical movement, and history is made when these dialectics or contradictions are resolved by growth through struggle. In each difficult situation of history, conflicting forces gradually move toward a central harmony, often guided by the *Zeitgeist*- the spirit of the times- or shaped by the influence of exceptional individuals, or geniuses. These two forces -time and the genius- act as the primary drivers of historical change.

Those heroes or great men in history are the personifications of the rationality and passion of each age. They are the willing instruments of the age. The hero has the insight into the requirements of the time and plunges into action. Every age throws up its appropriate heroes or leaders. For e.g. Bismarck in Germany, Napoleon in France, Gandhi in India, etc. They are conscious or unconscious agents of the time.

A genius is not born out of happiness or peace; rather, they emerge from turbulent and conflict-ridden times. History remains inactive without dialectics and struggle, as it is through contradictions that progress takes shape.

4.2.1.7 Impact and Criticism

Hegel distinguishes between three types of history: Original history, represented by historians like Herodotus and Thucydides, who describe events that they personally saw or lived through; Reflective history, written by historians who study and interpret past events from the present; and Philosophical history, the one Hegel himself was concerned about. He considered history closer to literature than to science, since it is based on the critical self-consciousness of the historian. He was the champion of universal history, a concept he inherited from Herder. He believed that to truly understand any society, one must

grasp the entire process of the development of world history.

Hegel's ideas had a lasting impact on historiography. His followers came to be known as Hegelians. There were two groups of Hegelians- the Old (or Right) and the Young (or Left). The old Hegelians held a conservative view and supported the existing state order. However, the young Hegelians advocated a more revolutionary and atheistic approach. It was these left-wing Hegelians who later became some of the major political thinkers, like Karl Marx and David Strauss.

However, not all scholars were impressed by Hegel's complex and often abstract formulations, which led to severe criticism. Benedetto Croce dismissed Hegel's philosophy of history as a "gigantic blunder," while Schopenhauer famously called it a "monument of German stupidity." Much of this criticism stemmed from the fact that many of Hegel's arguments appeared contradictory and hard to reconcile.

Critics have questioned Hegel's overemphasis on the state, viewing it as an attempt to justify authoritarianism and undermine individual freedom. His teleological view of history- the idea that history moves toward a definite, purposeful end- has been heavily criticised, especially by empiricists and postmodernists, who argue that history is neither linear nor purposeful. Moreover, Hegel's Eurocentric perspective has drawn strong criticism. He seemed to suggest that the elimination of many indigenous peoples in the Americas, Australia, Africa, and Asia- those who, in his view, lacked a developed state and resisted European colonisation- was not a loss to humanity. Such views are now widely condemned for justifying colonialism and ignoring the value of non-European civilisations.

Hegel, as a major philosopher of history, made significant contributions to the

discipline. His ideas on dialectics, the role of the state, and the progressive movement of history shaped the intellectual environment of 19th-century Europe and influenced successive generations of historians, philosophers, and political theorists.

At the same time, his Eurocentric perspective, overemphasis on the state, and idealist approach attracted strong criticism, particularly from later thinkers such as Karl Marx and from postmodern scholars, who challenged the linear and rational assumptions in his theory. Nevertheless, Hegel continues to occupy a central place in historiography for offering a framework that views history as a rational and purposeful process. His legacy remains both influential and contested, continuing to provoke critical reflection on the nature of freedom, power, progress, and historical truth.

4.2.2 Karl Marx

Historiography underwent a profound transformation with the advent of Marxian thought, a shift as radical as it was enduring. With Karl Marx emerged a thinker who not only challenged the prevailing currents of historical understanding but fundamentally redefined the very foundations upon which history could be theorised. Marx's intervention marked a turning point, as historical interpretation moved beyond the chronicles of kings, wars, and individual heroism to an inquiry rooted in the structures of economic production, class conflict, and material conditions. It was in Marx's hands that history became not merely a record of the past but a tool for diagnosing the present and anticipating the future.

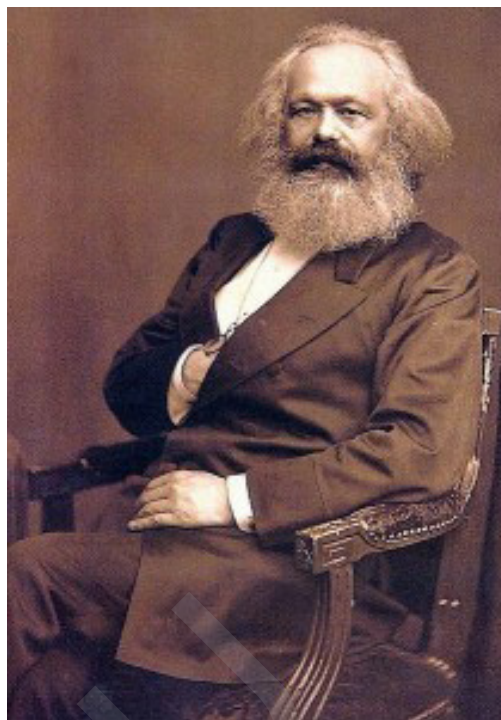
Karl Marx, born in 1818 in Prussia to a middle-class family, received his early education in law at the University of Berlin but soon gravitated toward philosophy and history under the influence of the prevailing intellectual ferment. The political atmosphere



of 19th-century Europe, characterised by the decline of feudal monarchies, the suppressed embers of the French Revolution, and the rise of liberal and radical ideologies, shaped his intellectual sensibilities. As he matured into a philosopher activist, Marx proved uniquely capable of theorising from within his own socio-economic milieu. The rise of industrial capitalism, the exploitation of labour, and the commodification of human life that he witnessed in England became more than mere observations. They became the raw material for a grand theoretical edifice.

Influenced by the dialectical method of Hegel yet departing sharply from his idealism, Marx emerged as a radical Hegelian recasting dialectics in materialist terms. This marked the birth of historical materialism, a methodology that viewed history as the unfolding of class struggle embedded within specific modes of production. Alongside his lifelong collaborator Friedrich Engels, Marx crafted foundational texts such as *The Communist Manifesto*, *The German Ideology*, and *The Holy Family*. These writings collectively forged a new historiographical paradigm, one that interpreted past epochs through the lenses of economic structures and power relations while simultaneously offering a critique of the present and a vision for a transformed future.

Thus, Marx did not simply write history; he theorised it. His unparalleled ability to extrapolate systemic principles from immediate social realities and to situate them within a broader historical continuum laid the groundwork for the Marxist school of historiography. For undergraduate learners, this introduction to Marx not only traces the making of a thinker but also reveals the emergence of a mode of historical analysis that continues to inform critical scholarship across disciplines.



Karl Marx

4.2.2.1 Historical Materialism - The Springboard of Marxian Science of History

Karl Marx introduced a radically new approach to understanding history by placing material conditions rather than abstract ideas at the centre of historical change. In contrast to Hegel's idealism, which held that ideas shape the course of history, Marx argued that it is the material reality, the tangible, economic, and social structures of a society, that fundamentally determine historical development. By "material," Marx meant that which is real, concrete, and empirically observable; elements such as labour, modes of production, property relations, and class structures that could be scientifically studied and explained.



This famous caricature shows Hegel standing on his head, representing his belief that ideas shape history. Marx is shown turning him upright, to show that he believed it is material life, like work, money, and class that truly shapes history, not just ideas. Hegel thought history moved through changes in thought, while Marx said material conditions and struggles drive change. The image cleverly captures the core difference between idealism and historical materialism in a single visual metaphor.

A Contribution to the Critique of Political Economy, 1859).

This theoretical shift turned historical analysis into a form of social science. It offered a systematic and scientific method of examining historical transformation by grounding it in class relations, production systems, and economic contradictions. Across the globe, historical materialism became a powerful springboard for revising dominant historical narratives, many of which had previously centred on elite individuals, divine providence, or abstract ideals. Instead, Marxist historiography sought to uncover the structural forces and class struggles that shaped the destinies of societies.

The mode of production of material life determines the social, political and intellectual life process in general. It is not the consciousness of men that determines their being, but, on the contrary, their social being”

- Karl Marx, (*A Contribution to the Critique of Political Economy*, 1859)

This foundational premise led to the formulation of historical materialism, the cornerstone of Marxist theory and the basis of what would later evolve into the Marxist school of historiography. Historical materialism regards history as the outcome of dialectical processes driven by material forces, especially the organisation of labour and the ownership of the means of production. Marx contended that ideas, culture, laws, and religion, what he called the superstructure, do not shape society independently, but are ultimately determined by the economic base of that society. In his famous words, “It is not the consciousness of men that determines their existence, but their social existence that determines their consciousness” (Preface to

4.2.2.2 The Schema

Marx outlined a broad schema of historical stages, each defined by a distinctive mode of production and class structure. These stages are: Primitive Communism, Slave Society, Feudalism, Capitalism, Socialism, and Communism.

The earliest stage, primitive communism, was characterised by communal ownership of resources within tribal communities. There was no private property, no social classes, and no exploitation. Cooperation was essential for survival. However, technological advances and surplus production gradually led to inequality and the formation of classes.

This gave rise to slave society, the first form of class-divided civilisation. A ruling class owned enslaved individuals, compelling them to produce for the benefit of their masters. Ancient societies like Greece and Rome exemplified this structure, where the economy was heavily reliant on slave labour and the division between oppressors and the oppressed was stark.

Feudalism followed, where landownership became the source of power and wealth. Lords controlled vast estates, while peasants or serfs worked the land under oppressive conditions. The social structure was rigid, with limited mobility, and the exploitation of labour continued in new forms.

With the rise of industrialisation emerged capitalism, in which the bourgeoisie (capitalist class) owned the means of production -factories, machinery, and capital - while the proletariat (working class) sold their labour in exchange for wages. Although capitalism generated unprecedented levels of productivity and wealth, it also intensified social inequality, alienation, and class antagonism.

Marx foresaw that capitalism's internal contradictions would eventually lead to its collapse, giving way to socialism, a transitional stage in which the working class would seize control of the means of production. In this phase, private property would be abolished, the state would regulate production to ensure equitable distribution, and class distinctions would begin to dissolve.

Finally, Marx envisioned communism as the culmination of human social evolution; a classless, stateless, and egalitarian society in which all property would be collectively owned. The state, as an instrument of class domination, would wither away, and individuals would contribute to society according to their ability and receive according to their needs. In this utopian vision, exploitation would cease, and human freedom would be fully realised.

Historical materialism reshaped the study of history by turning it into a systematic and critical social science grounded in real, material conditions rather than abstract ideas. Unlike Hegel, who saw ideas as the driving force of history, Marx placed economic structures, labour, and class conflict at the centre of historical change. This approach created a broad, interdisciplinary framework that drew from economics, sociology, and political theory to explain how societies evolve. It offered a universal method for analysing social and economic history across different times and places, focusing on structural forces instead of individual actions or philosophical ideals. Historical materialism remains one of the most influential and debated approaches in historiography, giving scholars the tools to understand the past, question dominant narratives, and imagine more just and equitable futures.

4.2.2.3 Class Struggle and Social Revolution

Karl Marx famously wrote, "The history of all hitherto existing society is the history of class struggles." This statement lies at the heart of his theory of historical change. According to Marx, in every stage of history, society has been divided into two major groups: one that owns and controls the means of production (the oppressors) and another that is exploited for its labour (the oppressed). In ancient societies, these were freemen and slaves; under feudalism, lords and serfs; and in capitalism, the bourgeoisie and the proletariat. Marx argued that history advances through the conflict between these classes, and that social transformation happens not gradually but through a dialectical process, a clash between the existing order (thesis) and its opposition (antithesis), which leads to a new form of society (synthesis). He believed that class struggle was the engine of historical transformation, and that such struggles would eventually lead to a complete restructuring of society.



This detail from an illustration in a 1911 *Industrial Workers of the World* publication depicts a class of workers struggling to hold up finely dressed elites while they drink and dine. The image serves as a visual representation of class stratification and the dynamics of exploitation central to Marxist theory.

A key example of this in action is the French Revolution (1789), which Marxist historians often interpret as a class conflict between the bourgeoisie, who sought political power to match their growing economic strength, and the feudal aristocracy, who held traditional privileges. The revolution did not arise simply from abstract ideals like liberty or equality, but from deep rooted material tensions: heavy taxation on the Third Estate (commoners), economic crisis, food shortages, and the rising ambitions of a commercial middle class. As these contradictions deepened, they culminated in a mass uprising that dismantled the feudal system and led to the rise of a new social order based on capitalist relations. For Marx, this was a clear instance of class struggle leading to a revolutionary transformation, though incomplete, since it replaced one exploiting class with another.

4.2.2.4 The Theory of Surplus Value

Central to Marx's critique of capitalism is his theory of surplus value. In any system of production, there are four major elements: land, labour, capital and organisation. Of these, Marx argued that only labour creates real value. However, under capitalism workers do not receive the full value of what they produce. Instead, they are paid only a portion of it as wages, just enough to survive, while the surplus value is taken by the capitalists as profit.

For example, if a worker produces goods worth ₹1000 in a day but is paid only ₹300 in wages, the remaining ₹700 is surplus value. This surplus is not shared with the worker who created it but is instead kept by the capitalist who owns the factory or enterprise. Marx described this as a form of unpaid labour, where the worker's contribution is systematically undervalued. In his major work *Das Kapital*, he explained that this unequal appropriation of surplus value lies at the root of class conflict under capitalism. It is this tension between those who produce value and those who extract it that will, in Marx's view, intensify and ultimately give rise to social revolution, wherein the working class would overthrow the capitalist system and establish a more equitable, socialist order.

Through Marx's eyes, history is best understood as a story of struggle between different groups in society, mainly between the rich and the poor, the powerful and the powerless. Instead of focusing on great leaders or big ideas alone, Marx asks us to pay attention to real life- how people work, who owns land, money or factories, and how the wealth they create is shared or taken away. He believed that every society is built on these unequal relationships, where one class benefits from the labour of another. This unfairness leads to conflict, and it is these struggles that push societies to change.

Marx's way of thinking helps us see the deeper reasons behind poverty, injustice, and inequality, not just in the past but also in the world today. It encourages us to question who holds power, who is left out, and how things might be made fairer for everyone.

4.2.2.5 Legacy

Marx and Engels inaugurated a paradigmatic shift in the study of history by privileging the material conditions of life, specifically the mode of production and the underlying economic structure as the primary determinants of historical transformation. Their formulation of dialectical materialism constituted not merely a theoretical framework but a scientific method for historical inquiry, one that foregrounded the dynamic interplay between economic relations and social change. By centring class antagonisms and the historical evolution of productive forces, they offered a systematic and empirically grounded means of analysing the trajectory of human societies. Over time, their analytical categories such as class, labour, and surplus value, were assimilated, extended, and reinterpreted by a broad spectrum of historians, including those outside the Marxist tradition. Today, class analysis and structural inquiry have become so integral to historical scholarship that their Marxian origins are often taken for granted.

Marx's materialist conception of history provided an organising principle that enabled historians to trace causality not through the actions of elite individuals or abstract ideals, but through the socio-economic conditions and collective struggles of ordinary people. It reoriented historical narratives away from the traditional, state-centric focus on rulers, wars, and diplomacy, and instead offered a vision of history as the cumulative outcome of human labour, exploitation, and resistance. As articulated in *The Holy Family*, Marx and Engels insisted that history is the product of

the actions of "real, living men" embedded within specific social contexts and material constraints.

The legacy of this intellectual intervention is profound. Marxist historiography redefined the contours of historical research by introducing a critical, reflexive lens through which power relations, economic inequality, and ideological domination could be systematically interrogated. It enabled the development of social and economic histories that sought to recover the experiences of the marginalised, the dispossessed, and the subaltern classes voices long excluded from conventional historiography. Moreover, Marxism continues to function as a scientific and critical framework, equipping scholars with conceptual tools to analyse the past with rigour while simultaneously offering insights into the structural inequalities of the present. Its enduring relevance lies in its capacity to link historical understanding with emancipatory political critique.

4.2.2.6 Criticism

Marx's interpretation of history has been criticised for being too rigid and overly focused on economic structures. Some scholars argue that he developed a sweeping theory of historical change without grounding it thoroughly in historical evidence. He believed that societies evolve according to universal laws and that revolutions could be predicted as inevitable outcomes of class conflict. However, contrary to these expectations, revolutions did not erupt in the advanced industrial societies he predicted. Instead, they occurred in agrarian societies, and capitalism did not collapse but rather evolved by incorporating reforms and adapting to new realities.

Moreover, the working class in capitalist countries did not uniformly become poorer over time, as Marx had anticipated. Instead, new labour rights, welfare measures, and

democratic reforms emerged, softening class conflicts and stabilising capitalist systems. Critics argue that Marx was responding to the early stage of capitalism and could not foresee its later flexibility and adaptability.

Another limitation of Marx's original framework was its strong economic determinism, the idea that all social, political, and cultural phenomena could ultimately be reduced to economic causes. This left little room for the role of ideas, institutions, culture, or individual agency. It also gave less attention to identities shaped by gender, race, caste, and religion.

In response to these limitations, a number of post and neo-Marxist thinkers reinterpreted and expanded Marx's ideas to better capture the complexity of historical processes. Antonio Gramsci, for instance, introduced the concept of cultural hegemony, explaining how ruling classes maintain power not just through economic dominance but by shaping cultural institutions and public consciousness. Gramsci stressed the importance of ideas, language, and education in maintaining or challenging the existing order, thus making room for intellectual and cultural resistance from below.

Louis Althusser contributed to Marxist theory by focusing on ideology and the role of state institutions, such as schools, churches, and media, in reproducing class structures. He shifted attention from the economic base alone to include the "ideological state apparatus," which maintains capitalist relations by shaping people's beliefs and behaviours.

On the historical front, E. P. Thompson and Eric Hobsbawm redefined Marxist historiography through a more human-centred approach. E. P. Thompson, in particular, focused on the lived experiences of the

working class. He famously wrote about how class was not a fixed identity but something formed through struggle, consciousness, and shared cultural practices. His work highlighted how ordinary people are not just victims of historical forces but active participants in shaping history.

Eric Hobsbawm, on the other hand, worked to integrate Marxist analysis with empirical history. His sweeping studies of the long 19th century and capitalist modernity examined how class, revolution, nationalism, and industrialisation shaped the modern world. Hobsbawm's writings combined deep archival research with structural analysis, showing that Marxist frameworks could be adapted to explain long-term, global historical change in a nuanced way.

Together, these thinkers expanded Marxist historiography beyond economic reductionism. They brought culture, ideology, and human agency into focus, and addressed the limitations of Marx's original model. Their contributions allowed Marxist thought to evolve into a more flexible, inclusive, and historically grounded approach to understanding the past.

Although Marx's original theories have been questioned, revised, and often challenged, their influence on modern historical thinking is undeniable. He offered a powerful critique of inequality and a new way to understand society through class, production, and material life. Post- and neo-Marxist thinkers such as Gramsci, Althusser, Thompson, and Hobsbawm enriched Marxist theory by recognising the roles of culture, ideology, and individual experience in shaping history. By moving beyond economic determinism and embracing a broader view of social change, they made Marxist history more relevant and responsive to diverse contexts.

Recap

- ◆ Hegel was a key figure of the romantic-idealist school, who believed that ideas and rational thought are the driving forces of history.
- ◆ He introduced the concept of dialectics (thesis- antithesis- synthesis), showing how history evolves through contradiction and resolution.
- ◆ Hegel viewed history as a rational process, driven by the human pursuit of freedom, expressed especially through the state.
- ◆ *Zeitgeist* and genius individuals act as agents of historical change.
- ◆ Hegel's idea that "the rational is real" placed the human mind at the center of historical progress.
- ◆ While his ideas inspired thinkers like Marx, they were also criticized for being abstract, authoritarian, teleological, and Eurocentric.
- ◆ Karl Marx introduced a materialist interpretation of history, focusing on economic structures and class relations rather than ideas and individuals.
- ◆ His theory of historical materialism posits that the economic base of society determines its legal, political, and ideological superstructure.
- ◆ Marx identified six historical stages based on the mode of production: Primitive Communism, Slave Society, Feudalism, Capitalism, Socialism, and Communism.
- ◆ Class struggle is the driving force of history, with each era defined by conflict between the oppressor and the oppressed classes.
- ◆ History, according to Marx, progresses through dialectical processes, culminating in a proletarian revolution and the establishment of a classless, stateless society.
- ◆ The concept of surplus value explains capitalist exploitation, where workers produce more value than they receive in wages.
- ◆ Marxist historiography influenced later trends like social history, subaltern studies, and total history, shaping both Marxist and non-Marxist historical analysis.
- ◆ Critics have pointed out limitations such as economic determinism, lack of attention to individual agency, inaccurate predictions about capitalism, and the neglect of gender, caste, and race.

- ◆ Despite these criticisms, Marxism remains a foundational framework for understanding power, economy, and society in historical writing.
- ◆ Post-Marxist thinkers like Antonio Gramsci, Louis Althusser, E. P. Thompson, and Eric Hobsbawm reinterpreted Marxism by emphasising culture, ideology, human agency, and lived experience, making Marxist analysis more flexible and relevant to diverse historical contexts.

Objective Questions

1. What method did Hegel use to explain historical change?
2. What drives history forward in Hegel's system?
3. What term denotes the spirit of the age in Hegelian historiography?
4. What major criticism is commonly directed at Hegel's historical worldview?
5. Which of Hegel's works outlines his philosophy of history?
6. In Marx's theory, which historical stage was the first class-divided society?
7. Who was Marx's long-term collaborator in developing the foundations of Marxist historiography?
8. According to Marx, only one element of production holds real value. Which is it?
9. What is the extra value created by workers but kept by capitalists called?
10. Who argued, within Marxist historiography, that class is not a fixed identity but is formed through shared experiences, struggle, and consciousness?



Answers

1. Dialectics
2. Contradictions
3. *Zeitgeist*
4. Eurocentrism
5. *Lectures on the Philosophy of History*
6. Slave society
7. Friedrich Engels
8. Labour
9. Surplus Value
10. E. P. Thompson

Assignments

1. Analyse Marx's critique of capitalism in *Das Capital*.
2. Evaluate the role of dialectical materialism in Marxist thought.
3. Compare and contrast Marx's ideas in the *Communist Manifesto* with his later economic writings.
4. Compare Hegel's idealism with the materialism of Karl Marx.
5. Examine Hegel's influence on 19th-century European intellectual thought.

Reference

1. Anderson, Perry. *In the Tracks of Historical Materialism*. Verso, 1983.
2. Bentley, Michael. *Modern Historiography: An Introduction*. Routledge, 1999.
3. Cohen, G. A. *Karl Marx's Theory of History: A Defence*. Princeton University Press, 1978.
4. Hegel, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich. *Elements of the Philosophy of Right*. Edited by Allen W. Wood, translated by H. B. Nisbet, Cambridge University Press, 1991.
5. Hegel, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich. *The Philosophy of History*. Translated by J. Sibree, Dover Publications, 2004.
6. Iggers, Georg G. *Historiography in the Twentieth Century: From Scientific Objectivity to the Postmodern Challenge*. Hardcover, Import ed., Wesleyan University Press, 1997.
7. Marwick, Arthur. *The Nature of History*. Palgrave Macmillan, 1970.
8. Marwick, Arthur. *The New Nature of History*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2001.
9. Marx, Karl. *Capital: A Critique of Political Economy*. Translated by Ben Fowkes, Penguin Classics, 1990.
10. Marx, Karl, and Friedrich Engels. *The Communist Manifesto*. Edited by Gareth Stedman Jones, Penguin Classics, 2002.
11. Marx, Karl, and Friedrich Engels. *The Holy Family*. Translated by Richard Dixon and Clement Dutts, Progress Publishers, 1956.
12. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Longman, 2003.
13. Upadhyaya, Shashi Bhushan. *Historiography in the Modern World: Western and Indian Perspectives*. Orient BlackSwan, 2016.

Suggested Reading

1. Bajaj, K. Satheesh. *Recent Trends in Historiography*. Anmol Publication, 1998.
2. Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. University of Chicago Press, 1982.
3. Sheik Ali, B. *History: Its Theory and Method*. Macmillan, 1980.
4. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography*. Orient Longman, 2003.
5. Thomson, J. W. *A History of Historical Writings*. Macmillan, 1942.



BLOCK

Twentieth Century Historiography



UNIT

Annales School

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the origin and progression of the Annales School
- ◆ identify the contributions of Marc Bloch, Lucien Febvre, and Fernand Braudel
- ◆ understand the concept of *longue durée* and its impact
- ◆ describe the contribution of Annales School in historiography

Prerequisites

The Annales School of History is one of the influential historiographical movements of the 20th century. The post-World War I scenario, the years of the Great Depression, cast a shadow of economic instability. This period prompted a need for new intellectual approaches, which led to the emergence of the Annales School of thought. This movement arose in response to the criticisms of the new social sciences like sociology, anthropology, and human geography. The traditional history and its method of focusing only on narrow events led historians to pursue a more all-inclusive interpretation of the past. At this time, the Annales historians sought to reintroduce historical writing by integrating broader perspectives of human behaviour and shifting its focus from events to underlying social structures and processes. This unit will, therefore, analyse the evolution of the Annales School and its major contributions to the historical study.

Keywords

Annales School, Marc Bloch, Lucien Febvre, Fernand Braudel, *Longue durée*, Total History, Historical Mentalities

Discussion

During the French Enlightenment, Voltaire and Montesquieu challenged the idea that history was a mere record of the deeds of individuals and political leaders. This 'new history' is based on a philosophical approach that focuses on customs, beliefs, and social developments. A similar shift occurred in mid-20th century France when Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch sought to keep political history away from the centre of historical study.

The origin of the Annales method can be found in the work of Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch. However, this school had its roots in the French historiographical tradition. The Annales School first emerged in 1929 when Marxist historians were focusing on uncovering the economic foundations of the cultural and political structures. The founders of the school believed that both traditional histories and Marxist ideas were limiting the study of history. They aimed to create a more extensive scheme to integrate all fields of study associated with human history. By incorporating methods from various disciplines like geography, economics, sociology and anthropology, the Annales historians pursued a more holistic and nuanced understanding of history.

Strasbourg University in France provided Bloch and Febvre with an intellectual environment that encouraged innovations and nurtured interdisciplinary exchange. The *Annales* rejected the idea that history could be reconstructed through a mere compilation of isolated facts. They were critical of narrative histories, which Braudel termed “the history

of events.” Instead, Bloch and Febvre adopted a problem-oriented approach. In this, they tried to explore major historical questions by analysing patterns of structural change. They believed that historical understanding could be deepened by integrating insights from sociology, geography, psychology and economics. However, this interdisciplinary approach was not done on the basis of a comprehensive historical understanding. Both historians supported the need for impartiality while dealing with the sources and also urged the use of diverse sources for historical writing.

5.1.1 Annales of Economic and Social History

Marc Bloch and Lucien Febvre set out to reshape the way history was written, aiming to craft a more complete and human-centred account of society. They sought to integrate various disciplines, sources, and methodologies together to form “a total history.” *The journal Annales of the Economic and Social History*, known thereafter as *Annales*, was launched in 1929 to promote this interdisciplinary integration. Recognising that no single historian could capture the full spectrum of human society, they called for collaborative work across different areas of expertise. This marked the beginning of a major transformation in historical scholarship. The original editorial board of *Annales* brought together experts from various fields, and in their opening statement, Bloch and Febvre highlighted the growing disconnect between history



and the social sciences - a gap they aimed to bridge.

5.1.1.1 Marc Bloch

Marc Bloch was born into a Jewish family in Lyons. He served in the French army during World War I. In 1919, he was appointed as a professor of medieval history in Strasbourg. Bloch was not only a historian and scholar but also a dedicated soldier and patriot. Along with Febvre and Fernand Braudel, he carried forward the legacy of the Annales School.

Bloch did not rely only on conventional historical methods. He was deeply interested in geography and collective psychology. He also took insights from sociology for methodological precision. His research, therefore, extended beyond history, drawing on archaeology, agronomy, cartography and folklore, as well as applied economic theory and statistical analysis.

One of the key aspects of Bloch's approach was to formulate the right question and then search for evidence that would give an answer. He emphasised the use of comparative and regressive analysis to attain a deeper historical knowledge. His comparative analysis was used to identify similarities and differences, which eventually led to new insights and sometimes clear conclusions, while the regressive method uses later evidence, such as customs and traditions, to shed light on the earlier historical periods.

His first book, *The Island of France* (Paris and the Five Surrounding Departments) (1913), marked the detachment from traditional historiography. Instead of following a conventional historical narrative, Bloch focused on the geography, language, archaeological remains, and architectural features of the region. In 1924, Bloch published *The Royal Touch*, a work which is considered by scholars to be a twentieth-century classic. In this work, he explores how

the belief in the supernatural power of the kings played a crucial role in strengthening monarchical authority. Bloch was drawn to the topic because he was interested in how group psychology works, especially how irrational beliefs shape people's actions. He explained that the supernatural powers believed to be held by kings in England and France played a key role in keeping the monarchy strong.

One of the main contributions of Bloch was his study of feudal society. Unlike traditional historians, he tried to examine feudalism from the peasant perspective rather than focusing on kings and nobles. This aspect was evident in his work *King and Serfs: A Chapter of Capetian History*. In his *French Rural History: An Essay on its Basic Characteristics* (1921), he provided a comprehensive portrayal of agrarian life, tracing its evolution from its earliest known stages to the French Revolution. The book also examined the decline of slavery and transformations in serfdom.

In 1940, he published *Feudal Society*. The book was based on diverse sources and methodologies to analyse the structural relationships that connected social, economic, political, technological and psychological aspects of the feudal world. These works, therefore, reflected Bloch's interdisciplinary approach.

Marc Bloch's perspective of history was clearly revealed in his work *The Historian's Craft*. This was an unfinished manuscript that he left behind and was later published in English. Arthur Marwick, in his work *Nature of History*, has described the book as a "very human testimony to a personal faith in history, and a manifesto on behalf of the most advanced school of historical writing of the inter-war years." In the introduction of this work, he discusses the purpose of history and its place among the sciences. He described history as "a science in infancy."

He argues that just as natural science moved towards flexibility, historians should not be discouraged by the uncertainties of their field. Bloch envisioned “broadened and deepened history,” aligning with the Annales School’s approach. The book comprises four chapters and an unfinished fifth chapter. He defined history as “the science of men in time,” and Bloch emphasises its aesthetic and humanistic nature. He contrasts it with other sciences and also argues that dividing history into fixed periods can be misleading.

In the first chapter, Bloch looked at history as a serious discipline that studies both the past and present, interpreting each through the lens of the other. The second chapter, ‘Historical Observation,’ envisions a future where historians are trained in linguistic and social science techniques. The third chapter, ‘Historical Criticism,’ addresses issues such as forgeries and the reliability of sources. The fourth chapter considers the importance of group psychology. The book concludes with an unfinished discussion on causation.

5.1.1.2 Lucien Febvre

Febvre’s first major work was *The Regions of France: Franche-Comté*, which focused primarily on geographical themes. In 1911, he published *Philip II and Franche-Comté*, a study based on economic and social history over its political aspects. He rejected the idea of single-cause explanations and emphasised “the multiple actions of profound causes.” In the work *The Earth and Social Evolution* (1922), he challenged Ratzel’s theory of geographical determinism and acknowledged the role of geography in history. He argued that the river was not just a ‘natural frontier’ but facilitated connections between human groups.

His engagement with “historical psychology” first became evident in his work *Martin Luther* (1928). The book

analysed the social necessities that shaped Martin Luther’s actions and the broader links between individuals and groups. This interest in mentalities can be seen in his work *The Problem of Unbelief in the Sixteenth Century*. This work examined the religious context of Rabelais’s time, relating intellectual developments to the broader structural conditions.

5.1.1.3 Fernand Braudel

Fernand Braudel, a disciple of Lucien Febvre, realised the concept of “total history.” Bloch and Febvre applied this approach to specific historical periods; Braudel analysed the complexity of human life in his *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II* (1949). He took 20 years to finish the book. The book aimed to respond to the increasing fragmentation of historical studies. According to James A. Henretta, American historian, it is “a comprehensive, multi-dimensional cubist portrait of society.”

In the *Mediterranean*, he introduces a new perspective on time and historical change in relation to space. He emphasised the importance of geography in history by making the sea the central figure in his narrative. His major contribution was his interpretation of historical time as multi-layered, with each layer evolving at a different rate. He critiqued traditional history, which portrays events as short-term occurrences. Braudel and other Annales historians advocate for a broader perspective. They introduce the concept of *longue durée*, a historical framework that prioritises long-term social, economic, and structural developments. This concept has helped them to understand history as a dynamic, multi-layered process.

Braudel, therefore, created multiple temporalities in historical analysis:

1. Short-term history that focuses on events and immediate changes. This is considered a traditional political history.
2. Cyclical history, which studies economic and social cycles.
3. *Longue durée* (long-term history), which examines deep structures of human civilisation.

These levels were referred to as “geographical time, social time, and individual time.” He structured his work around these layers of time, each representing a different historical approach. The main goal of this approach was to integrate geography, economics, politics, and culture into a “total history”.

The first section of *The Mediterranean* deals with the slowest layer, which Braudel calls *la longue durée* (the long term). It focuses on the deep and enduring relationship between humans and the natural world - landscapes, climate, seas, and routes. This is what Braudel calls geohistory, where time barely moves and change is extremely slow. In this long-term view, centuries may pass before noticeable shifts occur because life is shaped by geography and limited by slow, difficult communication.

The second section explores medium-term changes, or what Braudel terms conjunctures. This layer includes the rhythms of economic trends, social systems, political institutions, and civilisations. These changes, such as fluctuations in trade, prices, or demographic shifts, typically unfold over decades. Understanding developments here requires connecting them to larger structural changes; for instance, to understand Spanish politics, one must also consider its financial system.

The third section focuses on short-term events - the realm of traditional history. This is the shortest time span, covering dynamic changes and political developments. It covers

political decisions, wars, and the actions of individuals, moving quickly and often unpredictably. This part of the book reads like a classic political and military history of the Mediterranean during Philip II's era.

Braudel's key idea is that these three layers interact in a hierarchy. The fast-moving events of politics and individuals are shaped by the slower forces of social structures, which in turn are deeply rooted in the even slower-moving physical and environmental background. By reversing the usual historical focus and giving priority to the long-term and structural forces, Braudel offered a powerful new framework for understanding history and its relation to society.

Criticism of *The Mediterranean*

One major critique of Braudel's work is its relative neglect of ordinary people. According to Eugene and Elizabeth Genovese, Braudel's focus on geography as the central force in history sidelines the people who inhabit the Mediterranean. His work has marginalised political history or deemphasised political events. Traditional historians have criticised this approach, arguing that leaving out politics makes his version of “total history” incomplete. Braudel also diminishes the role of individual leaders in shaping history. Another criticism is the weak connections between the three layers of time: geohistory (long-term), social history (medium-term), and event history (short-term). He has failed to establish a link between these three times. Braudel was also criticised for his neglect of mentalities like shared beliefs, attitudes, and values, which were the central focus of Annales historians.

5.1.2 Contributions of the Annales School

Stuart Clark, British historian, highlights how profoundly the Annales historians have reshaped historical thinking. They moved history beyond its narrow political focus,

encouraging scholars to explore a wider range of human experiences without hesitation or doubt. By embracing insights from other disciplines, they made history more vibrant and meaningful. Key ideas such as Febvre and Bloch's emphasis on understanding past mentalities, and Braudel's concept of long-term structural patterns, have become essential tools in the historian's approach. One of their most lasting contributions is how they forced historians to confront deep questions from social theory, like the tension between individual freedom and structural constraints, or between unique events and broader patterns. To fully grasp Braudel's approach, it helps to view his structural history within the larger framework of French structuralist thought.

The development of Annales historiography over the past seventy years has been complex and dynamic rather than straightforward or consistent. The changes in the journal's subtitles from *histoire économique et sociale* to *économies, sociétés, civilisations*, and most recently *Histoire et sciences sociales*, reflect ongoing debates within the school and a readiness to expand and revise its intellectual framework. This adaptability illustrates how the Annales tradition has persistently reshaped its methods and perspectives on history.

A key challenge for Annales historians has been how to relate to earlier ideas like Positivism and Marxism. Positivism tried to find historical truth through scientific facts, while Marxism explained history mainly through class conflict. In contrast, the Annales school wanted to create a broader "total history." They avoided simplifying history to one main cause and focused on how many different factors interacted in each situation, while still believing there is a real history behind it all.

The Annales school changed the way historians think about time. Instead of

following strict timelines, it suggested that history moves through different overlapping rhythms. Ideas, social habits and structures often go beyond the usual historical periods. Scholars like Fernand Braudel showed that time isn't fixed or the same for everyone but is shaped by culture and can be flexible. This opened up new ways to study history.

Despite its new ideas, Annales historiography has stayed focused on understanding real human experiences. It highlights the feelings, thoughts, and daily challenges people face, rather than reducing history to impersonal forces or simple causes. This wider view helps Annales historians accept the complexities and contradictions in history, avoiding simple or fixed explanations and offering a deeper, more open-ended understanding of the past.

5.1.3 Criticism

The early Annales historians, Marc Bloch and Lucien Febvre, were praised for changing the way history was studied by focusing on problems and long-term patterns rather than just telling stories about events. However, they were also criticised for ignoring important political events, leaders, and institutions. This shift made their version of history seem incomplete to some scholars. Michael Harsgor called this lack of focus on political history a serious flaw. Others criticised their heavy use of statistics and structural models, saying it led them to overlook important cultural, emotional, and spiritual aspects of human life. Stuart Clark also pointed out that their method tended to ignore individual choices and actions, making history seem overly controlled by impersonal forces.

Fernand Braudel, a major figure in the next generation of Annales historians, received even more criticism. He divided history into three levels, putting the longest trends at the top and short-term events at the

bottom. Critics like J.H. Hexter, an American historian, said Braudel did not give enough value to important events. Scholars such as Felix Gilbert and H.S. Hughes argued that his famous book *The Mediterranean* was not well organised and failed to connect large-scale structures with real political events, like those in the time of Philip II. Others thought Braudel relied too much on geography and environment, which made his work seem overly deterministic and ignored the role of human culture and decisions. He was also faulted for not clearly explaining how historical change actually happens. H.R. Trevor-Roper, an English historian, criticised Braudel's avoidance of political history, and Roland Mousnier found his writing style too complex and filled with unnecessary language.

More criticism came from both inside and outside the Annales group. Bernard Guénée and Jacques Le Goff, a member of the movement, were concerned that political history had been pushed aside. Historians like G.R. Elton and John Elliott felt Braudel's structural approach did not explain real human decisions. From the Marxist point of view, Soviet critic G.G. Diligenskij accused the Annales school of ignoring class conflict and replacing serious historical analysis with ideas rooted in biology. Overall, these critiques highlighted the growing belief that the Annales method, despite its innovations, had serious limits, especially in its treatment of human agency, politics, and historical storytelling.

Recap

- ◆ Annales School was founded by Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch in 1929 in France
- ◆ Influenced by French intellectual traditions and interdisciplinary methods
- ◆ Focused on social structures, mentalities, and geography over political events
- ◆ They rejected the traditional narrative history and political history as the main focus of study
- ◆ Used interdisciplinary methods
- ◆ The study emphasised *longue-durée* over short-term events
- ◆ Marc Bloch focused on studying feudal society, rural history and collective psychology
- ◆ Used comparative and regressive methods
- ◆ Major works include *The Royal Touch*, *Feudal Society*, and *The Historian's Craft*
- ◆ Lucien Febvre rejected the single-cause explanation
- ◆ He emphasised the role of geography in social evolution

- ◆ Major works: *The Problem of Unbelief*, *Martin Luther*, *The Regions of France*
- ◆ Fernand Braudel introduced the multi-layered timeframes in history, such as *Longue Durée*, cyclical history, and short-term history
- ◆ Major work: *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*
- ◆ As criticism, Annales schools downplayed individual and political history
- ◆ They over-emphasised geography and structural factors.

Objective Questions

1. When was the Annales School founded?
2. Who were the founders of the Annales School?
3. What was the central focus of the Annales historians?
4. What does *longue durée* mean?
5. Who introduced the concept of multi-layered historical time?
6. What journal did Febvre and Bloch establish?
7. Which historian's work challenged geographical determinism?
8. Who emphasised the use of mentalities in historical research?
9. Which book by Lucien Febvre studied the role of geography in social evolution?
10. Who said that history should be viewed as "a science in infancy"?
11. Name the author of the book *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*.

Answers

1. 1929
2. Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch
3. Long-term structures and social history
4. Long-term historical structures
5. Fernand Braudel
6. Annales of Economic and Social History
7. Lucien Febvre
8. Lucien Febvre
9. *The Earth and Social Evolution*
10. Marc Bloch
11. Fernand Braudel

Assignments

1. Discuss the origins of the Annales School and explain how Marc Bloch and Lucien Febvre contributed to its foundational methods.
2. Critically examine Fernand Braudel's concept of *la longue durée* as explained in *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*.
3. Evaluate the interdisciplinary nature of the Annales School. How did historians like Bloch and Febvre integrate disciplines like sociology, geography, and psychology into historical writing?

Reference

1. Braudel, Fernand, and Immanuel Wallerstein. "History and the Social Sciences: The Longue Durée." *Review (Fernand Braudel Center)*, vol. 32, no. 2, 2009.
2. Clark, Stuart, editor. *The Annales School: Critical Assessment. Vol. I, Histories and Overviews*. Routledge, 1999.
3. Clark, Stuart, editor. *The Annales School: Critical Assessment. Vol. III, Fernand Braudel*. Routledge, 1999.
4. Forster, Robert. "Achievements of the Annales School." *The Journal of Economic History*, vol. 38, no. 1, 1978.
5. Harsgor, Michael. "Total History: The Annales School." *Journal of Contemporary History*, vol. 13, no. 1, 1978.
6. Hunt, Lynn. "French History in the Last Twenty Years: The Rise and Fall of the Annales Paradigm." *Journal of Contemporary History*, vol. 21, no. 2, 1986.
7. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Bloch, Marc. *Feudal Society*. Routledge, 1967.
2. Bloch, Marc. *Land and Work in Medieval Europe*. Routledge, 1967.
3. Bloch, Marc. *The Historian's Craft*. Manchester University Press, 1976.
4. Braudel, Fernand. *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*. Collins, 1972–1973.
5. Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. University of Chicago Press, 1980.
6. Burke, Peter, editor. *Economy and Society in Early Medieval Europe: Essays for Annales*. London, 1972.



7. Febvre, Lucien. *A Geographical Introduction to History*. Routledge, 1925.
8. Hutton, Patrick H. "The History of Mentalities: The New Map of Cultural History." *History and Theory*, vol. 20, 1981.
9. Iggers, Georg G. *New Directions in European Historiography*. Wesleyan University Press, 1975.
10. Marwick, Arthur. *The Nature of History*. Palgrave Macmillan, 1970.
11. Marwick, Arthur. *The New Nature of History: Knowledge, Evidence, Language*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2001.



UNIT

Structuralism

Learning Outcomes

After the successful completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the concept of structuralism and its significance
- ◆ identify the main principles of structuralism
- ◆ explain the contribution of key structuralist scholars
- ◆ evaluate the impact of structuralism in historiography

Prerequisites

Structuralism is an approach that examines historical change by analysing structures like geography, economy, and mentalities (collective ideas and beliefs of peoples). This perspective argues that social and environmental structures shape human behaviour. This approach originated in linguistics, particularly through the work of Ferdinand de Saussure and was later influenced by various disciplines, including anthropology, psychology, and history. Historians such as Lucien Febvre, Marc Bloch, and Braudel applied the structuralist idea to historical studies. This approach challenges traditional narratives and highlights the role of mentalities, social psychology, and environmental influences. This unit explores the fundamental concepts of structuralism, key thinkers, and the application of structuralism. It also considers the criticism and its limitations.

Keywords

Structuralism, Binary Opposition, Signifier and Signified, Structure and System, Longue Durée, Ferdinand de Saussure, Levi Strauss



Discussion

5.2.1 Structuralism: Concepts and Features

Structuralism is an approach that emphasises the analysis and interpretation of historical events and changes through analysing geographical, economic and mental structures. This perspective of history views geographical factors, economic frameworks, and the passage of time as fundamental determinants of human life and rejects the notion of individual autonomy and separate historical events as artificial constructs. This approach also considers political narratives to be superficial.

Structuralism asserts that human behaviour should be interpreted within the framework of the societal system or structures. Here, individuals are not merely agents that make autonomous decisions; they are forces that are shaped by the social environment. The central principle of structuralism is that everything in human experience can be broken down into basic structures or elements. These structures are the building blocks of human experience. Analysis is the key to understanding these experiences. The structuralist believes that these underlined elements are universal and can be analysed with rigorous scientific methods.

Moreover, they argue that relationships between different elements are important as these will help to uncover these structures of human experience. Another important principle is that these structures are often hidden or unconscious. Structuralism believes that most of the structures that shape human behaviour are not immediately visible or accessible to us; rather, they must be inferred from the patterns of behaviour.

Concepts of Structuralism

1. Binary opposition is a pair of concepts that are opposite to each other. For example, black and white, hot and cold.
2. Signifier and signified - A signifier is a physical or sensory element used to represent certain things. Meanwhile, the signified is the concept or meaning that a signifier represents.
3. Structure and system - Structure refers to the underlying organisation or framework that shapes human experience. These structures are often hidden. System is the way individual elements of human experience are related to one another. They are analysed to uncover the structure of human experience.

Features

The concept of structuralism was influenced by the idea of Lévi-Strauss, who suggests that the world is shaped by abstract concepts.

1. Structuralism seeks to understand the world through a conceptual framework. It suggests that the world follows a logical structure.
2. It prioritises the influence of society in shaping the individual and minimises the role of agencies of the individual.
3. Structuralism focuses on structures rather than specific events.
4. It opposes historical and empirical approaches.

5. It distinguishes between language and speech. Language consists of speech, signs and semiotics, where meaning arises from the relationship of the signs. Signs, therefore, serve as a component of language, characterised by two aspects: the signifier and the signified.
6. Scholars like Roland Barthes and Claude Lévi-Strauss understood linguistic structuralism in broader semiotic analysis.
7. Structuralism aims to uncover deep, universal structures.

Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch sought to challenge the traditional approach to political history, which centred on individual events and attention to detail, as seen in the Rankean tradition. Inspired by Henri Berr, they envisioned integrating history with other social sciences. They, therefore, focused on social psychology, which examines how people thought and felt in different historical periods, and human geography, which looked at how societies adapted to their physical surroundings and collective mentalities that shared ideas and beliefs that influenced entire communities. Febvre and Bloch saw history not as the story of great individuals but as the product of broader social and collective forces. This way of thinking can be understood as a structuralist approach, which emphasises the role of structures and systems in shaping historical change.

The roots of structuralism can be traced back to the structuralist tradition in French philosophical thought. To be more specific, the origin lies in the field of linguistics, particularly in the theories of Ferdinand de Saussure. He challenged the traditional notion of historical writing, that is, language functions as a simple nomenclature reflecting reality. Instead, he argued that language does not merely follow or represent reality but signifies it.

5.2.1.1 Braudel's Structuralism

Fernand Braudel saw the Annales School of History as a new way of understanding the past, which moved away from focusing on great individuals and dramatic events. Instead, he believed that history was shaped by deeper structural and environmental forces. These events were determined by geography, economy, and social structures. This realm, which is untouched by traditional narratives, is termed a "structure" by Braudel.

Fernand Braudel's structuralism brought a new perspective to historical study by turning focus away from individual actions and notable events, which he saw as brief and shallow, and instead highlighting the slow, long-term forces that shape societies. He challenged the traditional belief that history is made by exceptional individuals or single key events. Instead, he argued that events are shaped by deeper economic, social, and environmental patterns. Braudel viewed history as operating on three levels: the fast-moving surface of events, the mid-range cycles of societal change, and the slow-moving foundation of geography and climate - what he called the *longue durée*. For him, this last layer was the most important, as it set the limits within which people live and history unfolds.

In Braudel's structuralist view, material factors like climate, land, agriculture, and population trends were the true drivers of historical development. He saw these conditions as powerful forces that determined the paths societies could take, often overshadowing the actions of individuals. Even major political or military events were seen as secondary to deep-rooted structural changes. He famously described such events as "dust" or fireflies, brief and lacking lasting impact. Braudel's emphasis on the *longue durée* was his way of identifying the real agents of change, slow, hidden processes that shape human destiny.

over centuries rather than moments. For the structuralist, this *longue durée* was the true stage of history, where the real actors were not individuals but geographical and environmental forces.

5.2.1.2 Ferdinand de Saussure and Linguistic Structuralism

Ferdinand de Saussure, a Swiss linguist, is considered the founder of modern structural linguistics. He provided the base for the foundation of structuralism. His influence grew after his death when his former student published a book based on his notes and lectures. The work titled *Course in General Linguistics* was released in 1966.

His key contribution was the interconnection within the language, where meaning is derived from the relationship between linguistic elements. He critiqued that words do not directly reflect reality. Instead, their meaning emerges through their connection with other words. Language functions as a tool to express thoughts, emotions, and opinions. Instead of focusing on individual words or phrases, we must view language as a complete system. Syntax and semantics together set rules for individuals if they wish to express themselves.

He emphasises the arbitrariness of the verbal signs (signifier), which is conventional and does not have a connection to the concept (signified). He then asserts that structures are independent of history, which he calls 'diachrony'. He advocated for a focus on a

synchronic approach, which examines the linguistic system at a particular moment in time.

He emphasised that language has to be studied synchronically, comparing it to a chess game, where the current state of the board can be analysed without considering the past moves. In this process, the structures and functions of the language were the central focus. He also acknowledged the importance of diachronic study. In this, he tries to examine the historical language changes and evolutionary forces. Saussure's emphasis was to establish linguistics as a systematic discipline that integrates both synchronic and diachronic perspectives to understand language.

5.2.2 Criticism of Structuralism

Structuralism is often critiqued as being reductionist. It reduces complex human experience into simple structures and patterns. It assumes that everyone experiences the world in the same way. However, individual experiences are different; personality and culture play a significant role in human experience.

Structuralism overemphasises the importance of language in shaping human experience. It is not, however, the only factor that shapes experience. Structuralism also argues that there is a lack of practical application in some fields, such as psychology and anthropology. It has not always provided solutions to practical problems.

Recap

- ◆ Structuralism analyses history through geography, economy and mental frameworks
- ◆ It says that human actions are shaped by societal structures
- ◆ Structuralists believe that these structures are universal and can be scientifically analysed
- ◆ The concept of structuralism includes binary opposition, signifier and signified, and difference between structure and system
- ◆ This school was influenced by thinkers like Claude Lévi-Strauss and Ferdinand de Saussure
- ◆ Annales School applied structuralist ideas to historical studies
- ◆ Emphasised long-term connections with individual events
- ◆ Critiqued for a reductionist approach, overemphasis on language and lack of practical application

Objective Questions

1. What does structuralism prioritise in historical analysis?
2. Who is considered the founder of modern structural linguistics?
3. Who wrote the *Course in General Linguistics*?
4. What was the major emphasis of structuralism?
5. What is binary opposition in structuralism?
6. Which concept is central to Ferdinand de Saussure's theory of language?
7. Name the scholar who is associated with integrating linguistic structuralism into semiotics.
8. Which historian referred to political and military events as "dust" due to their short-term impact?

Answers

1. Structure
2. Ferdinand de Saussure
3. Ferdinand de Saussure
4. Social and economic structures
5. A pair of concepts that are opposites
6. Signifier and Signified
7. Claude Lévi-Strauss
8. Fernand Braudel

Assignments

1. Discuss the main principles of structuralism and how they influence historical analysis.
2. Evaluate the impact of the Annales School on historical writing and how it applies to the structuralist method.
3. Discuss the contributions of Fernand Braudel to the structuralist approach in historiography.
4. Explain Ferdinand de Saussure's contribution to linguistic structuralism. How did his concepts of the signifier and signified and his focus on the synchronic approach challenge traditional views of language and influence the development of structuralism?

Reference

1. Pace, David. "Structuralism in History and the Social Sciences." *American Quarterly*, vol. 30, no. 3, 1978.
2. Satish, K. Bajaj. *Recent Trends in Historiography*. Anmol Publication, 1998.
3. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Bouissac, Paul. *Perspectives on Saussure*. University of Toronto Press, 2003.
2. Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. University of Chicago Press, 1982.
3. Cerny, Vladimir. "Memoirs (Paměti in Czech Original)." Sixty-Eight Publishers Corp., 1982.
4. Culler, Jonathan. *Ferdinand de Saussure*. Rev. ed., Cornell University Press, 1986.
5. Hutton, Patrick H. "The History of Mentalities: The New Map of Cultural History." *History and Theory*, vol. 20, 1981, Wiley.
6. Saussure, Ferdinand de. *Course in General Linguistics*. McGraw-Hill, 1966.



UNIT

History of Mentalities

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the history of mentalities and their significance in historiography
- ◆ identify the major scholars and their contributions associated with the school
- ◆ analyse the impact of the Annales School on the development of cultural history
- ◆ discuss how historians use the methodology to understand cultural and societal shifts

Prerequisites

The history of mentalities is a historiographical approach developed by French historians to explore the psychological and cultural aspects of historical change. The school has emerged from the Annales School. The Annales School revolutionised historical analysis by advocating total history, which integrates multiple social sciences to create a comprehensive understanding of the past. A key development of this framework was the emergence of the history of mentalities, which explores the attitudes, perceptions and collective thoughts of the common people. It examines themes like childhood, sexuality, family and death, which emphasise the structures that shaped collective thought. Unlike traditional historiography, the history of mentalities aims to understand how ideas and beliefs spread. This unit will analyse how the history of mentalities influenced modern historiography. It will analyse the works of historians like Philippe Ariès to provide a comprehensive understanding of the past.

Keywords

History of Mentalities, Philippe Ariès, Total History, Collective Psychology, Childhood

Discussion

The history of mentalities (*Histoire des mentalités*) is a historiographical approach that became influential through the Annales School. The history of mentalities focuses on the attitudes and perceptions of ordinary people toward their own lives. Popularised in the 1960s and 1970s, it is particularly associated with French historical scholarship but later influenced historians like Peter Burke, Keith Thomas, Natalie Zemon Davis, Robert Darnton, Lawrence Stone, Ulrich Raulff and Carlo Ginzburg.

This approach can be seen as a democratised version of intellectual history. While historians of ideas traditionally studied the thoughts and influence of elite philosophers and writers, historians of mentalities turned their attention to popular customs and implicit understandings embedded in traditions. According to Patrick H. Hutton, this perspective opened new avenues of historical inquiry, such as attitudes toward childhood, ageing, death, manners, social norms, religious devotion, and everyday behaviour. By exploring these themes, historians of mentalities shifted focus from elite intellectual discourse to the beliefs and experiences of the general population.

Although the study of mentalities is often seen as a recent offshoot of the Annales School, its roots can be traced back to the work of its founders, Lucien Febvre and Marc Bloch. While Annales historians typically emphasise the material conditions influencing human life, historians of mentalities focus on psychological magnitudes, exploring mindsets, intimate relationships, and attitudes toward major life events. This

approach focuses on the underlying structures of thought, belief systems, and collective psychology that shape historical societies. This approach also examines the everyday attitudes of ordinary people, focusing on evolving perspectives on childhood, sexuality, family and death within European civilisation.

Until the 20th century, Annales scholars prioritised economic and social history over cultural history. Marc Bloch's work on mentalities examined belief systems through the sacred aura surrounding medieval monarchy. He studied the healing powers attributed to kings. He, therefore, highlighted the power of collective illusions.

Lucien Febvre built on these ideas, identifying two key tasks for historians. First, he called for an inventory of historical “mental equipment,” which analyses how people were capable of thinking within their era’s intellectual constraints. Second, he urged historians to study human sentiment, emphasising that emotions shape intellectual life and evolve over time. He proposed a trajectory from an emotionally driven primitive society to a rational society. Later, *Annales* historians expanded on these ideas by using ethnology, linguistics, and demography to study attitudes toward family, sexuality, and death.

Mentalities, therefore, serve as a modern term for “culture.” The History of Mentalities seeks to address the shortcomings of the idealist tradition of cultural history by focusing on aspects of culture that were previously overlooked. One of the key shifts in this is moving away from studying the worldview,



which is central to the idealist tradition, and examining the structures, which include aesthetic representations, language, gestures and social customs. By analysing these elements, historians of mentalities aim to map the collective mental framework that defines culture. The focus of historians was not merely on the history of ideas but on the history of the human thought process.

Rather than examining how ideas circulated among elites before filtering into popular culture, historians of mentalities investigated the environments in which people formed their attitudes and the persistence of long-standing traditions. They explored how mental frameworks, linguistic patterns, and collective imagery shaped cultural perceptions.

5.3.1 Definition

A working definition of mentalities is essential to see how it fits into the construction of total history and the legacy of the Annales. According to Jacques Le Goff, an Annales historian, the attraction of *histoire des mentalités* lies in its ambiguity. This vagueness allows historians to approach historical analysis in ways that were previously unexplored. Le Goff describes the history of mentalities as focusing on everyday behavioural aspects, which in turn will reveal the nature of the thoughts of the people. In this way, the history of mentalities is related to intellectual history, the same way the history of material culture is related to economic history. This makes the concept important for historians to explore aspects of the past that traditional approaches have ignored or overlooked. However, Le Goff's clarification does not offer a clear framework for analysing mentalities within the scope of total history.

Roger Chartier gives a more concrete definition, suggesting that mentalities cover daily life and habits, revealing the

distant thoughts that influence the actions of historical subjects. Peter Burke adds that mentalities occupy the conceptual space between intellectual and social history, bridging the gap between the history of ideas and social history.

With these definitions, mentalities can be defined as cultural or social elements that shape the thoughts and behaviours of people, allowing historians to analyse specific historical moments as representative of broader social patterns.

5.3.2 Philippe Ariès

The emergence of mentalities as a historiographical trend covered the broader cultural shifts in the post-war period. During this period, historians became more interested in understanding the quality of life rather than just focusing on the material conditions within the state. This perspective allowed them to frame a “postmodern” critique of modernity, which highlighted the perseverance of traditional ways of life. The work of Philippe Ariès, one of the most influential figures in this field, exemplifies this critique.

Scholars such as Philippe Ariès expanded on Febvre's ideas, particularly in studying Western attitudes toward childhood, family, and death. He developed a theory of civilisation emphasising social and psychological structures. He argued that Western perceptions of human development evolved between the late Middle Ages and the 18th century. In medieval society, adulthood was considered the norm and childhood was not viewed as a distinct stage requiring special preparation. He argued that since life was short and skills were rudimentary, children were treated as miniature adults.

In *Centuries of Childhood* (1962), Philippe Ariès traced the historical emergence of a developmental view of the human life cycle, challenging modern assumptions about childhood. The idea of family, according to

Ariès, developed alongside the new concept of childhood. As children came to be seen as requiring guidance, the role of parents shifted from strict authority to emotional nurturers. The family evolved from an economic unit into an emotional refuge, fostering social conformity and discipline. Over time, the notion of life as a linear progression toward maturity gained prominence. According to him, the 18th century has “discovered” youth, the 19th century discovered adolescence, and the 20th century increasingly recognised old age as a distinct phase.

Ariès argued that these changing perceptions of individual development showed

broader cultural shifts. The central aspect of his analysis was the transition from an archaic cyclical perception of time to a modern linear view of historical development. He saw the family as both a nurturing force for personal development and a force that resisted modernisation by preserving traditional values. Ariès’s work, therefore, highlighted the tension between tradition and progress. His insights hence provide a critical lens for evaluating the present, revealing how deeply modern thinking has shaped culture.

Recap

- ◆ History of mentalities is a historical approach developed through the Annales school
- ◆ It focused on the attitudes and perceptions of ordinary people
- ◆ The school was influenced by historians like Lucien Febvre, Marc Bloch, Philippe Ariès, Jacques Le Goff, Peter Burke and Roger Chartier
- ◆ History of mentalities focuses on popular culture, customs, traditions and beliefs
- ◆ Marc Bloch studied medieval beliefs in monarchy and royal healing
- ◆ Lucien Febvre called for an inventory of historical mental frameworks and emphasised the role of emotions in shaping human thought
- ◆ The history of mentalities used interdisciplinary approaches, including ethnology, linguistics and demography
- ◆ Philippe Ariès studied historical perceptions of childhood
- ◆ Philippe Ariès revealed childhood emerged as a distinct concept in modern history
- ◆ Ariès highlighted the evolution of family structure and how families transitioned from economic units to emotional refuges

- ◆ Ariès also argued that society moved from a cyclical to a linear perception of time
- ◆ Provides a post-modern critique of modernity by highlighting the importance of traditional values

Objective Questions

1. Which historiographical school is associated with the history of mentalities?
2. What methodological approaches do historians of mentalities use?
3. Which historian described mentalities as occupying a space between intellectual and social history?
4. Which aspect of society does the history of mentalities primarily explore?
5. Who described the history of mentalities as “ambiguous, allowing for diverse historical interpretations”?
6. Who argued that mentalities act as a bridge between intellectual history and social history?
7. Which historian studied the belief in the healing power of medieval kings?
8. Who wrote *Centuries of Childhood*?
9. Name the historian who described mentalities as “the distant thoughts that influence actions”.
10. Who argued that medieval childhood was nearly nonexistent?

Answers

1. Annales School
2. Ethnology, linguistics, and demography

3. Peter Burke
4. Collective beliefs, customs, and attitudes
5. Jacques Le Goff
6. Peter Burke
7. Marc Bloch
8. Philippe Ariès
9. Roger Chartier
10. Philippe Ariès

Assignments

1. Compare the perspectives of Jacques Le Goff and Roger Chartier on defining mentalities.
2. Write the impact of the history of mentalities on contemporary historical research.
3. Discuss the history of mentalities contribute to the concept of the total history of the Annales school?

Reference

1. Hutton, Patrick H. "The History of Mentalities: The New Map of Cultural History." *History and Theory*, vol. 20, no. 3, 1981.
2. Hutton, Patrick H. "History of Mentalities." *Encyclopaedia of Historians and Historical Writing*, edited by Kelly Boyd, vol. 2, Routledge, 1999.
3. Rose, Jason U. "Mentalités and the Search for Total History in the Works of Annalistes, Foucault, and Microhistory." *The Hilltop Review*, vol. 12, no. 2, 2021.

Suggested Reading

1. Ariès, Philippe. *Centuries of Childhood: A Social History of Family Life*. Vintage, 1965.
2. Andrea, Alfred J. "Mentalities in History." *The Historian*, vol. 53, no. 3, 1991.
3. Le Goff, Jacques. *Medieval Civilization 400–1500*. Blackwell, 1992.

SGOU



UNIT

History from Below

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of the unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ discuss the key principles of history from below
- ◆ identify major historians and their contributions to this approach
- ◆ analyse the methodological challenges of this approach

Prerequisites

History from below emerged as a response to the conventional histories that focus mainly on the aspects of political, social, and religious elites. The traditional history that highlights the role of rulers and their political achievements was critiqued in this approach. The history from below sought to document the lives of ordinary people and aimed to shed light on themes that had been ignored by previous historians. The main focus of the study includes the history of peasants, the working class, women, minorities, and other unnamed individuals. The approach brought a broader outlook on historical narrative by utilising new sources and allowing fresh interpretations of history.

Keywords

History from Below, E.P. Thompson, Class Consciousness, Moral Economy, Past and Present

Discussion

History from below emerges as a reaction to traditional history, which focuses mainly on political, social, and religious aspects. It aimed to shift its focus from elites to the common people by including the histories of peasants, workers, women, and minority groups. The historical perspective known as “history from below,” as E.J. Hobsbawm described it, gained prominence during the 1950s and 1960s. While other schools, such as the Annales movement, also challenged conventional historical writing, history from below distinguished itself by centring on the lived experiences of ordinary people. It portrayed them as active participants in history rather than passive subjects shaped by external forces.

Strongly influenced by Marxist thought, this movement emerged through the contributions of historians such as Christopher Hill, Rodney Hilton, E.J. Hobsbawm, George Rude, John Saville, and E.P. Thompson. Their work was critical in shaping *Past and Present*, which initially functioned as a Marxist journal. From 1966 onward, the History Workshop at Ruskin College, Oxford, became another important centre for this historiographical tradition.

Eric Hobsbawm argued that the historical background for this thought emerged with the beginning of the mass movement in the eighteenth century. For the Marxists, the interest in grassroots history developed with the labour movement. According to Eric Hobsbawm, *History from Below* became viable only when ordinary people started playing a continuous role in shaping events and decisions, not just during extraordinary moments of mass mobilisation like revolutions, but in everyday life. He attributes the emergence of this historical perspective to the French Revolution, which drew the lower classes into the public sphere and

generated extensive administrative records documenting their actions.

The main focus of history from below was to highlight the implications of major revolutions in driving historical change. Christopher Hill’s work, *English Civil War*, demonstrates this approach. He argued that the Civil War was a bourgeois revolution essential to the modernisation of the English state and the rise of capitalism. This approach also extended to popular protest and cultural studies beyond major revolutions. Rude and Hobsbawm, for instance, examined the Captain Swing riots of 1830, while discussions on figures like Robin Hood appeared in *Past and Present*.

The history from below raised fundamental questions about class, consciousness, and human institutions. This was most effectively demonstrated in E.P. Thompson’s *The Making of the English Working Class* (1963), which sought to reclaim Britain’s early industrial workers and their allies from the narrow focus of conventional labour history and the impersonal statistical method of contemporary social and economic history.

The “History from Below” is most effective when it is explained with a broader understanding of social structures and power dynamics. This approach acknowledges the influence of political ideologies like socialism in shaping the lives and experiences of the common people. It also emphasises the importance of understanding the “common people” in relation to the system above them, that is, capitalism.

While Marxist historians dominated *History from Below*, the Annales School offered an alternative perspective of history from below through the study of *mentalities*. Marc Bloch, Lucien Febvre and

Emmanuel Le Roy Ladurie examined the lives and thoughts of subordinate classes, but rather than focusing on class struggle, they explored collective beliefs, ideas and psychological frameworks. Along with this approach, cultural history also provides the foundation for the study of people from below. Historians such as Carlo Ginzburg, Robert Darnton and Natalie Zemon Davis contributed significantly to cultural history while not directly affiliated with the Annales School. These historians focused on individuals, small communities, everyday life and their rituals. Their work represents a branch of *History from Below* that is less political and more concerned with cultural expressions, highlighting how these cultural expressions shape the traditions, belief systems, and practices.

5.4.1 Methodological Challenges of History from Below and its Criticism

The ‘history from below’ approach aimed to show the identities and experiences of ordinary people. However, it offered significant methodological challenges. One of the major challenges was that the individuals whom these historians wanted to study were rarely mentioned in the conventional historical sources. As a result, historians of this school had to find new sources or reinterpret the existing accounts to identify the lives of the common people. Consequently, historians have to depend on sources such as criminal, police, judicial and demographic records, though these were often biased and problematic.

A second methodological challenge stemmed from the role of oral history, which history from below helped to develop. Oral testimony posed issues related to memory because the interviewees might recall events selectively, reinterpret them to fit personal narratives, or even conceal aspects of the

truth. Third, history from below raised broader theoretical questions about popular consciousness. These tensions culminated in public debates, notably in E.P. Thompson’s *The Poverty of Theory* (1978).

As history from below expanded throughout the 1960s and 1970s, it evolved beyond its Marxist roots, influenced by developments in the *History Workshop*, women’s history, and oral history. However, by the 1980s, it faced criticism for reaching a theoretical deadlock. Scholars like Roger Floud argued that it lacked engagement with theory and quantitative analysis, while Zeitlin contended that its focus on rank-and-file workers overlooked the impact of industrial relations and institutional structures on labour activity.

5.4.2 E.P. Thompson

Edward Palmer Thompson was a prominent Marxist historian. He laid the theoretical foundation of this approach. He joined the British Communist Party in 1942 and served in World War II. After the war, he became involved in education and peace activism in northern England. Initially, he joined the Communist Party Historians Group, and in 1956, he broke from the party and began to advocate humanist socialism. In 1957, he co-founded *The New Reasoner*, critiquing Stalinism and emphasising individual autonomy.

Thompson believed that historical knowledge is always provisional and incomplete, and he was committed to writing history from the perspective of the “bottom up,” aiming to rescue the labouring poor from the “enormous condescension of posterity.” His writings on class consciousness, class struggle, and class formation, as well as his exploration of the law as an ideological tool for the ruling class, provided valuable insights into the histories of the poor. His approach has led to observations of the lives of ordinary people.



Thompson was recognised internationally for his seminal work, *The Making of the English Working Class* (1963), in which he argued that working-class consciousness developed as a historical phenomenon. Thompson defined the class as emerging from human relationships. According to him, class emerges when individuals share their experiences and recognise and articulate their interests in opposition to those of others. He focused on the impact of agrarian and industrial capitalism on the social, moral, and cultural lives of the poor. While economic historians often concentrated on the quantitative aspects of the Industrial Revolution, Thompson examined the qualitative losses, emphasising that it was not just poverty or disease but the nature of work that cast the darkest shadow over this period.

In 1966, he wrote the essay *History from Below*, which helped him popularise the concept among scholars. He noticed a shift from the older concern of labour historians with the institution of labour, leaders, and ideology.

Thompson further explored this perspective in 1971 through the essay *The Moral Economy of the English Crowd in the Eighteenth Century*. He analysed the behaviour of crowds during food riots. He argued that these riots were not merely chaotic uprisings but “a highly complex form of direct popular action” driven by rational and clearly defined objectives and not a mere reaction of hunger. These ideas influenced scholars across disciplines and sparked debates.

In his *Whigs and Hunters* (1975), Thompson examined the role of law in class conflict. He challenged the simplistic view that saw it merely as an instrument of oppression. He also engaged in ideological battles against Marxism and the influence of Louis Althusser. Though he critiqued Marxist orthodoxy, he remained committed to the socialist vision, which resulted in the contribution of the *May Day Manifesto* (1967-1968).

Recap

- ◆ History from below is a reaction against traditional history
- ◆ Gained prominence in the 1950s–1960s, emphasising the role of ordinary people
- ◆ Strongly influenced by Marxist thought and scholars
- ◆ A major contribution is given by E.P. Thompson, who wrote *The Making of the English Working Class* (1963).
- ◆ It defined the class as emerging through shared experiences
- ◆ Methodological challenges include a lack of conventional historical sources on ordinary people
- ◆ Reliance on judicial, police, and criminal records, which may be biased

- ◆ Accused of lacking engagement with theory and quantitative analysis
- ◆ Critics argued it overlooked the role of industrial relations

Objective Questions

1. Who popularised the term “History from Below” in 1966?
2. Who wrote *The Making of the English Working Class* (1963)?
3. What was the primary focus of history from below?
4. In which decade did ‘history from below’ gain prominence?
5. Which historical journal played a key role in promoting history from below?
6. Name the author of the work *The Moral Economy of the English Crowd in the Eighteenth Century*?
7. Who examined peasant resistance through microhistory?
8. Which historian analysed the Captain Swing Riots?

Answers

1. E.P. Thompson
2. E.P. Thompson
3. Focusing on the experiences of common people
4. 1950s-1960s
5. *Past and Present*
6. E.P. Thompson
7. Carlo Ginzburg
8. Eric Hobsbawm

Assignments

1. Discuss the methodological challenges historians face when studying history from below.
2. Critically analyse the limitations and criticisms of history from below.
3. Examine how Thompson's concept of 'history from below' reshapes the understanding of class and labour in historical writing?

Reference

1. Perry, Matt. "History from Below." *Encyclopaedia of Historians and Historical Writing*, edited by Kelly Boyd, vol. 1, Routledge, 1999.
2. Sharpe, Jim. "History from Below." *New Perspectives on Historical Writing*, edited by Peter Burke, Polity Press, 1991. Reprinted 2001.
3. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Blackswan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Hobsbawm, Eric. "On History from Below." *On History*, Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1997.
2. Krantz, Frederick. *History from Below: Studies in Popular Protest and Popular Ideology*. Basil Blackwell, 1985.
3. Samuel, Raphael. "People's History." *People's History and Socialist Theory*, edited by Raphael Samuel, Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1981.
4. Thompson, E. P. *The Making of the English Working Class*. Vintage, 1963.
5. Thompson, E. P. "The Moral Economy of the English Crowd in the Eighteenth Century." *Past & Present*, vol. 50, no. 1, 1971. <https://doi.org/10.1093/past/50.1.76>.



UNIT

Postmodernism

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ gain a critical grasp of the theories associated with postmodernism
- ◆ discuss its key intellectual trends, including post-structuralism and deconstruction
- ◆ analyse the key contributions of post-modern thinkers
- ◆ analyse the impact of post-modernist thought on writing history

Prerequisites

The emergence of Postmodernism is considered a reaction against the predominance of modernism, which is a product of the industrial era. Modernism emphasised narratives, universal truths, and meaning in the structures. Postmodernism, in contrast, emerged as a reaction against this dominance, challenging the idea of a single, objective reality and advocating for multiple perspectives. The critiques thus established social, cultural, and epistemological expectations, questioning the foundations of truth, reason, and progress. This discussion, therefore, explores the foundation of postmodern thought, its impact on historical studies, and debates around its validity. The unit will examine key concepts like deconstruction, genealogy, and discourse analysis, which will give the necessary sense of direction to understand how postmodernism has reshaped our approach to history and knowledge.

Keywords

Postmodernism, Structuralism, Post-Structuralism, Deconstruction, Grand Narrative, Discourse, Michel Foucault, Jacques Derrida

Discussion

5.5.1 Postmodernism

Postmodernism refers to the theoretical framework that helps us interpret the intellectual and cultural shifts that are associated with post-modernity. Postmodernism consists of various intellectual trends, like the shift from structuralism to post-structuralism, which are influenced by thinkers like Saussure, Derrida and Nietzsche. Postmodernism often rejects reason, universal truths, and historical narratives, favouring fragmented and localised perspectives.

Sumit Sarkar viewed power as one theme in postmodernism. Thinkers like Lyotard argue that “grand narratives” should be questioned. Postmodernism also reflects modern realities, such as globalisation and the dominance of media and consumer culture. According to Jameson, a Marxist critic, postmodernism is considered a cultural expression of the late capitalism period.

This theory is also helpful in differentiating between deconstruction and poststructuralism. Deconstruction is a method closely associated with thinkers like Jacques Derrida and Paul de Man, who critically examine texts by revealing their internal errors. It demonstrates how efforts are needed to create text consistency by excluding certain elements. On the other hand, poststructuralism is linked to thinkers such as Roland Barthes, Michel Foucault, and Jacques Lacan, who argue that language precedes and shapes reality. According to this view, the world is not known as an objective

entity but is instead a linguistic construct shaped by discourse. This perspective does not deny the existence of reality but suggests that all meanings credited to it are the products of human interpretation.

Postmodernism, therefore, draws upon both deconstructionism and post-structuralism to assert that there is no interconnection between words and the world. Instead, it suggests that reality is constructed through narratives and language. It stresses the ineffectuality of accessing an objective truth beyond various linguistic frameworks that shape human understanding. Instead of seeking absolute truth, postmodern thought encourages examining the world as a text.

Postmodernism, according to thinkers like Lyotard, Richard Rorty and Jean Baudrillard, challenges the idea that history follows a single, predominant metanarrative that guarantees progress or meaning. According to Lyotard, postmodernism is “incredulity towards metanarrative”, refusing the notion that history is built on a principle that can lead to universal truth.

Postmodernism challenges “History as a grand narrative” and “history as an academic discipline”. It argues that history is not an objective study of the past but rather a created narrative shaped by historiography. This means that traditional historical accounts do not necessarily reflect the past as it was, but rather how historians choose to interpret and present it. Consequently, grand historical narratives and academic

history are considered literary genres rather than definitive representations of reality. Therefore, according to Keith Jenkins, postmodernism challenges history, leading to it being described as “the end of history”.

According to Arran Gare, postmodernism represents a broader debate on whether Western societies have undergone a radical cultural transformation. It signifies a loss of faith in modernity, progress, and Enlightenment rationality, highlighting the self-destructive tendencies of modern civilisation.

Postmodernism, through poststructuralist critiques, challenges Enlightenment humanism and its core assumptions. Martin Heidegger’s work, *Being and Time*, laid the ground for this criticism by rejecting the universal category of “Man”. French post-structuralists like Derrida and Foucault followed Nietzsche in arguing that the concept of man was a historical invention rather than a fixed reality.

A profound thinker of the post-modern period was Michel Foucault. His view of history challenges the traditional notion of continuity, progress, and universality. He argues that history does not follow a rational or linear development or have any purpose or goal, as suggested by Hegel and Marx. He emphasises effective history over traditional historical accounts by highlighting its lack of fixed constants. The “effective history” introduces discontinuities into human existence, disrupting emotions, instincts, and identities.

According to Foucault, the notion of a structured historical course is an illusion. People tend to perceive history as a climb from a lower stage to a more advanced stage. However, according to Foucault, this view is an artificial construction. Instead of order and unity, history is marked by randomness, conflict, and perpetual struggle.

Inspired by Nietzsche, Foucault asserts that the past does not exist in a pure or objective form. What historians uncover is not an unbiased reality but an interpretation shaped by their subjective perspectives. Therefore, objectivity in historical analysis is a myth. In his essay *Nietzsche, Genealogy, History* (1971), Foucault embraces Nietzsche’s concept of genealogy. This genealogy is considered a fundamental perspectival form of knowledge. This history rejects main systems, universal truth, and general synthesis. Instead, it uncovers suppressed and fragmented forms of knowledge. Foucault dismisses all notions of historical continuity, arguing that history does not unfold as a seamless progression of thought or consciousness.

Michel Foucault explored unconventional and revealing areas of history, such as madness, sexuality, and criminality, to trace how social attitudes and institutions evolved alongside shifting definitions of reason, morality, and power. In *Madness and Civilization* (1961), he examined how perceptions of madness transformed from being seen as sacred or insightful to being pathologised and confined within asylums, reflecting society’s changing notions of rationality and control. His *The Birth of the Clinic* (1963) offered a detailed account of the development of modern medical discourse, while *The Order of Things* (1966) analysed the changing frameworks of thought that shaped the human sciences. In *Discipline and Punish* (1973), Foucault investigated the emergence of the modern prison system, revealing how institutions used knowledge and surveillance to exert control. These themes of power and knowledge continued in *The Will to Knowledge* and *The History of Sexuality* (1976), where he showed how sexuality, like madness and criminality, became subject to regulation and categorisation. Across these works, Foucault charted how societal norms and institutional

power redefined the boundaries of what it meant to be human.

5.5.1.1 Impact of Postmodernism on Historiography

Postmodernism has profoundly influenced historiography, not simply by challenging traditional methods, but by creating innovative forms of historical writing. A key development is the focus on local narratives, a concept advanced by Lyotard, which replaces dominant, overarching accounts with personal and subjective stories from the margins - told by peasants, prisoners, students, and others. While these narratives do not claim universal validity, they collectively offer a more diverse and fragmented understanding of the past.

This perspective has widened the boundaries of historical inquiry, moving beyond large structural analyses to explore identity, gender, ethnicity, and even the irrational or magical aspects of human life. In doing so, it has breathed new life into previously overlooked subjects. Postmodernism has also reshaped the form of historical writing itself, treating history as a literary craft. Writers such as Simon Schama, Orlando Figes, Natalie Zemon Davis, and Robert Darnton blend rich detail and storytelling with personal perspectives, capturing the lived experience of the past, even if it sometimes means bending strict evidentiary conventions.

Far from erasing the individual, postmodernist historiography has helped restore attention to personal human experiences, focusing not on the “great men” of politics, but on ordinary individuals whose lives had long been hidden by generalised, statistical histories. By challenging the abstractions of earlier social science approaches, postmodernism affirms the complexity of human existence and

reintroduces individuality into the historical narrative.

5.5.1.2 Criticism of Postmodernist Historical Theory

The postmodernist idea about history was challenged by Richard J. Evans in his work *In Defence of History* (1997). He challenged the postmodernist claims about facts, sources, causation, and objectivity.

We know that traditional historians have focused on analysing facts and primary sources to have an objective understanding of the past. They argue that historical sources are always biased and cannot reflect the past to its fullest. This approach has, therefore, undermined the importance of historical facts. This, therefore, erases the distinction between primary and secondary sources, making objectivity impossible.

Secondly, postmodernists believe that historical sources are open to endless explanations. Traditional historians recognise the need for careful interpretation of the past. Therefore, the postmodernist must follow the rules to ensure accuracy, such as not altering documents or ignoring inconvenient facts.

Thirdly, some postmodernists even reject the concept of time in history. According to Frank Ankersmit, historical time is just a Western invention, making history unreliable. However, Richard Evans points out that this is contradictory because postmodernists use the term postmodern, which itself refers to a time period. Time, according to him, is a basic human experience.

Postmodernists argue that true historical objectivity is impossible because all knowledge is influenced by personal and cultural biases. According to Hayden White, choosing one interpretation over another is a matter of opinion rather than fact. Evans argues that objectivity is still necessary for

Postmodernists, whose ideas were influenced by Michel Foucault, believe that history is not about truth but power. They argue that historical writing aids the interests of the dominant group rather than providing an unbiased account of the past. The postmodernists see traditional history as a tool used by the elites and believe that it should be rewritten to focus on the marginalised group. However, Evans rejected this argument, arguing that history must be based on facts and common standards of evidence.

Postmodernism has had a major influence on historiography, which led to several developments. Firstly, postmodernism rejects narratives in favour of ‘local narratives’ that focus on individual stories of resistance. While these narratives are subjective and do not claim to be objective, postmodern theory suggests that history should be constructed from many such narratives. Secondly, postmodernism has broadened the range of historical inquiry, revitalising older topics and introducing new perspectives. Thirdly, postmodernism has emphasised good writing in historical practice. Fourthly, postmodernism has contributed to reinstating the individual into history. It prioritises the stories of ordinary individuals rather than just “great men.” Lastly, the main impact of postmodernism is the critique of positivism, opening possibilities for non-positivist empirical social science.

Keith Jenkins is one of the noted postmodern philosophers of history who has consistently argued against history's ability to uncover the truth or knowledge about the past. Initially, he distanced himself from historians who disregarded postmodern critique. Eventually, he advocated for postmodern history to replace traditional academic history. He distinguishes history as a general concept and histories as specific narratives about the past.

He emphasises four major points:

- ◆ History is not an inherent necessity, and society is not compelled to continue with it.
- ◆ The ideological foundations of historical narratives should be recognised.
- ◆ There are no connections between facts and values that generate meaning.
- ◆ This absence of meaning allows for ethical engagement, allowing individuals to shape their interpretations.



could become outdated. He also rejects the idea that there is intrinsic significance in the past, where meaning is assigned to it, which is a matter of present-day interpretation.

Other scholars have critiqued his views, often because they mistake history for the past and believe that understanding history is essential to understanding the present.

Despite the opposition, his view has forced a reconsideration of the role of history and its relevance. He argues that if historians accept history as a construct, they must consider moving beyond this construct. He challenged both epistemological and ethical aspects. This has urged alternative ways to engage with the past.

Recap

- ◆ Postmodernism critiques reason, universal truths and grand narratives
- ◆ Influenced by thinkers like Saussure, Derrida, Foucault, Nietzsche and Lyotard
- ◆ Deconstruction analyses text to reveal its inconsistencies
- ◆ Post-structuralism argues that language shapes reality
- ◆ Jean-François Lyotard coined the phrase incredulity towards metanarratives.
- ◆ Foucault challenged historical continuity, arguing history is shaped by power structures and discourses
- ◆ Postmodernists argue history is not objective but a constructed narrative
- ◆ Keith Jenkins argued that history is an aesthetic literary genre rather than a means to uncover objective truth.
- ◆ Postmodernism emphasised marginalised narratives and encouraged local histories instead of grand histories.
- ◆ Sumit Sarkar criticised postmodernism for oversimplifying historical scholarship

Objective Questions

1. Which thinker is associated with the concept of deconstruction?
2. What does poststructuralism argue about language?

3. Which philosopher influenced both postmodernism and poststructuralism?
4. Who wrote *In Defence of History*, challenging postmodernism?
5. Which historian is known for advocating genealogy as a historical method?
6. Which thinker criticised the postmodern rejection of time in history?
7. Who wrote *Being and Time*?
8. Which of Foucault's works analyses changing frameworks of thought that shaped the human sciences?

Answers

1. Jacques Derrida
2. Language creates and shapes reality
3. Friedrich Nietzsche
4. Richard J. Evans
5. Michel Foucault
6. Richard J. Evans
7. Martin Heidegger
8. *The Order of Things*

Assignments

1. Analyse Foucault's concept of effective history and its implications for historical studies.
2. How has postmodernism contributed to the study of marginalised histories?
3. Discuss the central arguments of Keith Jenkins regarding the nature of history.

4. Examine the impact of postmodernism on the methods of historical writing.
5. What are the main criticisms of postmodernist approaches to history?

Reference

1. Jenkins, Keith. "Postmodernism." *Encyclopaedia of Historians and Historical Writing*, edited by Kelly Boyd, vol. 2, Routledge, 1999.
2. Pihlainen, Kalle. "Escaping the Confines of History: Keith Jenkins." *Rethinking History*, vol. 17, no. 2, 2013.
3. Sarkar, Sumit. "Postmodernism and the Writing of History." *Studies in History*, vol. 15, no. 2, new series, 1999.
4. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography, 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Barry, Laurence. *Foucault and Postmodern Conceptions of Reason*. Springer Nature Switzerland AG, 2020.
2. Foucault, Michel. *Madness and Civilization*. Routledge Classics, 2016.
3. Foucault, Michel. *The Order of Things: An Archaeology of the Human Sciences*. Routledge Classics, 2002.
4. Jenkins, Keith. *Re-thinking History*. Routledge, 2003.
5. Jenkins, Keith, editor. *The Postmodern History Reader*. Routledge, 2000.



BLOCK

Trends in Indian Historical Writings



UNIT

Oriental Historiography and William Jones

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ understand the intellectual foundations of Orientalist historiography in colonial India
- ◆ identify the role played by William Jones and other early Indologists in reconstructing ancient Indian history
- ◆ analyse the contributions of European scholars in the field of Indology
- ◆ explain the significance of archaeological discoveries and linguistic studies in shaping Indian historiography

Prerequisites

The writing of Indian history underwent a major transformation during the colonial period, especially with the arrival of British administrators and scholars who took a keen interest in the ancient past of the subcontinent. During the late 18th and early 19th centuries, British officials associated with the East India Company began to explore the languages, literature, religious texts, inscriptions, and monuments of India. Their primary aim was to better understand Indian society and govern it more effectively. However, their efforts also laid the groundwork for modern historical studies in India. Among these scholars, William Jones stands out as a pioneering figure whose linguistic and historical research helped introduce Indian intellectual traditions to the Western world. His work, alongside other Indologists like Henry Colebrooke, Max Müller, and James Prinsep, helped create a narrative of India's ancient past by combining textual analysis with archaeological evidence. This unit provides an overview of how Orientalists recovered and interpreted Indian history.

It introduces the learners to major figures, their methodologies, major findings, and the impact of Indological studies. It also reflects on how these early efforts influenced modern Indian historiography and understanding of India's past.

Keywords

Indology, Orientalism, Archaeology, Asiatic Society, Indo-European languages, Aryan theory, Brahmi script, Historical reconstruction

Discussion

6.1.1 Indology and the Recovery of Indian History

One of the earliest intellectual efforts of British rule in India was the recovery of ancient Indian history along modern historiographical lines. As the British began to consolidate their power in India, they made a serious attempt to understand and reconstruct India's past. Unlike medieval India, which had been chronicled by Mughal historians, the ancient past of the subcontinent had not received much attention. British administrators attempted to establish this lack of historical consciousness among Indians. The ancient Indian period was often covered in exaggeration and mythology rather than documentation of facts.

British interest in Indian history began with the works of Robert Orme, whose *History of the Military Transactions of the British Nation in Indostan* (1764) and *Historical Fragments* focused on the military and political structure of 18th-century India. He also provided an outline of the Muslim dynasties in India, tracing back to the invasion of Muhammad ibn Qasim

in 712 CE. Francis Gladwin's *History of Hindustan* (1783) centred on the Mughal period, covering the reigns of Jahangir, Shah Jahan, and Aurangzeb. These early writings offered a general sense of India's recent past but left its ancient history largely untouched.

In 1792, William Robertson attempted to collect references about India from Greek and Roman sources in his *Historical Disquisition Concerning the Knowledge which the Ancients had of India*. However, it provided little more than what was noted by Herodotus, Megasthenes, Pliny, and Arrian. Thus, it became necessary for the Orientalists to undertake a significant intellectual effort to unravel India's ancient past, which remained mysterious to the British.

6.1.1.1 The Orientalist or Indological Recovery

The effort to recover the ancient past of India came from a group of scholars who were predominantly British administrators and scholars in the service of the East India Company. They became known as Orientalists or Indologists. In the absence of reliable historical texts, it was an arduous



task for them to draw information from literature and archaeological sources such as inscriptions, coins, monuments, and sculptures. As David Kopf argues, many of these scholar-administrators were part of the intellectual environment of the European Enlightenment. Among them, William Jones and Henry Colebrooke did not view Asia as inherently different or inferior. They believed, like Voltaire or Gibbon, that all human societies shared a common potential for civilisation and that their differences lay more in culture than in nature. This cultural relativism produced a genuine appreciation for non-European societies and their histories.

The Orientalist interest was also influenced by European Romanticism, which celebrated the distant, the mysterious, and the ancient. They viewed civilisations like those of Egypt, Persia, and India with awe and wonder. The historical reconstruction in Europe had adopted a more scientific spirit, with a new critical rigour in using historical sources, which is considered a result of the Scientific Revolution. All these efforts were reflected in the Indological work in India.

6.1.1.2 The Early Indologists

Indology was the systematic study of Indian culture, languages, and literature. It did not provide much attention to political narratives. Christian missionaries, particularly the Jesuits, had taken an early interest in Indian languages and texts with a religious focus. However, it is questionable whether they sought to understand the historical background of India.

In Bengal, even before William Jones arrived, several young Company officials had engaged in Indological studies. Francis Gladwin published an abridged version of the *Ain-i-Akbari*. Nathaniel Halhead compiled the Gentoo Laws at the age of twenty-three and later produced *A Grammar of the Bengal Language*. Charles Wilkins, who arrived in India in 1770, learned Sanskrit and gained

the favour of Warren Hastings. Jonathan Duncan, an administrator and scholar, was largely involved in the revival of Hindu philosophy and learning.

The British officials supported the Indologists in understanding India's past mainly for effective colonial administration. Knowing the language and customs of the people became essential for them. The patronage of Warren Hastings, who learned Persian, collected Indian manuscripts, and read the *Bhagavad Gita*, also aided these Indologists, including William Jones.

William Jones (1746-1794)

Sir William Jones was one of the outstanding figures among the Orientalists. By the time Jones joined Oxford at seventeen, he had already mastered Greek, Latin, and Hebrew. There, he learned Arabic from a Syrian tutor, which led him to Persian. In 1783, Jones was appointed as the judge of the Supreme Court in Calcutta. The following year, with the support of Warren Hastings, he founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal. The society became the centre for research and translation. That same year, Wilkins completed the first direct English translation of the *Bhagavad Gita*. He also translated the *Hitopadesa* in 1787.

Jones learned Sanskrit from Pundit Ramlochan and began translating Indian texts. His 1789 translation of *Shakuntala* received considerable attention in Europe, with five editions published within twenty years. Jones later translated the *Gita Govinda*. His dedication to translation work is reflected in his published works. The translation of the *Manusmriti* was published posthumously as *The Institutes of Hindu Law*. These works widened access to the intellectual traditions of India.

The beginning of historical writing on India from a European perspective is closely linked to William Jones. He was deeply invested in the study of Indian languages,

literature, and laws. Out of the eleven discourses he presented at the Asiatic Society, eight focused on themes related to history. In 1786, he announced that Sanskrit was related to Greek, Latin, Old Persian, and modern European languages, laying the foundation for the Indo-European language theory. He observed similarities in some keywords across these languages that were too consistent. For instance, the English word daughter, the German tochter, the Greek thygater, and the Sanskrit duhitr all shared a common origin. Jones concluded that these languages must have evolved from a single, now lost, proto-language. All these Orientalist efforts laid the groundwork for comparative linguistics and reflected the historical connection between India and Europe.

The Aryan Race

As discussed, Jones's theory began with the linguistic similarities among Sanskrit, Old Persian, Greek, and Latin. He identified the speakers of these languages as belonging to a common race, which he called the Aryans, sometimes referred to as the Wiros or Indo-Europeans. Following this line of thought, northern Indians were considered kin to Persians and Europeans, with Central Asia regarded as the cradle of the Indo-European Aryans. This racial theorisation, though speculative, largely influenced how history and identity in India would be conceptualised by colonial and later historians.

Chandragupta

Jones attempted to provide an ancient Indian chronology. Through his research, he connected Indian and classical Greek histories. The Greek accounts of Alexander's campaign in India mention a ruler named Sandrocottas, king of the Prasii, whose capital was Palibothra. Based on Indian mythology, tales, and even drama, Jones suggested that this Sandrocottas was none other than Chandragupta Maurya, who

ruled from Pataliputra. His identification of Chandragupta Maurya with Sandrocottas and the linking of "Palibothra" with Pataliputra provided historians with a reference point to calculate other dates in Indian history. This synchronism has since been called the "sheet anchor of Indian history" because of the way it fixes a historical chronology.

6.1.2 The Development of Indological Studies

Later, the field of Indology focused on two other directions: one emphasising the critical study of ancient Indian texts and documents, and the other the archaeological recovery of India's past through inscriptions, coins, and monuments.

Study of Ancient Texts and Documents: Colebrooke and Max Müller

The Asiatic Society published articles in its journal, located ancient manuscripts, translated them, and produced critical editions. These works were often published in the *Bibliotheca Indica* series. Henry T. Colebrooke, a mathematician who arrived in India, initially criticised the early Sanskrit scholars. Colebrooke studied Sanskrit at Benares and, by 1794, was considered the successor to William Jones. He engaged in grammatical treatises, commentaries, philosophical systems, and especially Vedic literature. He was interested in the rediscovery of a Hindu golden age, which he portrayed as free from social evils like sati, caste, idolatry and polytheism. Instead, he described early Indians as robust, rational, life-loving, and egalitarian. His 1803 essay, *On the Vedas or the Sacred Writings of the Hindus*, reflected this vision, though ironically he also concluded that the Vedas might not be worth the trouble of reading or translating.

Around the same time, French scholar Anquetil Duperron translated Dara Shukoh's Persian version of the *Upanishads* and



introduced them to German philosophers like Schelling and Schopenhauer. Eugene Burnouf connected the *Rig Veda* and the *Zend Avesta*, while German scholars Bopp, Grimm, and Humboldt established connections among Indo-European languages by identifying the *Rig Veda*'s language as one of the most primitive forms.

Max Müller, a German scholar who taught at Oxford, became one of the most important figures in Indology. Without a teacher, he mastered Sanskrit and then expanded into comparative linguistics and religion. His edition of the *Rig Veda* with Sayana's commentary (1845–79) was a monumental effort. Through his work *History of Sanskrit Literature* (1859), Müller organised known Sanskrit texts chronologically. His later work on mythology and comparative religion led to *The Sacred Books of the East* series (1879–1904), which brought 50 major non-Christian scriptures to English readers.

Burnouf's *Essai sur le Pali* (1826) introduced Buddhism to the West as a structured system of thought. Jain and Buddhist texts received the same critical attention as Brahmanical ones. Scholars like Fausbøll, Jacobi, Oldenburg, and Rhys Davids engaged in the study of Buddhism, with the Pali Text Society inspired by the *Sacred Books of the East*.

6.1.3 Discovery and Study of Inscriptions, Monuments, and Coins: Prinsep and Cunningham

Literary sources alone were not sufficient to understand India's past. As in Egypt, Crete, or Troy, inscriptions, archaeological remains, and coins were vital. The Orientalists came from a Europe exposed to archaeological discoveries, such as Champollion's decipherment of Egyptian hieroglyphics and Rawlinson's work on cuneiform. It was

a 19th-century historical vigour to uncover history from stones, ruins, and scripts.

James Prinsep (1799-1840)

James Prinsep was interested in the decipherment of Indian inscriptions. Though officially an assay master at the Calcutta Mint, he became a major figure in early Indian archaeology. He collected facsimiles of Brahmi inscriptions from rocks, pillars, and stupas, studying those artefacts daily with greater dedication. He undertook a painstaking effort and succeeded in 1834 in deciphering the Old Brahmi script of Ashokan inscriptions. His discovery has been compared to that of Champollion with Egyptian hieroglyphics. Prinsep transformed the depiction of Ashoka into a documented historical emperor and opened Pali Buddhist literature to serious historical inquiry. His essays were later compiled in *Indian Antiquities* (1858).

Alexander Cunningham (1814-1893)

Cunningham came to be known as the 'father of Indian archaeology'. He joined the Bengal Army's engineering wing in 1833, met Prinsep, and became interested in Indology. In 1837, he began excavations at Sarnath, the site of the Buddha's first sermon. Later, he worked at Sanchi and, from 1870 to 1885, led excavations across sites including Taxila. He collected Indian coins, many of which are kept at the British Museum. He was appointed as the director of the Archaeological Department in 1870 and described archaeology as not just the study of broken sculptures and buildings but as the investigation of everything belonging to human history. He distinguished between "closet archaeologists" and the more active "field archaeologists," emphasising that archaeology involved travel, discovery, and close engagement with physical evidence.

Recap

- ◆ Early British interest in Indian history began with attempts to recover India's ancient past.
- ◆ Robert Orme and Francis Gladwin played a role in chronicling Indian history.
- ◆ William Jones played a major role by founding the Asiatic Society and promoting Sanskrit studies.
- ◆ Indology combined European Enlightenment ideals with a Romantic interest in ancient civilisations.
- ◆ The Aryan race theory linked Indians with Europeans through linguistic similarities.
- ◆ Jones identified Chandragupta Maurya as Sandrocottas.
- ◆ He laid the foundation for Indian chronology.
- ◆ Henry Colebrooke and Max Müller expanded the study of Indian texts and languages.
- ◆ Archaeology emerged as a major source for historical reconstruction through the work of James Prinsep.
- ◆ Prinsep deciphered the Brahmi script and revealed the history of Ashoka.
- ◆ Alexander Cunningham institutionalised archaeology in India and emphasised fieldwork.

Objective Questions

1. Who is known as the founder of the Asiatic Society of Bengal?
2. What language did William Jones learn from Pundit Ramlochan?
3. Which inscription script was deciphered by James Prinsep?
4. Who identified Chandragupta Maurya with the Greek Sandrocottas?
5. Who translated the *Bhagavad Gita* into English for the first time?



6. What was the main focus of Max Müller's research?
7. Who is regarded as the father of Indian archaeology?
8. Which society published the *Bibliotheca Indica* series?
9. What was the contribution of Henry Colebrooke to Indology?
10. Which ancient Indian emperor's inscriptions did James Prinsep decipher?

Answers

1. William Jones
2. Sanskrit
3. Brahmi script
4. William Jones
5. Charles Wilkins
6. Sanskrit literature and comparative religion
7. Alexander Cunningham
8. Asiatic Society of Bengal
9. Study of Sanskrit texts and Vedic literature
10. Ashoka

Assignments

1. Discuss the contributions of William Jones to the reconstruction of ancient Indian history.
2. How did the decipherment of the Brahmi script change the understanding of Indian history?

3. Explain the role of the Asiatic Society in the development of Indology.
4. Assess the influence of European Enlightenment and Romanticism on Orientalist historiography.
5. Evaluate the impact of the Aryan theory on colonial interpretations of Indian history.

Reference

1. Cohn, Bernard S. *Colonialism and Its Forms of Knowledge*. Princeton University Press, 1996.
2. Said, Edward. *Orientalism*. Vintage Books, 1979.
3. Kopf, David. *British Orientalism and the Bengal Renaissance*. University of California Press, 1969.
4. Sreedharan, E. *Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.
5. Trautmann, Thomas R. *Aryans and British India*. University of California Press, 1997.

Suggested Reading

1. Dirks, Nicholas B. *Castes of Mind: Colonialism and the Making of Modern India*. Princeton University Press, 2001.
2. Thapar, Romila. *The Past Before Us: Historical Traditions of Early North India*. Harvard University Press, 2013.
3. Thapar, Romila. *The Past and Prejudice*. National Book Trust, 1975.
4. Trautmann, Thomas R. *Languages and Nations: The Dravidian Proof in Colonial Madras*. University of California Press, 2000.



UNIT

Colonial/ Imperial Approach to Indian Historiography

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ comprehend the relevance of colonial historiography in shaping the narrative of British rule in India
- ◆ identify the contributions of colonial historians and examine their connection to the political and administrative strategies of British imperial policy in India
- ◆ describe the ideological imperatives that informed colonial historical writing and how these served to legitimise imperial domination
- ◆ recognise the inherent biases and Eurocentric frameworks in colonial historiographical narratives
- analyse the influence of colonial historiography on constructing and perpetuating perceptions of India's past.

Prerequisites

When the British established their dominion over India, their strategy extended beyond territorial and administrative control to the systematic reshaping of historical consciousness. As part of this effort, they began writing history from their own point of view. Colonial historiography emerged as a deliberate intellectual apparatus through which the British sought to authoritatively define India's past from their own vantage point, thereby justifying and naturalising their rule.

These historical narratives were predominantly authored by British officials, missionaries, and scholars, portraying India as stagnant, superstitious, despotic, and inherently incapable of self-governance, thus requiring British intervention

Keywords

Discussion

to emerge from what he called a 'hideous' condition.

This evangelical vision was strongly supported by the utilitarian school, led by Jeremy Bentham and taken forward by his disciple James Mill. Utilitarianism emphasised the principle of utility, meaning that any institution or practice should be judged by its ability to promote the overall welfare of society. If not, it was considered necessary to reform or abolish it. Utilitarians believed that laws, state-driven reforms, and universal education were tools for social transformation. James Mill viewed Indian civilisation as stagnant, superstitious, and morally degenerate. He believed that only Western ideas, rational thought, and British governance could improve the condition of Indian society. This belief became the ideological foundation of his major work, *The History of British India*.

6.2.2 Mill's *History of British India*

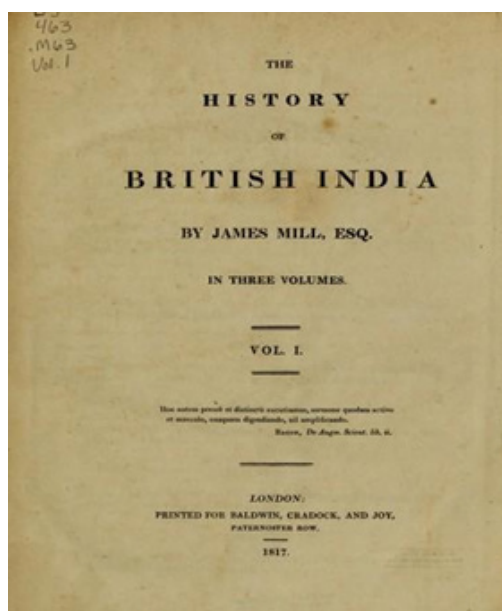


Fig. 6.1.1 Mill's *History of British India*

Mill began writing this historical account in 1806, and it was published in 1818 in six volumes. The work was not simply a record of the Indian past; rather, it was intended to justify British colonial rule in India based on utilitarian principles. The book was highly regarded in Britain and appreciated by economist David Ricardo and Thomas Macaulay in Parliament. Even though some, like H.H. Wilson, criticised Mill's views, they still recognised the influence of the work. In his writing, Mill devoted large portions, particularly the second and third volumes, to a systematic critique of 'Hindu' and 'Muslim' civilisations in India. He described those periods as irrational, despotic, and socially regressive, thus offering a strong justification for British imperial intervention. Mill's approach aligned well with the imperial demands of the colonial state. His writings provided an ideological rationale for authoritarian colonial rule, which were carried out through the introduction of British educational systems and legal frameworks in India.

Mill wrote his work from London, as a Company official accessing extensive administrative records. However, he disregarded the primary research and linguistic knowledge of the Orientalist scholars. Instead, he based his work largely on second-hand sources, many of which were written by biased or poorly informed observers. For example, he used reports from Robert Orme, Buchanan (who failed in his efforts to learn Sanskrit), Tennant, and Tytler, most of whom lacked deep familiarity with Indian society. More reliable sources, such as the proceedings of the 1813 Parliamentary investigations, which presented a more nuanced and sometimes favourable view of Hindu society, were ignored. Mill was not interested in making a balanced account, as he had already reached his conclusions before beginning his research. He selected only those testimonies that supported his stance, especially those from missionaries or critics like Abbe Dubois and Tytler. This methodological approach violated basic principles of historical inquiry. Rather than engaging with the Orientalists' evidence and interpreting it critically, Mill discarded it altogether. His works were later criticised for their use of partial sources and selective citation, leading to a history that reflected prejudice more than analysis.

James Mill evaluated ancient India, which he characterised as the 'Hindu' period, through the utilitarian principle of utility, judging institutions and practices by how much they contributed to the overall well-being of society. He presented his assessment in the second book of *The History of British India*, which was a harsh and sweeping moral condemnation of nearly every aspect of Hindu society. He evaluated aspects such as history, government, laws, religion, manners, and the arts, declaring them primitive, irrational, and harmful. He argued that such institutions could only have

arisen during the earliest and least developed stages of human civilization. According to him, if Indian civilization had ever achieved greatness, there was no historical evidence of a disaster large enough to account for its current state of “ignorance and barbarity.” Mill even claimed that medieval Europe, often considered a less advanced period in European history, was more civilised than ancient India. He also compared different regimes in India, considering Muslim rule to be flawed yet still superior to Hindu governance, and maintained that British colonial rule, though not perfect, was the best option for India. He concluded that India had gained from British domination, not only in terms of political administration but also in moral and intellectual development.

Mill’s work was published in multiple editions and was adopted as a textbook at Haileybury College, the training institution for East India Company administrators, from 1805 to 1855. As a result, generations of British civil servants were trained using his work and were deeply influenced by his portrayal of Indian society and the ideology of British superiority. Mill’s utilitarian ideas provided a framework for colonial rule and convinced British officials that it was their moral duty to rule and reform India.

6.2.2.1 Criticism of Mill’s Work

Mill’s work faced criticism from scholars and historians. H.H. Wilson challenged Mill’s claim that Muslim rule was superior to Hindu rule, arguing that Mill’s comparisons were ahistorical, as he failed to understand that civilizations must be judged within their context. Wilson insisted that just because Britain was more advanced in the 19th century did not mean that ancient Indian civilization was always backward. He also warned about the damaging consequences of Mill’s portrayal of India.

Some suggested that such imperial dogmatism paved the way for the discontent that later led to the Revolt of 1857. R.C. Majumdar acknowledged Mill’s intellectual abilities but believed that his work was not a genuine historical account. According to Majumdar, Mill’s writing was filled with bias, ignorance, and a lack of proper scholarly method, making it unreliable as a historical source.

6.2.3 Mountstuart Elphinstone

While James Mill’s *History of British India* continued to influence British official circles, another perspective emerged from Mountstuart Elphinstone. Elphinstone, a British administrator, developed a deeper understanding of Indian society through years of service. After retiring from the post of Governor of Bombay in 1827, he focused on historical writing and sought to address the limitations of Mill’s works. Elphinstone criticised the way Mill portrayed Indian traditions, especially Hindu and Muslim cultures, in a negative and sarcastic manner. He began writing *History of Hindu and Muhammadan India* in 1834, which was published in 1841. The book was used to train future civil servants at Haileybury College, earning him the title ‘Tacitus of India.’

When considering the approaches of these two thinkers, Mill, influenced by Enlightenment utilitarianism, believed human nature was the same everywhere and could be improved through laws. Elphinstone, influenced by Romantic thought, emphasised the cultural uniqueness of society and the importance of understanding people in their historical and social contexts. Unlike Mill, who relied almost exclusively on European sources, mostly secondary sources, Elphinstone incorporated Indian sources and first-hand observation. He relied on the work of William Erskine, a close associate who had translated Babur’s memoirs. Elphinstone



also drew upon the pioneering studies of William Jones and H.H. Wilson. He rejected the mythical division of time into four yugas and instead began his narrative with the composition of the *Rig Veda*, which he dated to the fourteenth century BCE. He constructed a chronology of ancient India centred around Chandragupta Maurya's accession in the late fourth century BCE, using dynastic lists from the Puranas and James Prinsep's decipherment of the Ashokan inscriptions. Even though he included references to dynastic successions from the Puranas, he did not give much importance to Alexander, Chandragupta Maurya, and Ashoka, despite using sources such as Greco-Roman accounts and newly discovered inscriptions. He focused significantly on the cultural aspects of India, such as Hindu administration, social structure, religious beliefs, literary and philosophical traditions, art, science, customs, and trade. He considered regional variations and noted that Aryan cultural elements reached South India much later and eventually blended with indigenous Dravidian traditions. Elphinstone provided an early account of India's maritime trade and overseas cultural influence, especially the colonisation of Java, Bali, and other Southeast Asian islands.

Elphinstone inspired James Grant Duff, to whom he handed over the complete archival records of the Peshwa's administration. Duff's *A History of the Marathas*, published in 1825, is a two-volume study based on first-hand documentation that has since been lost. William Erskine, besides assisting Elphinstone, translated the *Babur-namah*. But perhaps the most famous among Elphinstone's intellectual heirs was James Tod, who wrote *Annals and Antiquities of Rajasthan* between 1812 and 1823. His work was a poetic evocation of Rajput history.

6.2.4 Henry Miers Elliot and Dowson

Despite Mountstuart Elphinstone's efforts to offer a more sensitive account of Indian history, the dominant colonial understanding continued to follow the critical and utilitarian approach of James Mill. The Revolt of 1857 further reinforced the notion among the British that Mill had been correct in his assessment of Indian society. In this context, Henry Miers Elliot, a graduate from Haileybury and Chief Secretary in the Government of India's Foreign Department, along with John Dowson, Professor of Hindustani at University College, London, collaborated in compiling *The History of India as Told by Its Own Historians (Vol I - VIII)* (1867–1877). They translated and compiled Persian historical chronicles. Like Mill, Elliot used historical writing to justify colonial rule, portraying earlier Indian kingdoms as despotic and inefficient. His works influenced British colonial policies. According to historian C.H. Philips, Elliot's views supported a paternalistic belief that British order and law were more important than Indian aspirations for self-rule. In this way, Elliot perpetuated the utilitarian lens through which Mill worked.

6.2.5 Colonial Ideas Behind Late Nineteenth-Century Imperialism

***“East is East and West is West,
and never the twain shall meet.”***
- Kipling

By the late nineteenth century, European imperialism was strongly shaped by beliefs in racial superiority. Many Europeans believed that white races were naturally fit

to rule others. These views were supported by pseudo-scientific ideas like 'Social Darwinism', which claimed that European success proved their evolutionary superiority. Alongside racial arguments, imperialism was also justified as a moral mission. The British claimed they were uplifting colonised people through education, religion, and governance. Rudyard Kipling's poem *The White Man's Burden* reflected this belief, portraying colonised people as backward and needing guidance. This attitude led to the idea that British rule, especially in India, was both necessary and permanent, laying the groundwork for further exploitation of India. Thinkers like Lord Curzon and writers like John Ruskin and John Seely promoted the empire as a force for good. Under the guise of a 'civilising mission', they presented imperialism as noble while concealing its economic motives, such as resource extraction and market expansion. Even liberal thinkers like John Stuart Mill supported British rule in India, believing Indians were not ready for self-government. These ideas shaped British colonial policies and the way history was written during this period.

What is "White Man's Burden"?

An idea which expressed that Europeans had a duty to 'civilise' non-European peoples, portraying imperialism as a noble mission while concealing its economic exploitation.

6.2.6 The British Imperialist Administrator-Historians (c. 1870–1940)

The colonial approach to Indian historiography was shaped largely by British administrators and scholars who engaged with historical writing. This tradition sought to explain India's past and present from a Eurocentric viewpoint, often seeking to legitimise British rule. Historian E.T.

Stokes grouped them into two types: Popular historians, those who wrote for a general audience, and Philosophic historians, those who wrote with deeper ideas or theories in mind. Thomas Babington Macaulay is one of the most prominent popular historians. After returning to Britain from India, he wrote about British rule in India by focusing on individual personalities and believed that great men shaped history. In his famous essay on Robert Clive, Macaulay portrayed Clive as a brave and brilliant hero, a common man who helped Britain gain control over India through courage and intelligence. Similarly, Macaulay's writings about Warren Hastings, the first Governor-General of India, also depicted him as a strong and wise leader. These writings influenced many other British historians to adopt a biographical style.

G.B. Malleson was another popular historian who wrote important works such as *History of the Indian Mutiny*, *History of the French in India*, and *Decisive Battles of India*. Malleson believed that the British conquered India because Indians were weak and divided. He argued that Indians lacked the unity and organisation to fight back. However, he also claimed that, under British guidance, Indians could become good soldiers, even assisting the British in defeating their own people.

Philosophic historians sought to explain British rule in India using intellectual ideas rather than focusing on individual actions or events. These historians were influenced by new academic fields like Sanskrit studies and Western social theories. They believed that British rule in India was not accidental but the result of long-term historical developments in Europe and Britain. For them, the British did not merely happen to conquer India; they were naturally destined to rule due to their advanced civilisation. Although they employed different methods than popular historians, both groups ultimately supported the same view that British rule was necessary,



legitimate, and beneficial for India.

James Fitzjames Stephen, one of the philosophic historians, was a trained administrator who served in India from 1869 to 1872. He followed utilitarian and Social Darwinist thinking and disagreed with liberal critics like John Bright, who questioned British rule as violent and morally wrong. Instead, Stephen believed that British rule had a strong moral purpose. In his book *Liberty, Equality, Fraternity* (1873), he compared Britain's role in India to that of ancient Rome in the Mediterranean. He argued that Britain had the most developed idea of social happiness and the ability to bring law and order through Benthamite (utilitarian) principles. Therefore, he viewed British rule as necessary for civilising India.

Henry Maine was not strictly a historian but played an important role in shaping colonial ideas about Indian society. Maine served as Law Member in India from 1861 to 1869 and was the author of *Ancient Law* (1861). He believed in the Aryan theory and thought that Indian village communities were old Aryan institutions. However, instead of using this idea to show equality between Indians and Europeans, he used it to justify British control. Maine perceived Indian society as backward and mentally undeveloped. In his lectures at Cambridge, he argued that while Europe progressed through new ideas, India remained stuck in early stages of development. Maine also asserted that British rule was necessary to bring progress, even though he appeared more liberal in his approach.

Following James Mill, J. Tallboys Wheeler, who served as Assistant Secretary to the Government of India's Foreign Department and later as Secretary to the Chief Commissioner of British Burma, wrote a five-volume *History of India from the Earliest Times*. He blamed the failure of India to fight against the oppressive rule of the

Brahman priesthood. According to Wheeler, the Vedic Aryans once had a strong sense of public welfare and political unity, but this was later destroyed by the dominance of the Brahmin priests. The weakening of a united political community led people to focus more on their caste, village, or family, limiting the growth of broader national identity and unity. Wheeler was critical not only of Hindu society but also of Mughal rule in India. He described the Mughal administration as a harsh system of oppression and exploitation, which he claimed was common in Asian countries. He believed that only European rule could bring order to India. For him, the 1857 rebellion, which he termed a 'Mutiny', proved that India was not ready for a government chosen by the people.

In contrast, Alfred Lyall presented a somewhat more liberal perspective. In his works *Asiatic Studies* and *The Rise and Expansion of the British Dominion in India*, Lyall attempted an in-depth study of Indian society. He believed that India lacked permanent political or social institutions like aristocracy, which made it easier for the British to take control. He also argued that Indian society was divided into many castes and communities, without any religious or political unity. Though he supported local self-government to some extent, he insisted that the British must continue to transform Indian society. For Lyall, British rule was part of a larger European expansion across Asia and was not accidental.

William Wilson Hunter was regarded as one of the more thoughtful British historians of the late 19th century. His book *Annals of Rural Bengal* focused on the lives of ordinary Indians. He traced Aryan migrations into Bengal and demonstrated how the refusal of pure Aryan tribes to mix with aborigines created a hierarchical caste society. This division prevented the formation of a homogenous society with a common identity. Hunter viewed British rule as a means to

break down these social barriers and help India become a united country.

Another important work was the *Rulers of Indiaseries*, edited by William Wilson Hunter. This collection of 28 short biographies primarily featured British officials and military leaders, with only a few about Indian rulers. These books praised British values such as bravery, discipline, and moral superiority, and presented British rule as a positive force for India.

In his unfinished work, *History of British India*, Hunter argued that British rule was not the result of sudden conquest but of long, persistent efforts. He praised the British character for its adventurous and determined spirit. He believed that the British could not govern India forever without involving educated Indians in administration. In his view, British paternalism was guiding India toward modernity and development. Although these officials claimed to be more objective and scientific, their writings often reinforced the idea that India was backward and needed British rule to progress.

6.2.7 Vincent Smith

In the study of Indian historiography during the colonial period, two crucial figures stand out for their influential and contrasting approaches: James Mill and Vincent Arthur Smith. Their writings shaped much of how Indian history was interpreted and taught, particularly under British rule. Vincent Arthur Smith (1848–1920) was an Irish-born administrator and historian who served in the Indian Civil Service. Unlike some of his contemporaries, Smith did not belong to the group termed ‘philosophic’ historians by E.T. Stokes. His work emerged at a time when a large volume of new historical sources had been uncovered, allowing for a chronological understanding of ancient India. His contributions include *Early History of India* (1904) and *Oxford History of India*

(1919), which became standard textbooks in colonial India.

Smith believed that to understand modern India, one must comprehend its ancient past. He admired Indian art, although he was critical of Indian literature, judging it by European standards. He regarded the Gupta period as a ‘golden age’, akin to England’s Elizabethan era, while describing some works as crude or poorly written. However, despite his academic efforts, Smith’s writings still supported British imperial rule. He portrayed Indian history as a series of weak and chaotic regimes, arguing that India had always needed strong rulers from outside. For instance, he focused on the easy victories of Alexander the Great to demonstrate the supposed weakness of Indian armies. After the death of King Harsha, Smith claimed India fell into political disorder, which he believed proved the need for British rule. He described British control as a form of ‘benevolent despotism’ necessary to bring order and progress to India. Smith’s views were not universally accepted. Historian E.B. Havell, for example, disagreed with Smith’s negative view of Indian civilisation, arguing that India’s Aryan traditions contained valuable ideas about governance and justice. He believed British rule should support Indians in their efforts toward self-rule, rather than making them feel ashamed of their past.

6.2.8 W.H. Moreland

Another important historian of the time was W.H. Moreland, who focused on the economic history of India. He studied agriculture and revenue systems, believing that economic forces were central to understanding historical change. Moreland demonstrated how India’s economy evolved over time, from ancient and medieval periods into the colonial era. He viewed economic forces as crucial to historical change and examined how British rule introduced a money economy and capital investment to



India. While he pointed out inefficiencies in the Mughal economy, he also defended British economic policies. Later in his career, Moreland wrote in support of British taxation and attempted to counter nationalist criticisms by showing that colonial reforms were part of a longer historical process and that British intervention had become necessary.

This important works included *The Agrarian System of Moslem India, From Akbar to Aurangzeb*, and *Jahangir's India*. British administrative historians, primarily active during the colonial period, approached history as a tool of governance and imperial justification. Their narratives were characterised by a pronounced Eurocentric bias, portraying Indian society as static, despotic, and mired in superstition, thereby legitimising British rule as a civilising mission. These

historians, often officials of the East India Company or colonial administration, adopted a utilitarian and empirical methodology that emphasised administrative records, official correspondence, and colonial reports as primary sources. Their historical writing sought to establish a linear progression from perceived Indian stagnation to British-imposed modernity, frequently reducing complex indigenous political, social, and cultural processes to simplistic frameworks. Furthermore, they tended to represent Indian history through a teleological lens, interpreting the past as a series of failures and despotic regimes inevitably corrected by British intervention. This approach served not only to rationalise colonial authority but also to institutionalise a hierarchical knowledge system that foregrounded the imperial perspective, sidelining indigenous voices and epistemologies.

Recap

- ◆ James Mill applied utilitarian principles to justify British rule in India.
- ◆ He portrayed Indian society as stagnant and in need of reform.
- ◆ James Mill's *The History of British India* was a foundational text in colonial historiography.
- ◆ It harshly criticised Indian civilisations and justified British rule as a civilising mission.
- ◆ Mill divided Indian history into Hindu, Muslim, and British periods, claiming only the British era brought progress and rational governance.
- ◆ His work relied on second-hand and biased sources, rejecting the nuanced scholarship of Orientalists and reinforcing colonial stereotypes.
- ◆ Colonial historiography emerged as a way for British writers to interpret Indian history in ways that legitimised colonial domination.
- ◆ Colonial historians often ignored Indian perspectives, leading to distorted and incomplete narratives of India's past.
- ◆ Mountstuart Elphinstone offered a more balanced and culturally sensitive view, countering Mill's hostile portrayal of Indian society.

- ◆ Elliot and Dowson's translations of Indo-Muslim chronicles were selectively used to support Mill's arguments and justify British supremacy.
- ◆ British administrator-historians like Macaulay and Malleon glorified British heroes and framed Indian disunity as the cause of colonisation.
- ◆ Philosophic historians like Stephen and Maine depicted British rule as a natural, progressive outcome of European civilisation.
- ◆ Writers like Wheeler and Lyall reinforced the idea that Indian society was inherently static, fragmented, and incapable of self-rule.
- ◆ Vincent Arthur Smith, while admiring ancient Indian achievements, still used history to promote British political dominance.
- ◆ W.H. Moreland emphasised India's economic history, portraying British rule as a rational continuation of past systems.
- ◆ Later Indian and Western historians, such as H.H. Wilson and R.C. Majumdar, strongly criticised Mill's work for its prejudice, inaccuracies, and negative impact on colonial governance.

Objective Questions

1. Who authored *The History of British India*, which shaped colonial official discourse in the early nineteenth century?
2. Name the editor of the *Rulers of India* series.
3. What was the title of Mountstuart Elphinstone's historical work published in 1841?
4. Which two British writers compiled and translated Persian sources into *The History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*?
5. What are the three periods into which James Mill divided Indian history?
6. What was the primary aim of colonial historiography during British rule?
7. Which philosophy influenced James Mill's historical writing?
8. In which year was *The History of British India* published?

9. What was the main source material used by Mill in his *History of British India*?
10. Name the college where Mill's *History of British India* was used as a textbook for training civil servants.
11. Which historian criticised Mill's work for eroding British sympathy toward Indians and encouraging administrative arrogance?
12. Who are referred to as philosophic historians by E.T. Stokes in colonial historiography?
13. Which historian described the Gupta period as a 'Golden Age' similar to Elizabethan England?

Answers

1. James Mill
2. William Wilson Hunter
3. History of Hindu and Muhammadan India
4. Henry Miers Elliot and John Dowson
5. Hindu, Muslim, and British
6. To justify and legitimise British rule by portraying India as backward before colonial intervention
7. Utilitarianism
8. 1818
9. Second-hand accounts from biased or superficial observers
10. Haileybury College
11. H.H. Wilson
12. Henry Maine and James Fitzjames Stephen
13. Vincent Arthur Smith

Assignments

1. Critically analyse James Mill's interpretation of Indian history in *The History of British India* and its reflection of colonial ideological motives.
2. Examine how James Mill constructed Indian history as a narrative of stagnation, despotism, and irrationality, and how this interpretation served the broader ideological project of legitimising British imperial rule.
3. Discuss how the idea of the 'civilising mission' influenced the historical narratives produced by British administrator-historians.
4. Compare and contrast the historical approaches of James Mill and Mountstuart Elphinstone in interpreting Indian civilisation. What do their differences reveal about colonial attitudes?

Reference

1. Elliot, H. M., and John Dowson. *The History of India, as Told by Its Own Historians*. Cambridge University Press, 2013.
2. Guha, Ranajit, editor. *Subaltern Studies: Writings on South Asian History and Society, Vol. I*. Oxford University Press, 1996.
3. Sen, S. P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.
4. Sreedharan, E. *Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.

Suggested Reading

1. Bajaj, Satheesh K. *Recent Trends in Historiography*. Anmol Publications, 1998.
2. Schwarz, Henry. *Writing Cultural History in Colonial and Postcolonial India*. University of Pennsylvania Press, 1997.
3. Sreedharan, E. *A Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient Longman, 2004.
4. Thapar, Romila. *The Past and Prejudice*. National Book Trust, 1975.
5. Thapar, Romila. *Time as a Metaphor of History: Ancient India*. Oxford University Press, 1997.
6. Upadhyay, Shashi Bhushan. *Historiography in the Modern World: Western and Indian Perspectives*. Oxford University Press, 2016



Learning Outcomes

- understand the origins and development of the Nationalist School of historiography in colonial India
- evaluate how Indian historians responded to colonial narratives and reclaimed India's historical identity
- identify the major themes, concerns, and methodologies followed by the nationalist historians
- assess the individual contributions of the nationalist historians to Indian historical writing

Prerequisites

The rise of Indian nationalist history writing was closely connected with the growth of political awareness and cultural pride during British rule. As educated Indians began to resist British control, not just in politics but also in the intellectual and cultural spheres, the writing of history became a tool to build a strong national identity. This unit explores how nationalist historians began writing about India's



past, how they challenged British views of Indian history, and how they influenced people to imagine India as a united entity.

Keywords

Nationalist Historiography, Colonial Critique, Economic History, Fundamental Unity, Oriental Despotism, South Indian History

Discussion

6.3.1 The Rise of the Nationalist School of Historiography

During the early stages of colonial rule, many Indians were initially attracted to Western ways of life. However, as critical awareness developed, a new group of educated Indians began to resist blind imitation and instead sought to revive their own cultural heritage. They drew inspiration from the West while focusing on reforming religion, rediscovering traditions, and building pride in the 'civilisational' past of India. Thinkers like Bankim Chandra Chatterjee believed that a nation could not become free without knowing its history. He criticised the lack of Hindu historical writing and urged Indians to document their past, as the Greeks, Romans and Muslims had done. This cultural awakening gradually evolved into a nationalist renaissance that promoted self-respect and historical consciousness.

In response to British imperialist historians like James Mill and Vincent Smith, who portrayed Indian civilization as backward and incapable of self-rule, early Indian historians began challenging these distorted narratives. They pointed out how foreign writers misrepresented the social structures of India and how its achievements were ignored. Indian foreign trade was attributed

to Greeks and Arabs, and the antiquity of Indian texts was questioned. Missionary writings added to the imperialist critique by focusing on religious superstitions and social evils in Hindu society. However, their criticism was often considered selective and hypocritical, as they ignored Europe's own histories of witch hunts, heretic burnings, and racial hierarchies.

In contrast, nationalist scholars like R.C. Majumdar, Romesh Chandra Dutt, and Joseph Needham defended the intellectual and religious past of India. The desire to reclaim the past encouraged Indian scholars to actively engage with historical sources, such as monuments, epigraphs, coins, and literary texts. They used archaeological, astronomical, and literary evidence to counter colonial views, proving that India had made significant contributions to science, trade, governance, and philosophy long before European intervention. R.K. Mukherjee's *History of Indian Shipping* responded to colonial doubts about India's maritime capabilities by documenting the trade and navigation traditions of ancient India.

While scholars like Bankim Chandra and Rajnarain Bose defended Hinduism in its traditional form, others like Dayananda Saraswati took a more rationalist approach. Dayananda insisted that the true Hindu

religion was found in the Vedas, free from later distortions like idolatry, caste discrimination, and sati. He argued that these were corruptions of a pure tradition. He pointed out that women enjoyed high status, and society was based on a division of labour rather than hierarchy.

In opposition to British claims that India was never a unified nation, scholars like R.K. Mukerjee argued that there had always been a strong sense of unity among Hindus across India. His work *The Fundamental Unity of India* emphasised religious and spiritual commonality and the ideal of a pan-Indian empire. At the same time, as Indian demands for self-rule grew, K.P. Jayaswal, in his work *Hindu Polity*, challenged the Western theory of 'Oriental Despotism', the idea that ancient Indian rulers were absolute and oppressive. He argued that ancient Indian states had systems of constitutional governance, such as parliamentary assemblies and checks on royal power. This showed that political life in early India was more democratic and organised than what colonial scholars had claimed.

R.C. Dutt's *Civilization in Ancient India* is a monumental three-volume work that manages to assert nationalist viewpoints without falling into the trap of exaggeration or distortion. Even critics like Romila Thapar have acknowledged that these historians, through their opposition to colonial interpretations, brought new perspectives and encouraged a re-examination of sources. Historiography moved beyond dynastic records to also engage with debates on political, cultural, social, and economic aspects of the past.

6.3.1.1 Historical Themes

Nationalist historiography provided much focus on regional and local histories. As regional studies flourished, many gaps in the general historical narrative were filled.

This trend helped historians recognise the danger of generalising the history of the entire subcontinent based on developments in the Ganges heartland alone. Hence, focused studies on regions like Bengal and Maharashtra gained popularity. In South India, historians like Neelakanta Sastri brought the history of the Deccan and Tamil regions to national importance.

Nationalist historians also turned their attention to the economic consequences of British rule in India. William Digby began the economic critique of British rule through his work *Prosperous British India*, but Dadabhai Naoroji and Romesh Chandra Dutt provided much stronger critiques later. Naoroji's Drain Theory claimed that India's poverty was due to the constant extraction of wealth by the British. Dutt's *Economic History of India* went further by identifying the agrarian crisis as central to India's economic decline. These early critiques marked the beginnings of economic history as a serious discipline in India and laid the groundwork for later Marxist interpretations.

Many nationalist historians focused on cultural history to better understand India's past. In his *Survey of Indian History*, Sardar K.M. Panikkar stressed that learning Indian history was an emotional and intellectual journey. For many Indians raised on colonial textbooks, this kind of historical writing helped them rediscover pride and identity, which further paved the way for a national and spiritual reawakening.

6.3.2 Contributions of Nationalist Historians

Let us now examine the contributions of four major historians whose works reflected the contours and convictions of the nationalist school: R.G. Bhandarkar, Romesh Chandra Dutt, K.P. Jayaswal, and Radha Kumud Mukherji.



R.G. Bhandarkar (1837-1923)

Ramakrishna Gopal Bhandarkar is one of the earliest modern Indian historians. His works, such as *The Early History of the Deccan* (1884) and *A Peep into the Early History of India* (1900), deal with the dynastic chronicles and political developments within the social, economic, religious, and cultural contexts of both northern and western India. Bhandarkar used sources rigorously and urged historians to assess the credibility of evidence with impartiality. He was careful not to uncritically accept popular legends and encouraged exploring the possible truths they might contain. Bhandarkar found shortcomings in the work of Vincent Smith on that account. He did not support the idea of rejecting all foreign influences or exaggerating the antiquity of India.

Like Leopold von Ranke, Bhandarkar believed that history should be written based on facts, reflecting what really happened. He led the First Oriental Conference in 1919. The Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute in Pune is named after him and stands as a symbol of his contribution to historical writing in India.

Romesh Chandra Dutt (1848-1909)

Romesh Chandra Dutt was a member of the Indian Civil Service and a Sanskrit scholar who made important contributions to nationalist historiography, particularly in the fields of literature and economic history. He saw literary works as reflections of social norms and customs and believed that despite the absence of a historical tradition in the strict sense, ancient Indian texts could provide information on the intellectual and social history of India.

The three-volume book, *A History of Civilization in Ancient India*, written by Dutt, was a nationalist effort to document Indian history with pride. Although the work did not include original research, it adhered

to a logical and scientific method of writing history. Dutt's *Economic History of India* (in two volumes), based on Dadabhai Naoroji's Drain Theory, explored how British rule affected the Indian economy. Dutt utilised British records and statistics to explain how high land taxes and economic policies that favoured Britain led to poverty and a major agricultural crisis. He criticised the economic drain, called for reduced government spending, and demanded policies that served Indian needs rather than industrial interests in Manchester. His critique laid the intellectual foundation for discussions related to the economic aspects of the Indian national movement.

K.P. Jayaswal (1881-1937)

Kashi Prasad Jayaswal who was trained at Oxford and worked as a lawyer, contributed two major works, *Hindu Polity* (1918) and *History of India c. AD 150–350*, that presented fresh ideas based on texts, inscriptions, and coins. In *Hindu Polity*, Jayaswal challenged the colonial view that ancient India was ruled by absolute kings (Oriental despotism). He showed that India had republics and constitutional monarchies, with democratic bodies like the *samiti* (a sovereign assembly) and *sabha* (a group of selected leaders). He interpreted that *gana* and *sangha* were early republics that functioned through majority vote, and he even believed that ideas like quorum and referendum existed in ancient times. In the second part of his work, Jayaswal argued that kings were not all powerful, but they were limited by councils and assemblies, and were answerable to the people. In *History of India*, he called the Bharasiva-Nagas as nationalist heroes as they freed India from the Saka-Kushan rule. But later historians, like U.N. Ghoshal and A.S. Altekar, criticised some of his claims as being too nationalistic and not fully reliable. Still, his research on ancient Indian republics influenced many later historians.

Radha Kumud Mukherji (1880-1963)

Radha Kumud Mukherji was one of the well-known historians who engaged with the history of ancient India. He had a distinguished academic career and served at various universities. Although he wrote from a nationalist perspective, Mukherji was careful not to let his patriotism affect the accuracy of his historical research. His work, *The History of Indian Shipping and Maritime Activity from the Earliest Times*, published in 1912, was one of the pioneering studies of Indian maritime history. In this work, Mukherji used sources, including ancient texts, archaeological discoveries, coins, and inscriptions from different languages. With this evidence, he demonstrated how Indian sailors and traders travelled as far as the African coast and Southeast Asia. At a time when many believed India had always been isolated and inward-looking, Mukherji's book revealed a lively and adventurous maritime civilisation.

In addition to this, he wrote several other important works such as *Local Self Government in Ancient India*, *Ancient Indian Education*, and *The Fundamental Unity of India*. In these books, he explored civilisational continuity and the development of ancient institutions in India. His works also include *Gupta Empire*, *Ancient India* and *Hindu Civilization*. In *Men and Thought in Ancient India*, Mukherji provided biographical sketches of Yajnavalkya, the Buddha, Asoka, Samudragupta, and Harsha to portray the evolution of Indian thought. Mukherji wrote extensively on ancient India, and his works were widely recognised in India and abroad.

H.C. Raychaudhuri (1892-1957)

H.C. Raychaudhuri is a renowned nationalist historian who sought to replace colonial narratives with careful, balanced, and proudly indigenous scholarship. His landmark work is *The Political History of*

Ancient India from the Accession of Parikshit to the Extinction of the Gupta Empire. A.L. Basham, a noted historian, called this book one of the most important contributions to ancient Indian history written in forty years. It replaced earlier colonial texts like Vincent Smith's *Early History* and became a foundational text in Indian universities. This book shaped how an entire generation of Indians thought about their ancient past.

The book is divided into two parts. The first part covers the period from the accession of Parikshit (around the 9th century BCE), a figure from post-Mahabharata legends, to the rise of King Bimbisara of Magadha in the 6th century BCE. Raychaudhuri aimed to present a systematic history from a time that was often considered too mythical or uncertain. Some scholars, like Wilhelm Geiger, praised him for successfully pushing the reliable historical timeline of India back by three centuries, from the traditionally accepted 6th century BCE to the 9th century BCE. His work was even compared to that of Niebuhr, a historian who traced the early history of ancient Rome.

The second part continues the story from Bimbisara's reign to the end of the Gupta Empire (543 BCE–550 CE). A.L. Basham believed Raychaudhuri followed in the tradition of great Indian historians like Bhandarkar, known for unbiased, and careful interpretations. Raychaudhuri worked with a wide range of sources including Brahmanical, Buddhist, and Jain texts and applied modern historical methods to reach fair conclusions. His historical timeline is still regarded as one of the most reliable accounts of ancient Indian chronology. However, Basham did note that Raychaudhuri's writing sometimes hinted at Hindu nationalist sentiment, although it did not affect the scholarly quality of his work.

Apart from his famous political history, Raychaudhuri wrote other important books, such as *Materials for the Study of Early*



History of the Vaishnavite Sect (1936) and *Studies in Indian Antiquities* (1932). He also co-authored *An Advanced History of India* with R.C. Majumdar and K.K. Datta, which became a widely used textbook for history students in India.

G.S. Sardesai (1865-1957)

Govind Sakhararam Sardesai, who was a reader and clerk to Maharaja Sayaji Rao Gaekwad and tutor to his children in the Baroda state, is known for his monumental work, *Marathi Riyasat*, an eight-volume history of the Marathas written in Marathi, covering the period up to 1848. This project took more than thirty years and involved working through a vast quantity of material on Maratha history. However, Sardesai's work was criticised for a lack of critical engagement with sources and for not offering deep evaluations of historical figures or events.

Sardesai's friendship with Jadunath Sarkar influenced his later work, where Sarkar encouraged him to take charge of editing the *Peshwa Daftar*, a massive collection of Maratha administrative records. After the British took control from the Peshwas, they inherited around 35,000 bundles of state documents. Sardesai and his team worked through this enormous archive, classifying and arranging the material. They published 45 volumes covering 8,650 documents over 7,801 pages. However, Vasant Rao pointed out that the quality of Sardesai's introductory notes to each volume was not particularly strong. Following this, Sardesai collaborated with Sarkar on editing the *Poona Residency Correspondence*, which is a collection of 4,159 letters presented in over 7,000 pages.

Later, Sardesai undertook his most ambitious English-language work, *New History of the Marathas*, which was published in three volumes. However, Sardesai primarily focused on political narratives rather than the economic or social aspects of Maratha

history. He has been criticised for his lack of concern for historical methodology and refinement in writing. Nonetheless, his works contributed immensely to political history.

Jadunath Sarkar (1870-1958)

Jadunath Sarkar, who served as Vice-Chancellor of Calcutta University, declined a second term to focus on historical research, as it was his passion.

Sarkar contributed fifty historical works. His *India of Aurangzib* (1901) was more a geographical and administrative account than a narrative history. His magnum opus, *History of Aurangzib*, written between 1912 and 1924, presented a comprehensive view of the Mughal emperor's reign. Sarkar analysed Aurangzeb's personality, his religious and administrative policies, the wars in the Deccan, and the overall impact of his rule on the fortunes of India. He followed this with *Shivaji and His Times* (1919), which stirred controversy in Maharashtra for challenging nationalist myths surrounding Shivaji. Sarkar argued that Shivaji, though successful, had not built a lasting country and had borrowed many of his institutions.

In 1922, Sarkar edited William Irvine's unfinished work on the later Mughals and extended the narrative in *Nadir Shah* (1922) and the four-volume *Fall of the Mughal Empire* (1932-50). His *Military History of India* was published posthumously in 1960. All his works were unified in theme and style, which was known to be clear, direct, and free of unnecessary ornamentation. Sarkar's historical method was considered rigorous. Before him, most scholars of medieval India relied solely on Persian court chronicles. Sarkar insisted on using a wider range of sources, including letters and diaries in different languages. Like Ranke, he searched for original documents and dedicated himself to portraying the lives of ordinary people. He travelled extensively to battle sites and religious centres, not as a pilgrim but as a

scholar eager to understand the lived realities of the past.

Sarkar was equally rigorous in analysing sources. He exposed exaggerations and errors in traditional Marathi and Rajasthani historical writings, applying textual criticism to sift fact from fiction. He insisted that history must rise above loyalties to country, race, or religion. His motto as a historian was to seek, understand, and accept the truth, regardless of whether it was popular or comforting. Though some critics questioned aspects of his interpretations, such as his omission of certain details in Aurangzeb's religious policy, they could not challenge his factual accuracy. Sarkar responded to criticism with evidence.

S. Krishnaswami Aiyangar (1871-1953)

Krishnaswami Aiyangar was the first Chair of Indian History and Archaeology at the University of Madras, a position he held until 1929. One of his major contributions was a strong emphasis on South India's role in shaping Indian culture. In his work *Some Contributions of South India to Indian Culture*, he argued that the South held a distinctive place in Indian civilisation. This uniqueness, according to Aiyangar, could be seen in the persistence of Brahman orthodoxy, particularly in its Vedic and ritualistic forms. According to him, modern Hinduism was born out of a fusion between this ritualism and the devotional theism of the bhakti movement. He also drew attention to South India's contribution to trade and cultural expansion, noting that the region played a crucial role in the spread of Indian influence. He praised the Cholas for their advanced systems of local administration and for their maritime engagements with Southeast Asia, especially the Sailendra dynasty of Malaya and Sumatra. He further maintained that South India had preserved Indian religion and learning in ways the North had not, particularly through the cultural efforts of the Vijayanagara Empire.

Aiyangar focused on the problems of chronology and origins, particularly regarding early South Indian dynasties and religious movements. He dated the Sangam literature to the early Christian centuries and categorised it as pre-Pallava. The Saiva and Vaishnava saints' literature, he argued, belonged to the Pallava era. On the controversial 'Kalabhra interregnum' in Pandya rule, he proposed a post-300 CE period. His views on the origin of the Pallavas were that they were indigenous and possibly officers under the Satavahanas who later asserted independence, standing in contrast to colonial interpretations that painted them as foreign invaders.

Aiyangar also provided one of the earliest accounts of the Chola administrative apparatus, focusing on the functioning of self-governing village bodies. His *History of Tirupati* is particularly notable for its impartial tone. Though a Srivaishnava himself, he acknowledged the Jain, Buddhist, and Saiva phases that the Tirupati shrine passed through before becoming a Vaishnava site. Another major contribution was the *Journal of Indian History*. Though started by Shafaat Ahmad Khan in 1921, Aiyangar continued it when Khan stepped back after just three volumes. Despite financial hardship, he managed to build the journal into a reputable platform for historical scholarship, which was later handed over to Kerala University.

Aiyangar followed a rigorous and honest approach to historical writing. He warned against manipulating history and argued that leaving out uncomfortable truths, such as instances of fanaticism, would weaken historical understanding. Instead, historians should document such events, explain their causes, and clarify the damage they inflicted on society. Only through this honesty, he believed, could historical study remain valuable.

Shafaat Ahmad Khan (1893-1942)

Shafaat Ahmad Khan served as Professor and Head of the History Department at



Allahabad University and later as India's High Commissioner in South Africa. Though he was initially active in communal politics, he later embraced a liberal nationalist position and aligned himself with the Congress. His political transformation made him unpopular with orthodox Muslim groups, and he was tragically stabbed in Simla for his political stance. He died soon after.

Khan was often compared to Jadunath Sarkar. His historical style followed the Ranke-Acton tradition, which prioritised documentary evidence and narrative clarity. His works include *East India Trade in the Seventeenth Century*, *Portuguese Negotiations Relating to Bombay 1660–67*, *Sources for the History of British India in the Seventeenth Century*, *John Marshall in India*, and *Indian Federation and Federal Finance*. In *Anglo-Portuguese Negotiations*, Khan reconstructed the story of Bombay's transfer from Portuguese to British control, using contemporary records. His prose is sharp and engaging as he describes Charles I, for instance, as "one of the shrewdest of men" who still found himself outwitted by the "subtle Portuguese."

In *East India Trade in the Seventeenth Century*, Khan explored the economic roots of British imperialism. He argued that the East India trade was central to the rise of mercantilist policies in England, which aimed at building a commercial empire. His work demonstrated how England was transforming itself into a 'commercial state' through restrictive trade policies, colonisation, and naval expansion. At the same time, he emphasised the strength of the Mughal Empire, which resisted attempts by the English East India Company to dominate India's economic and political structure. Khan was deeply committed to the idea of national unity in India, a theme he developed in *Indian Federation and Federal Finance*. His historical vision aimed to bring a sense of collective identity that transcended communal divisions.

During his Sayaji Rao lectures at the University of Baroda in 1938, titled *History and Historians of British India*, Khan articulated his views on the historian's role. For him, a historian's duty was similar to that of a judge, which must be objective, impartial, and free from ideological bias. Especially in a country like India, where political passions and identity conflicts were intense, historians needed to resist both nationalist fervour and sectarian prejudice. He warned against confusing political advocacy with historical research.

However, despite his faith in archival documentation, Khan acknowledged that history required more than just documents. He emphasised the need to understand the deep, often unconscious impulses of an era, including the emotions, sentiments, and beliefs of ordinary people. According to him, the "mystical qualities" of a leader or the "subconscious energies" of a movement could not be fully grasped through official records alone. A historian must strive to capture both the thoughts of rulers and the feelings of the ruled.

6.3.3 Modern Historians on Medieval India

E. Sreedharan, in his work *A Textbook of Historiography*, quotes Peter Hardy to discuss the delay of 'Muslim' historians in India engaging in writing about the medieval period until the early 20th century, even as British and Hindu scholars had begun doing so earlier. After returning from England in 1870, Syed Ahmad Khan was more focused on religious matters than history. His goal was to defend Islam from Western criticism, interpreting the faith in terms that were compatible with modern science and liberal values. This defensive stance continued among his followers until the First World War. Apart from the case of Syed Ahmad Khan, in the wake of the 1857 Revolt and the exile of Bahadur Shah II, Muslim elites

sought to avoid any action that might appear provocative to the British. Writing about the glorious power of medieval rule could have been seen as politically sensitive, even dangerous.

The Aligarh school, led by Syed Ahmad Khan, was consciously non-communal. Hence, writing medieval Indian history, with its glorification of Central Asian conquerors and disdain for Hindu opponents, was a risk that could damage the Hindu-Muslim unity of that time. Their educational mission focused on promoting shared nationhood rather than religious identity. Before 1914, Aligarh University's history curriculum emphasised English and European history. To these scholars, studying Western history seemed more relevant and beneficial for understanding the modern world.

Muhammad Habib

The shift in perspective began with Muhammad Habib, the first major Indian Muslim historian to seriously engage with medieval Muslim India. Educated at Oxford, he adopted a bold and critical approach. Habib challenged the romanticised view of Mahmud of Ghazni, perceiving him not as a saint or religious hero but as morally bankrupt and driven by greed rather than faith. His plundering of temples was not sanctioned by Islamic law, and his actions, cloaked in the rhetoric of *jihad*, were fundamentally about loot and conquest.

In his introduction to a reprint of *Elliot and Dowson's History of India* (1952), Habib drew on historical materialism adapted for the Indian context. He emphasised that revolutions, whether technological or ideological, have been the engines of human progress. In this view, the agents of history were the exploited classes such as peasants and workers. Habib opined that early Turkish Muslim rule was revolutionary. The Ghorian Turks overthrew the old thakur elite and empowered urban workers, who

had previously been excluded from city life due to caste restrictions. He even credits this 'urban revolution' with Indian resistance against Mongol invasions. Later, under Alauddin Khalji, he claims there was a "rural revolution" that uplifted lower-caste cultivators and dismantled caste privileges, producing a society that the *Manusmriti* would have abhorred.

K.M. Ashraf

K.M. Ashraf's work *Life and Conditions of the People of Hindustan 1200-1500* (1935) provides a detailed and grounded study of social life in the Delhi Sultanate. Ashraf examined the lives of rulers and commoners alike, nobles, artisans, cultivators, and slaves, paying close attention to their living standards, habits, food, clothing, and entertainment. He is considered to have overlooked political, religious, and administrative themes. Ashraf emphasised shared economic experiences across religious lines, portraying society in terms of "haves" and "have-nots" rather than Hindus and Muslims. He did not perceive the coming of Islam as a transformative cultural revolution. According to Peter Hardy, Ashraf's work lacks a sense of historical dynamism. Rather than narrating change and movement, it resembles an analytical dissection of a still, lifeless society.

Muhammad Nazim

Muhammad Nazim's *The Life and Times of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni* (1931) adopts a more traditional, defensive stance. Nazim aimed to clear Mahmud of accusations of religious fanaticism, arguing that Mahmud's campaigns were driven not by religious zeal but by political ambition. According to Nazim, Mahmud never demolished temples in peacetime, implying that his actions were political, not religious. He further posits that Mahmud treated Hindus not as enemies of faith but as imperial subjects. Nazim's work lacks engagement with the larger socio-economic or religious contexts and presents



a fragmented historical account.

Ishtiaq Husain Qureshi

In *The Administration of the Sultanate of Delhi* (1942), Ishtiaq Husain Qureshi offers a picture of the Sultanate that blends idealism with strong communal overtones. Qureshi mentions the Islamic nature of the Sultanate more than its Indian context, portraying it as a welfare state committed to justice, tolerance, and the public good. While arguing that Hindus were well treated under Muslim rule, Qureshi places the blame for social separation on Hindu exclusiveness. He cites examples of cross-religious interactions to argue that Muslims were free of racial prejudice. Qureshi's depiction lacks critical distance and tends to present an idealised view of Muslim rule. It suggested it outshone Hindu governance in terms of tolerance and social cohesion.

Zahir ud-din Faruki

Faruki's *Aurangzeb and His Times* (1935) is a direct response to Sir Jadunath Sarkar's critical portrayal of the Mughal emperor. Faruki depicts Aurangzeb as the protector of Islam at a time when Akbar's policies had diluted its essence. He argues that political necessity, not religious zeal, led Aurangzeb to destroy temples and impose the *jizya*. Faruki's apologetic tone reflects the influence of earlier Muslim reformers like Amir Ali, whose *Spirit of Islam* had similarly sought to redeem Islamic history in India from colonial distortions. Faruki turns the tables on critics by suggesting that it was the Hindus who antagonised Aurangzeb, not the other way around. His narrative makes the emperor's harsh measures appear justified by political realism.

The Nationalist School of historiography sought to reclaim the historical agency of Indians and portray the achievements of the country before and during colonial rule. However, the works produced under

this approach were not always free of contradiction or tension, especially in the case of some Muslim historians writing in the context of the 1930s.

S.M. Jaffar

A prominent historian associated with this period is S.M. Jaffar, whose book *The Mughal Empire from Babur to Aurangzeb* (1936) illustrates what historian Peter Hardy called an 'unresolved tension between Islam and Indian nationalism' among some South Asian Muslims of the 1930s. While Jaffar clearly expressed his belief in Indian nationalism, his religious identity often overshadowed it. Hardy suggests that if Jaffar were forced to choose, his writings indicate he would identify as a Muslim first. Jaffar criticised what he termed the 'false history' that, in his view, contributed to disunity and communal tension in India. He sought to provide what he considered a more accurate representation of Mughal policy, particularly that of Akbar and Aurangzeb.

In Jaffar's interpretation, Akbar was a liberal nationalist. His *Din Ilahi* was, to Jaffar, not a sincere religious belief but rather a politically motivated construct, a calculated attempt to unify diverse communities of India under a common platform. Jaffar viewed it as a universal code dressed up as religion, meant to appeal to Hindus, Muslims, Christians, and Zoroastrians alike. However, he was skeptical of Akbar's motives, suggesting that Akbar concealed his Islamic identity and that his adoption of non-Islamic practices was merely expedient. Jaffar's tone is occasionally sarcastic, as when he explained Akbar's ban on garlic, onions, and wearing beads as practices not of apostasy but of personal preference.

When discussing Aurangzeb, Jaffar was more sympathetic. He claimed that the Mughal emperor was generally tolerant, though less so than Akbar or Dara Shikoh. However, according to Jaffar, Aurangzeb's

K.M. Panikkar (1895–1963)

Sardar K.M. Panikkar was a thinker, scholar, diplomat and a historian. Panikkar's early work, *Sri Harsha of Kanauj* (1922), written while he was teaching at Aligarh University, reflects his fascination with enlightened rulers in Indian history. In this study, he presented Harsha as a model ruler, wise and capable, deserving of a place among the greatest rulers of India. In *The Origin and Evolution of Kingship in India* (1938), a lecture series for the Baroda State, Panikkar directly challenged the Eurocentric assumption that India lacked political thought. He argued that state and kingship were deeply rooted in ancient Indian traditions. He countered Western narratives that dismissed such intellectual traditions as alien to Indian soil.

Panikkar also undertook rigorous historical analysis of European colonial interventions in India. His works *Malabar and the Portuguese* and *Malabar and the Dutch* (both published in 1931) form a complementary pair that maps out the evolving European presence on India's west coast between the sixteenth and eighteenth centuries. In *India and the Indian Ocean* (1945), he argued that the subjugation of India began only after it lost command over the seas in the early sixteenth century. He emphasised that the future security of India and its historical agency lay in controlling oceanic power. This perspective placed India within a larger regional and maritime context, which had long been overlooked in traditional historical writing.

Panikkar's *Geographical Factors in Indian History* (1955) stressed the foundational role of geography in influencing both internal policies and external relations. He drew attention to the significance of physical features such as the Himalayas and the Indian Ocean. He insisted that any serious



understanding of India's past must consider its geography not as a backdrop but as an active historical agent.

Panikkar's *A Survey of Indian History* (1947) became a classic work and was reprinted multiple times within a few years. It covered five millennia of Indian civilisation in a comprehensive manner. In this work, he confronted several distortions of the colonial era. For instance, he rejected the widely circulated idea, propagated by foreign writers, that India had no unified identity or that its achievements were the result of outside influences. He argued against the Aryan-centric theory that downplayed the indigenous roots of Indian civilisation and noted the limitations of dividing Indian history into rigid religious or dynastic phases. Instead, Panikkar was more concerned with the evolution of Indian civilisation and its cultural continuities. He emphasised the Aryo-Dravidian synthesis that gave rise to Indian civilisation.

However, Panikkar also pointed out moments of cultural decline. He identified a decadence in Hindu society from the ninth to the eleventh centuries, marked by a weakening of resistance to foreign invasions, stagnation in scientific and intellectual life, and declines reflected in literature and art. He supported this view with historical observations, including those of foreign travellers like Al-Biruni. His most widely acclaimed work, *Asia and Western Dominance* (1953), was a critical analysis of European impact on Asia during the so-called Vasco da Gama epoch, spanning from 1498 to 1945. Through this work, he argued that control over sea routes enabled European powers to dominate Asian societies. This dominance affected every facet of life across the continent. Yet Panikkar insisted that Asia's cultural core remained resilient. The spiritual traditions and indigenous cultures of Asian societies ultimately prevailed, even as Western-educated elites led movements

for independence. Panikkar suggested that while political liberation came through modern, often Western means, the cultural foundation that sustained resistance was rooted in traditional beliefs.

Panikkar departed sharply from colonial historiography, yet he also avoided glorification. He used a wide variety of sources, including legends. Some critics have pointed out a Hindu bias in his writings. He was careful to contest blanket claims of Muslim hostility to Hinduism by providing examples of interreligious respect and dialogue during the reigns of rulers like Alauddin Khalji and Firuz Shah Tughlaq.

K.A. Nilakanta Sastri (1892-1975)

K.A. Nilakanta Sastri holds an eminent place in Indian historiography, particularly for his contributions to South Indian history. Sastri wrote around twenty-five books, many of which were authoritative works on South Indian history. While his main field was southern India, he also produced several general histories. These included *The History of India* in three volumes (1950-53), *Life and Culture of the Indian People* (1966), and *An Advanced History of India* (1970), the last two co-authored with G. Sreenivasachari. He wrote chapters for *The Age of the Nandas and Mauryas* (1952), edited by K.A. Nilakanta Sastri himself, and also contributed to the *Comprehensive History of India* series. His *History of Srivijaya* and *South Indian Influences in the Far East*, both published in 1949, earned him international recognition in Southeast Asian studies.

What distinguished Sastri most, however, was his methodical and systematic approach to South Indian history, which was then a neglected field. Earlier historians, particularly those working within colonial frameworks, had overemphasised the North and Sanskrit sources. Sastri shifted this focus to the peninsular region, following the precedent set by his predecessor, Krishnaswami Aiyangar.

Indian Colonies in the Far East (in three volumes), *A History of Bengal*, *Classical Accounts of India*, *An Advanced History of India* (co-authored with K.K. Datta and H.C. Raychaudhuri), *Penal Settlements in the Andamans*, *History of the Freedom Movement* and *The Sepoy Mutiny and the Revolt of 1857*.

Majumdar's academic journey began with his doctoral thesis, *Corporate Life in Ancient India* (1918). In the preface, he mentioned that religion, contrary to popular belief, did not dominate public life in ancient India. His work *Outline of Ancient Indian History and Civilization* (1927) remained in circulation through six editions until 1971. His project on Bengal's early history eventually resulted in the two-volume *A History of Bengal* (1943). His work *Ancient Indian Colonies in the Far East* was criticised for viewing the Southeast Asian regions through a nationalistic and possibly imperialistic lens.

R.C. Majumdar

Majumdar emphasised objective analysis and rejected the idea of shaping historical narratives to fit ideological or philosophical goals. His oft-quoted principle was that the historian's task is "merely to show what really happened." For him, the pursuit of historical truth was the sole legitimate aim of historical research. He warned against writing history based on falsehoods or convenient myths, stressing that only truth could provide a firm foundation for the nation's future. As he put it, "History, divorced from truth, does not help a nation."



Recap

- ◆ Indian nationalist historiography emerged as a response to colonial distortions of India's past.
- ◆ Early nationalist thinkers like Bankim Chandra urged Indians to rediscover their historical heritage.
- ◆ British historians like James Mill and Vincent Smith portrayed India as stagnant, despotic, and incapable of self-rule.
- ◆ Nationalist historians countered these claims using archaeological, literary, and epigraphic sources.
- ◆ Cultural pride and political awakening were deeply connected in shaping nationalist historiography.
- ◆ R.C. Dutt and Dadabhai Naoroji critiqued the economic drain under British rule.
- ◆ K.P. Jayaswal argued that ancient India had republics and constitutional monarchies.
- ◆ R.G. Bhandarkar insisted on using verifiable facts and rejected both colonial biases and uncritical nationalist exaggerations.
- ◆ Radha Kumud Mukherji showcased India's ancient maritime links with Southeast Asia and East Africa.
- ◆ H.C. Raychaudhuri's Political History of Ancient India remains a foundational work in ancient Indian historiography.
- ◆ G.S. Sardesai's works contributed to the political history of the Marathas.
- ◆ Jadunath Sarkar's writings were known for their rigorous methods and impartial analysis.
- ◆ South Indian history was systematically highlighted by K.A. Nilakanta Sastri.
- ◆ Economic history emerged as a serious field thanks to early critiques of colonial economic policy by nationalist historians.
- ◆ Nationalist historiography stressed the historical and cultural unity of India, contrary to colonial narratives of permanent division.
- ◆ K.M. Panikkar introduced geographical and maritime perspectives, arguing that India's decline was tied to losing command over the seas.

- ◆ Shafaat Ahmad Khan advocated objectivity and cautioned against communal or nationalist bias in historical writing.
- ◆ Muhammad Habib adopted Marxist leanings, viewing history through the lens of class struggles and social revolutions.
- ◆ The Nationalist School laid crucial foundations for modern Indian historiography by reclaiming agency and dignity for Indians in their own history.

Objective Questions

1. Who is known for writing the *History of Indian Shipping*?
2. Name the historian associated with *Hindu Polity*.
3. Which British historian claimed India was incapable of self-rule?
4. What theory was proposed by Dadabhai Naoroji?
5. Who wrote *A History of Civilization in Ancient India*?
6. Who led the First Oriental Conference in 1919?
7. Which historian argued for early Indian republics like *gana* and *sangha*?
8. *Fundamental Unity of India* was authored by whom?
9. Who critically examined temple destruction under Mahmud of Ghazni?
10. Who was the founder of Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute?
11. Name the historian who wrote *The Political History of Ancient India*.
12. Who wrote *An Advanced History of India* alongside Majumdar and Datta?
13. Who edited the *Poona Residency Correspondence*?
14. Which historian pioneered South Indian historiography?
15. Who authored *India and the Indian Ocean*?

16. What was the profession of R.C. Dutt besides being a historian?
17. Which work critiqued colonial views on India's maritime capabilities?
18. Who was India's High Commissioner to South Africa and a historian?
19. *Marathi Riyasat* is associated with which historian?
20. Who argued that geography actively shaped Indian history?

Answers

1. Radha Kumud Mukherji
2. K.P. Jayaswal
3. James Mill
4. Drain Theory
5. R.C. Dutt
6. R.G. Bhandarkar
7. K.P. Jayaswal
8. Radha Kumud Mukherji
9. Muhammad Habib
10. R.G. Bhandarkar
11. H.C. Raychaudhuri
12. H.C. Raychaudhuri
13. G.S. Sardesai
14. K.A. Nilakanta Sastri
15. K.M. Panikkar
16. Indian Civil Service officer

17. History of Indian Shipping

18. Shafaat Ahmad Khan

19. G.S. Sardesai

20. K.M. Panikkar

Assignments

1. Critically analyse the methods and approaches of nationalist historians in constructing India's ancient history.
2. Discuss the economic critiques of colonial rule made by nationalist historians like Dadabhai Naoroji and R.C. Dutt. How did these critiques contribute to early economic history writing in India?
3. Examine the contributions of K.P. Jayaswal and R.G. Bhandarkar in challenging the colonial perception of India's political structure.
4. Evaluate how nationalist historiography addressed regional histories and the contributions made by South Indian historians like K.A. Nilakanta Sastri and S. Krishnaswami Aiyangar.
5. Write a comparative essay on the historiographical contributions of Jadunath Sarkar and H.C. Raychaudhuri, focusing on their methodology and approach to medieval and ancient Indian history respectively.

Reference

1. Panikkar, K.M. *A Survey of Indian History*. Aakar Books, 2018
2. Sastri, K.A. Nilakanta. *A History of South India. From Prehistoric Times To the Fall of Vijayanagar*, Oxford, 1997.
3. Sen, S.P. *Historians and Historiography in Modern India*. Institute of Historical Studies, 1973.
4. Sreedharan, E. *Textbook of Historiography: 500 BC to AD 2000*. Orient BlackSwan, 2004.



Suggested Reading

1. Bajaj, Satheesh K. *Recent Trends in Historiography*. Anmol Publications, 1998.
2. Dutt, R. C. *The Economic History of India*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1902.
3. Jayaswal, K. P. *Hindu Polity: A Constitutional History of India in Hindu Times*. Calcutta: Butterworth & Co., 1924.
4. Majumdar, Ramesh C., editor. *The History and Culture of the Indian People*. 11 vols., Bombay: Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, 2nd ed., 1964.
5. Mukherji, Radha Kumud. *Fundamental Unity of India*. London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1914.
6. Mukherji, Radha Kumud. *History of Indian Shipping*. London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1912.
7. Raychaudhuri, H. C. *Political History of Ancient India: From the Accession of Parikshit to the Extinction of the Gupta Dynasty*. 7th ed., Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1972.
8. Sarkar, Jadunath. *History of Aurangzib*. 5 vols., Calcutta: M. C. Sarkar & Sons, 1920–1924.



UNIT

Marxist Approach to Indian History

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ comprehend the fundamental principles of Marxist historiography and how it applies to Indian history;
- ◆ examine the seminal works and contributions of pioneering Marxist historians, with particular focus on their methodological innovations and interpretative frameworks;
- ◆ analyse how material conditions, class struggles, and economic structures influenced historical developments in the Indian context, moving beyond political and elite-centred narratives;
- ◆ compare Marxist interpretations with other historiographical traditions such as nationalist and colonial schools.

Prerequisites

Marxist historiography necessitates a conceptual grounding in the Marxian theory of history, particularly the dialectical materialist method, which interprets history as a dynamic process driven by the contradictions between material forces and social relations of production. The evolution of Marxist historiography in India emerged in response to both colonial historiographical paradigms and nationalist historiographical traditions that tended to prioritise political narratives of rulers, battles, and elite figures.

Pioneering historians such as D.D. Kosambi used archaeological evidence. R.S. Sharma further extended this critique by analysing the systemic origins of

caste-based inequality and agrarian modes of production, while Romila Thapar fundamentally questioned teleological conceptions of Indian society as unchanging or ahistorical, with a focus on social formations. Later, Bipan Chandra and Irfan Habib shifted the focus towards colonialism's economic structures, examining the exploitation of India's agrarian economy and the impoverishment of workers and peasants under British rule. These Marxist historians redefined the scope of historical inquiry by placing the lived experiences and struggles of ordinary people at the centre of historical analysis. Marxist historiography is not merely an alternative narrative but a methodologically rigorous, politically conscious practice of writing history that challenges dominant epistemologies and seeks to uncover the structural forces underlying historical change. These historians believed history is also about the daily struggles and lives of ordinary people, rather than the history of rulers and battles.

Keywords

Historiography, Dialectical Materialism, Modes of Production, Class Conflict, Asiatic Mode of Production, Caste System, Feudalism, Urban Decay

Discussion

6.4.1 The Marxist Phase in Indian Historiography

After India gained independence, a new way of writing history began to emerge, influenced by both nationalist historians and Marxist ideas. This phase is called the Marxist phase not because all the historians were Marxists by ideology, but because many of them used a materialist interpretation to understand historical events. This means they focused on how economic and social factors shaped history, rather than just political events or individual actions. One of the major thinkers of this phase was D.D. Kosambi, who is considered the pioneer of Marxist historiography in India.

6.4.1.1 D.D. Kosambi

D.D. Kosambi was a historian, mathematician, and Sanskrit scholar whose works

changed how Indian history was studied. His major books, *An Introduction to the Study of Indian History* and *The Culture and Civilization of Ancient India in Historical Outline*, introduced a new method of looking at the past. Kosambi argued that instead of trying to follow the traditional European way of writing history, which required clear timelines and extensive records, historians should focus on understanding how people lived in the past by studying the tools, technologies, and social structures they used. According to Kosambi, human history is shaped by changes in the means and relations of production, in other words, how people produce things (like food or tools) and how they are organised in society. This idea is based on dialectical materialism, a concept from Karl Marx, which explains history as a series of changes driven by economic and social conflicts. Kosambi defined history as

“the presentation, in chronological order, of successive developments in the means and relations of production.”

To understand ancient Indian history, Kosambi used a combination of methods, particularly the comparative method. He combined archaeological evidence with cultural practices, language studies, and fieldwork. For example, he studied old burial practices, tribal traditions, religious customs, and even the use of red pigment in village deities to understand how ancient Indian society evolved. He believed that these cultural “survivals” carried deep historical meanings. Kosambi used his knowledge of Sanskrit, philology, and mathematics to study old texts, coins, and social structures. He compared ancient words across languages to understand how different communities interacted. His field studies in the Deccan region helped him trace the movement of ancient herders and traders, showing how geography and environment influenced history.

One of Kosambi’s important contributions was his explanation of how Indian society moved from tribal organisation to a caste system. He argued that this transformation occurred due to the introduction of plough agriculture. As new agricultural techniques spread, small tribes and clans disintegrated, and a caste-based society emerged as the new social structure. Brahmanical settlements, which brought the Sanskrit language and rituals, helped incorporate local tribes and their customs into the caste system, a process he termed Sanskritisation. Kosambi also believed that myths held clues to understanding early societies. For instance, he interpreted the myth of Pururavas and Urvashi as reflecting early religious practices like sacred marriage and ritual sacrifice. He argued that myths preserved memories of ancient matriarchal societies and that social changes, such as the shift from matrilineal to patrilineal systems, were often concealed in mythological stories. He viewed traditions

like bride-price as remnants from matriarchal times.

Kosambi studied the Indus Valley Civilisation and believed it was one of the earliest examples of the tribe-to-caste transition. He thought the Indus people did not use the plough but practised flood-based farming. According to him, the decline of the Indus Civilisation was caused by Aryan settlers, who destroyed the water system, as symbolised in the Rig Vedic myth of Indra defeating Vrtra. Although Kosambi did not support the idea of an Aryan race, he believed that Aryan-speaking people entered India with better technology, such as iron tools and horses, which helped them dominate and settle in the Ganga Valley. Over time, these settlers mixed with local communities, and their culture became a blend of Aryan and non-Aryan traditions.

Kosambi offered an economic explanation for the rise of new religious movements like Jainism and Buddhism. He believed that as agriculture and trade developed, two new social classes emerged: the *grihapatis* (land-owning peasants) and the *shreshtis* (wealthy traders). These groups sought peace and stability, which older religious practices involving animal sacrifices could not provide. Consequently, they supported religions that preached non-violence (*ahimsa*) and universal ethics. Kosambi argued that the popularity of Jainism and Buddhism was primarily due to the backing of these rising propertied classes rather than support from kings.

However, some of Kosambi’s ideas, such as his views on the Indus Valley or plough agriculture, have been updated with new archaeological findings. Romila Thapar states that his limitations are minor compared to his lasting influence. He did not blindly apply Marxist theory but adapted it thoughtfully to Indian conditions. For instance, he did not fully agree with the Marxist idea of the

Asiatic Mode of Production and made his own interpretations about Indian feudalism. Kosambi's work opened new ways of studying Indian history using a scientific and materialist approach. He blended interdisciplinary methods in his writings.

6.4.1.2 R.S. Sharma

R.S. Sharma was one of the leading historians of post-independence India who adopted the Marxist method to study the past. He focused on understanding how economic and social structures shaped Indian history, especially in ancient times. Through his writings, Sharma examined how inequalities developed in Indian society, how land and labour systems evolved, and how material conditions influenced culture, religion, and politics.

One of Sharma's important works is *Sudras in Ancient India* (1958). In this book, he looked at the condition of the Sudras, people placed at the lowest level in the caste hierarchy, from the Vedic period to the Gupta age. He argued that early Indian society, which was tribal and egalitarian, changed drastically when iron tools allowed large-scale farming. This shift created a class-divided society. To maintain this system, the Sudras were turned into a labour force meant to serve the upper three *varnas* (castes). Sharma explained that their status was enforced not just by law but also by religion and social customs. However, over time, especially by the Gupta period, many Sudras became peasants and began gaining some religious and civic rights. Still, others were pushed into untouchability.

In his famous book *Indian Feudalism* (1966), Sharma argued that early medieval India experienced the growth of a feudal system, similar in some ways to that of medieval Europe. He showed how kings began granting land to Brahmins, temples, and officials. These landowners then collected

revenue from the peasants. The peasants became tied to the land, and their surplus was extracted in various ways, through forced labour, taxes, and rent. Sharma pointed out that this feudal structure led to the decline of trade, towns, and the use of coins. His argument sparked considerable discussion among historians and brought new attention to the study of early Indian society.

In *Urban Decay in India* (1987), Sharma supported his theory of feudalism with archaeological evidence. He demonstrated that many towns flourishing between 200 BCE and 300 CE began to decline after the Gupta period. This decline, according to him, was closely linked to the fall of long-distance trade with regions like China, Rome, and Central Asia. A second wave of decline followed the collapse of Byzantine trade after the 6th century CE. As urban life weakened, land grants and feudal control over rural areas increased.

In another major work, *Material Culture and Social Formations in Ancient India* (1983), Sharma used Marxist ideas to explain how economic changes shaped Indian society. He traced how early Vedic society, based on cattle rearing, transitioned towards settled agriculture in the later Vedic period. With the introduction of iron tools and wet paddy farming, there was a significant increase in agricultural production. This surplus facilitated the growth of towns, the development of trade, and the emergence of large kingdoms. He also noted that new classes emerged, including wealthy landowners, merchants, and labourers, and that religions, like Buddhism, adapted to these changes. For example, Buddhism supported animal protection and money lending because they aligned with the economic interests of the time. Sharma's *Light on Early Indian Society and Economy* (1966) is a collection of essays covering various topics, such as marriage customs, slavery, the caste system, and property rights in early Indian society.

These essays reflect Sharma's consistent focus on how economic forces and material life influenced social structures and practices.

6.4.1.3 Romila Thapar

Romila Thapar is one of India's most respected historians, known for her research on ancient Indian history. She was a professor at Jawaharlal Nehru University and played a major role in developing historical studies there. Thapar follows a Marxist approach, which means she examines how social and economic structures shape history rather than focusing solely on kings and wars. Her first major book, *Asoka and the Decline of the Mauryas* (1961), provided a new interpretation of Emperor Asoka's reign. She argued that Asoka's famous policy of *Dhamma* (often seen as a result of his personal morality) was actually a political necessity. After conquering Kalinga, Asoka needed a way to unite his vast and diverse empire. *Dhamma*, according to Thapar, was a socially responsible way of governance that aimed to maintain peace among different communities. Thapar also explained the fall of the Mauryan Empire, believing that its collapse was due to an over-centralised system that could not survive without a strong ruler like Asoka. There was no national feeling or idea of loyalty to the state, which contributed to its breakdown. In her *History of India: Volume 1* (1966), Thapar reached out to a wider audience, combining political history with cultural and economic developments. She emphasised that changes in politics are often linked to changes in the economy and society. Instead of merely narrating kings and dynasties, she examined how people lived, their farming practices, trade, cities, religion, and art. Thapar argued that culture grows from material conditions, and therefore one must study agriculture, industry, and trade to understand Indian history.

In her book *Ancient Indian Social History* (1978), Thapar examined the lives of people

in ancient India and compared Hindu and Buddhist traditions. According to her, the Hindu tradition was rigid, based on caste and inequality, while Buddhism promoted equality, education, and respect for all people, including women. In another essay, she highlighted how Buddhism was also a form of social protest, as it challenged Brahmanical dominance. She also questioned the common belief that ancient Indian society remained unchanged, demonstrating that there was social mobility, allowing individuals to move up or down the social ladder, especially among elite groups.

Thapar also challenged traditional views about the origins of Aryans and caste. She argued that archaeological evidence did not support the idea of a massive Aryan invasion; rather, small groups may have migrated, bringing the Indo-Aryan language. She suggested that caste might not have originated solely with Aryan dominance but may have roots even in earlier Harappan society. She encouraged historians to use social anthropology to better understand early Indian society. Her book *From Lineage to State* (1984) explained how political states first formed in India, especially in the Ganga Valley. Earlier societies were based on kinship and shared ancestry, which she termed "lineage societies." However, with the advent of iron tools, the rise of agriculture, and the growth of private land ownership, society transformed. A class of wealthy peasants and traders emerged, leading to the development of towns and markets. This new economic base facilitated the rise of states like Magadha and Kosala, which required taxation, administration, and armies. This marked a shift from clan-based societies to organised political states.

In *Interpreting Early India* (1992), Thapar challenged the ideas of the Aryan race and Oriental Despotism. She questioned Marx's concept of the "Asiatic Mode of Production," which portrayed Indian society



as unchanging, village-based, and despotic. She pointed out that archaeological and textual sources indicate the presence of private property, urban life, trade, and even early forms of banking. According to her, Indian society had changed and progressed and was not as static as colonial historians claimed.

Among contemporary historians, Thapar has played a crucial role in promoting evidence-based, critical approaches to India's past. She believes history should be based on solid evidence, not myths or political stories. In her book *Somanatha: The Many Voices of History* (2004), she demonstrated that there is not just one narrative about Mahmud of Ghazni's attack on the Somnath temple. Some Persian writers exaggerated the event, while many Indian texts did not mention it at all. In *The Past Before Us* (2013), Thapar explained that ancient texts can reveal insights about the society, values, and changes of their time, even if they do not always provide exact facts about events. We can learn how people perceive their past,

but we should not treat these narratives as perfect records.

Apart from writing books, Romila Thapar has been an important voice for democracy and freedom in India. She has spoken out against injustice, supported student protests, and defended universities like JNU. In her booklet *Voices of Dissent* (2020), she reminds us that questioning unfair power has always been part of India's history. Her recent book, *Our History, Their History, Whose History?*, published in 2023, reaffirms her lifelong commitment to separating myth from history and stresses the importance of analysing historical narratives through careful questioning of the artefact, author, agenda, and audience. Thapar's work continues to challenge uncritical and politicised uses of history in public debates. Despite facing criticism and personal attacks, Thapar remains steadfast in her belief that a good historian must always rely on proper evidence and question false claims about the past.

Thapar's Important Works

Asoka and the Decline of the Mauryas (1961)
The Past and Prejudice (1975)
Ancient Indian Social History: Some Interpretations (1978)
From Lineage to State: Social Formations of the Mid-First Millennium B.C. in the Ganges Valley (1984)
The Mauryas Revisited (1987)
Interpreting Early India (1992)
History and Beyond (2000)
Early India: From the Origins to AD 1300 (2002)
Śakuntala: Texts, Readings, Histories (2002)
Cultural Pasts: Essays in Early Indian History (2003)
Somanatha: The Many Voices of a History (2004)
The Past before Us: Historical Traditions of Early North India (2013)
The Past as Present: Forging Contemporary Identities Through History (2014)
Voices of Dissent: An Essay (2020)
Our History, Their History, Whose History? (2023)
The Future in the Past: Essays & Reflections (2023)

labour), the way surplus was collected (such as rent or taxes), and how the surplus was distributed. He concluded that medieval Indian society was made up of small producers who worked under pressure, with the state extracting surplus mainly through taxes. These taxes supported a powerful central government and a large urban elite. Habib believed that this social structure was different from European feudalism and formed a unique economic system.

In his essay *Caste and Money in Indian History*, Habib focuses on caste as a major force shaping Indian society. He describes caste as a strict system of dividing labour, which also formed part of the relations of production. According to him, the ruling classes, such as the nobility and zamindars, used this system to exploit the lower classes. Habib views caste not just as a cultural or religious matter but also as an economic tool that helped maintain class dominance. He also pointed out certain problems within Marxist historiography itself. In *Problems of Marxist Historiography*, he criticises those who rigidly follow Marx's ideas without understanding their context. He warns against forcing all societies into fixed historical stages like Primitive Communism, Slavery, and Feudalism. Habib clarifies that Marx did not believe all ideas were merely reflections of economic conditions, challenging overly simplistic interpretations.

One of Habib's most influential works is *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*. In this book, he explains that the main conflict in medieval Indian society was between the state (which represented the ruling class) and the peasants. The Mughal state constantly raised taxes, which harmed both the zamindars and the peasants. This led to rebellions, instability, and ultimately the decline of the Mughal Empire. Habib argues that the empire collapsed not mainly because of religious issues but due to economic

oppression. He shows sympathy for the peasants and focuses on their suffering rather than the actions of the rulers. Habib followed historical cartography by using maps in studying history. His *Atlas of the Mughal Empire* includes detailed maps and notes. He also created maps on ancient Indian themes such as the Indus Valley civilisation and the Mauryan Empire. These works filled a gap in Indian historical writing, where maps had previously not been used much.

Another major project involving Habib was *The Cambridge Economic History of India (Volume 1: 1200-1750)*, which he co-edited with Tapan Chaudhuri. In this volume, Habib wrote about key aspects of India's agrarian economy, such as agricultural production, rural class structure, taxation, and the iqta system (an early form of land revenue management). He estimated that around 85% of the Mughal Empire's population lived in villages, showing how important rural life was to Indian history. Across all his writings, Irfan Habib remains focused on the life of the ordinary person, especially the peasant. He examines how political, economic, and social systems shaped their lives, with a particular emphasis on economic structures. His work gives voice to those often left out of traditional historical accounts, and his Marxist approach helps us understand Indian history from the perspective of class struggle and material realities.

6.4.2 Features of Marxist Historiography

The Marxist phase of Indian historiography brought a new way of looking at history. This change started with D.D. Kosambi, who used the ideas of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels to study Indian history. Instead of simply telling stories of kings and battles, Marxist historians sought to understand how economic and social forces shaped historical developments. They believed that changes

what happened. Irfan Habib, in his book *Interpreting Indian History*, defends the freedom of historians to interpret facts. He reminds us that although facts are important, the historian must make sense of them using reason and context. According to Marxist historians, it is this power of interpretation that makes someone a real historian. Like the nationalist historians before them, Marxist historians also challenged many of the ideas promoted by British and European writers about India. D.D. Kosambi questioned the idea of the “Asiatic Mode of Production,” which many Europeans used to describe India. Marxist historians argued that ancient India had large cities and thriving trade from as early as the 6th century BCE. R.S. Sharma and Romila Thapar showed that there was social mobility in ancient India, where people could change their occupations or move to different places. Thapar also criticised European scholars like Durkheim and Weber, who believed Indian society was static and unchanging.

Kosambi believed that the people of the Indus Valley civilisation used simple tools like harrows, not ploughs. However, Romila Thapar disagrees, arguing that plough agriculture existed even before the Vedic period. Similarly, Sharma stated that Buddhism accepted slavery and supported money-lending to facilitate trade, but Thapar believed that Buddhism was against slavery. These differences demonstrate that even within Marxist historiography, there is room for debate and revision. Kosambi and others offered an economic explanation for why Buddhism and Jainism promoted ahimsa (non-violence). They argued that Vedic sacrifices involved killing a lot of cattle, which was a problem for the new agricultural system in the Ganga Valley. Farmers needed cattle for ploughing, so slaughtering them harmed the economy. According to Kosambi, this pressure helped make the ideas of ahimsa popular. However, some historians question

On Historical Thought and Writing



this view. They argue that it is hard to believe that cattle were killed in such large numbers without harming the economy sooner, or that religious reforms alone could completely stop such practices.

Marxist historians strongly believe in the importance of interpretation. But this freedom must be used responsibly. Historians should not confuse readers with complicated jargon or theoretical terms that are difficult to understand. Romila Thapar is praised for her clarity, while others, like Bipan Chandra and Irfan Habib, are sometimes

Recap

Objective Questions

1. Who is considered the pioneer of Marxist historiography in India?
2. What major concept from Karl Marx did Kosambi use in his historical analysis?
3. What did R.S. Sharma argue about the rise of feudalism in India?
4. Which historian wrote *Asoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*?
5. Who co-edited *The Cambridge Economic History of India (Vol. I)* along with Tapan Ray Chaudhuri?
6. Who wrote *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*?
7. What was Bipan Chandra's major focus in modern Indian history?
8. What term describes the Marxist explanation of history as driven by economic and class conflict?
9. Who believed *Dhamma* was a political strategy rather than just personal morality?

Answers

1. D.D. Kosambi
2. Dialectical Materialism
3. Feudalism developed through land grants and surplus extraction by landlords.
4. Romila Thapar
5. Irfan Habib
6. Irfan Habib
7. Nationalism, colonialism, and communalism
8. Historical Materialism
9. Romila Thapar



Assignments

1. Discuss the contributions of D.D. Kosambi in developing Marxist historiography in India.
2. Analyse R.S. Sharma's interpretation of Indian feudalism.
3. Compare and contrast the approaches of nationalist and Marxist historians in interpreting ancient Indian society.
4. Analyse Romila Thapar's role in reshaping Indian historiography and her emergence as a public intellectual, focusing on her critical approach to the Aryan invasion theory and advocacy for historical objectivity.
5. Examine Irfan Habib's use of Marxist methods to study class formation in medieval India, with specific reference to his analysis of the Mughal agrarian system and the dynamics of class conflict.
6. Read and review Bipan Chandra's book, *On Colonialism*, and critically assess his interpretation of colonialism as an economic system of exploitation, highlighting his use of empirical data.

Reference

1. Kosambi, D.D. *An Introduction to the Study of Indian History*. Popular Prakashan, 1956.
2. Sharma, R.S. *Sudras in Ancient India*. Motilal Banarsidass, 1958.
3. Thapar, Romila. *Asoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*. Oxford University Press, 1961.
4. Habib, Irfan. *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*. Oxford University Press, 1963.
5. Chandra, Bipan. *India's Struggle for Independence, 1857–1947*. Penguin Books, 1988.

Suggested Reading

1. Chandra, Bipan. *Nationalism and Colonialism in Modern India*. Orient Longman, 1979.
2. Habib, Irfan. *Interpreting Indian History*. People's Publishing House, 1994.
3. Kosambi, D.D. *The Culture and Civilization of Ancient India in Historical Outline*. Vikas Publishing, 1965.
4. Sharma, R.S. *Indian Feudalism, c. 300-1200*. Macmillan, 1965.
5. Thapar, Romila. *Ancient Indian Social History: Some Interpretations*. Orient Longman, 1978.
6. Thapar, Romila. *From Lineage to State: Social Formations in the Mid-First Millennium B.C. in the Ganga Valley*. Oxford University Press, 1984.



UNIT

Subaltern Studies

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ define the concept of Subaltern Studies and explain its origins
- ◆ identify the historians and contributions of the Subaltern Studies Group
- ◆ understand how subaltern historiography differs from nationalist, Marxist, and Cambridge schools
- ◆ explain the meaning and scope of the term 'subaltern'
- ◆ analyse how the Subaltern Studies approach reshaped the study of Indian history

Prerequisites

For a long time, the history of India was written mainly from the viewpoint of rulers, British officials, and leaders. The lives of ordinary people like peasants, workers, tribals, Dalits, and women have been largely overlooked. These common people had a crucial role in shaping India's society, culture, and political struggles. In the 20th century, some historians began to question this one-sided way of writing history. They were inspired by the idea of 'history from below' in Britain and the ideas of the Italian thinker Antonio Gramsci. Hence, a group of South Asian scholars formed what we now call the Subaltern Studies Group. Their aim was to recover the lost voices of ordinary people and tell history from their point of view.

In the previous units of this block, you came across the basics of how Indian history has been written so far, especially the ideas of Nationalist, Marxist, and

Colonial schools of historiography. You became familiar with terms such as colonialism, nationalism, class struggle, and elite history. A general understanding of India's colonial past, freedom struggle, and major social movements will also help you comprehend the new way of writing history. This unit will explore the history of India through the eyes of everyday people who influenced the course of the country's history in their own ways.

Keywords

Subaltern, Historiography, Nationalism, Peasant Uprising, Marginalised, Subaltern Studies Group, Elite, Colonial Archive, Resistance

Discussion

6.5.1 Emergence of the Subaltern School of Historiography

Subaltern history is a way of writing history that focuses on the lives and struggles of marginalised people, those often ignored or overlooked in traditional accounts. This idea took shape in the twentieth century, drawing inspiration from the “history from below” approach popular among British cultural historians in the 1960s, such as E. P. Thompson, Raymond Williams, and Eric Hobsbawm. These scholars believed that ordinary people, not just kings, politicians, or elites, also influence and shape history. A group of South Asian historians, influenced by these ideas, formed what became known as the Subaltern Studies Group. Their aim was to present history from the perspective of peasants, workers, tribals, and other oppressed groups, especially in colonial and post-colonial India. This new approach first appeared in 1982 through the publication of a series titled Subaltern Studies, which marked a major shift in Indian historiography.

6.5.1.1 The Nature of Subaltern Historiography

In the context of India, the rise of subaltern studies came at a time when much of the population lived in rural, agrarian settings. Most Indians were peasants, yet their role in history had been neglected. Historians like Partha Chatterjee noted that traditional Marxist classifications of society were not enough to explain Indian realities. Subaltern scholars, therefore, sought to understand history not just in terms of economic class, but also in terms of caste, religion, and everyday practices. They emphasised that the contributions of peasants and tribals, especially during the colonial period, were either overlooked or ignored by previous historians.

Subaltern Studies often have a Marxist tone, focusing on class struggles and resistance against oppression. The revolts and protests were not seen as random outbursts but as deliberate and conscious acts of rebellion against unjust systems. The causes of these revolts were rooted in real hardships, such as exploitation by landlords, moneylenders, corrupt police, and



an unfair legal system. Subaltern historians believe that these acts of resistance played a major role in shaping Indian nationalism, even though mainstream historians often ignored them.

6.5.1.2 The Formation of the Subaltern Studies Group

The Subaltern Studies movement emerged during a time when Indian historiography was undergoing intense debate. On one side were nationalist historians, who focused on leaders and political movements that aimed to build the Indian nation. On the other side was the Cambridge School, which challenged nationalist views and offered an analysis focused on the elites. Then came the Marxist historians, who tried to understand history through class struggle. However, even they were criticised for failing to consider caste, religion, and local cultures as serious historical forces. Subaltern Studies entered this debate by pointing out that all these schools of thought ignored the experiences and actions of the common people.

The word ‘subaltern’ was borrowed from the Italian Marxist thinker Antonio Gramsci, who used it in his Prison Notebooks. Gramsci had to write under strict censorship while in prison and avoided using common Marxist terms like ‘proletariat’. Instead, he used ‘subaltern’ to refer to groups of people who were outside the structures of power, those who were dominated, oppressed, or silenced in society. According to Partha Chatterjee, one of the leading figures in the Subaltern Studies Group, Gramsci’s use of the term helped scholars recognise that Marxist ideas based on class conflict in industrial societies like Britain or Germany did not always suit the more agrarian and caste-based society of countries like India. Hence, the term ‘subaltern’ was more inclusive, covering a wide range of people such as peasants, women, tribals, and other socially and

politically disadvantaged groups.

6.5.1.3 Meaning of ‘Subaltern’

In the Subaltern Studies series, Ranajit Guha, who edited the early volumes, explained the meaning of ‘subaltern’ with reference to the Concise Oxford Dictionary: it means “of inferior rank.” Guha expanded this idea by arguing that subaltern groups include all those who are not part of the ‘elite’; that is, people of lower class, caste, gender, and so on. Over time, the term ‘subaltern’ came to include anyone who was marginalised, regardless of whether their status was due to poverty, ethnicity, gender, or social customs. The goal of Subaltern historians was to recover the voices of these groups and include their experiences in historical writing, which had long focused only on elite perspectives.

6.5.1.4 The Subaltern Studies Series

The Subaltern Studies series started in 1982 and continued until 2005, with Ranajit Guha editing the first six volumes. It was initially planned as a three-volume series but grew much larger due to increasing interest. The series became a major intervention in the way history was written in South Asia. Its contributors included historians like Partha Chatterjee, Gyanendra Pandey, Shahid Amin, and David Hardiman, who wanted to challenge the elite-focused narratives and bring attention to those who had long been pushed to the margins. These scholars collectively shaped a new field of study that focused on “the people from below,” exploring their culture, politics, beliefs, and acts of resistance. By focusing on marginalised groups, this school of thought critiqued all previous schools of history-nationalist, Cambridge, and Marxist, for their failure to fully understand the role of ordinary people in bringing historical change.

6.5.2 Contributions of Subaltern Historiography

The Subaltern Studies group included many important historians such as Ranajit Guha, Partha Chatterjee, David Hardiman, Dipesh Chakrabarty, Shahid Amin, Sumit Sarkar, and others. These scholars developed new ways of writing Indian history by focusing on the experiences of ordinary people, especially those who were ignored by mainstream historical writings. Later, scholars like Gayatri Spivak introduced new ideas on language, representation, and identity into subaltern studies, taking the field in new directions.

Ranajit Guha was one of the most influential members of this group. He edited many volumes of Subaltern Studies and focused especially on the history of Indian peasants between 1783 and 1900. He believed that both colonial and nationalist historians had ignored the contributions of peasants and tribal groups. Guha argued that history had mostly been written by and about elites, while the experiences of the common people were neglected. He called this style of writing “elitist historiography” and challenged it by recovering the voices of the peasants.

According to Guha, both British colonial historians and Indian nationalist historians focused mainly on elite figures like politicians, intellectuals, or wealthy leaders. They ignored the common people’s role in shaping Indian nationalism. Guha argued that Indian nationalism was not just the achievement of a few educated elites. Rather, ordinary people who consist of peasants, workers, and tribals, also contributed significantly. He provided examples like the anti-Rowlatt agitation of 1919 and the Quit India Movement of 1942, which demonstrated that popular protests occurred independently of elite leadership. He asserted that there existed a distinct ‘people’s politics’ that historians must pay attention

to. One of his famous books is *A Rule of Property for Bengal* (1963), which examined the British system of land ownership in Bengal. Another major work, *The Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India* (1983), explored how peasants resisted colonial power and explained that their actions were not simply chaotic rebellions but had deep meaning and organisation. Guha developed new terms like “negation,” “modality,” and “solidarity” to understand the logic behind these uprisings. He also criticised official records and historians who treated peasants as passive victims without minds of their own.

In his essay *The Prose of Counter Insurgency*, Guha demonstrated how historians often ignored the rebels’ own perspectives. He argued that peasant uprisings were usually portrayed as violent and irrational, rather than being seen as forms of conscious protest. He mentioned the case of the Malabar Rebellion and how the colonial authorities treated the indigenous resistance as instances of rebellion. He also noted how the colonial archive recorded the natives as fanatics, devoid of agency. In 2013, he wrote *Some Aspects of the Historiography of Colonial India*, where he again criticised elite-focused nationalist history and emphasised the role of common people in Indian history.

Partha Chatterjee was another thinker in Subaltern Studies, who focused on Indian nationalism and how it was influenced by Western ideas and colonial rule. In his book *Nationalist Thought and the Colonial World* (1986), Chatterjee studied how nationalist ideas changed over time and introduced the concept of a “passive revolution,” which he borrowed from Antonio Gramsci to describe how Indian independence was achieved without a full-scale popular revolution. Chatterjee also explored how elite groups shaped the idea of the Indian nation while leaving out the concerns of



marginalised communities. In *The Nation and its Fragments* (1993), he argued that the creation of the Indian nation was guided more by elite cultural and political visions than by popular involvement.

Shahid Amin, in his famous essay *Gandhi as Mahatma*, explored how peasants saw Gandhi not just as a political leader but as a divine figure. In his book *Event, Metaphor, and Memory*, he studied the 1922 Chauri Chaura incident, where peasants burned a police station during the Non-Cooperation Movement. Amin looked at various sources, including official records, oral histories, and local memory, to understand what actually happened and why. He examined how Gandhi's image spread among the peasants, pointing out how beliefs in miracles and superstition helped build Gandhi's charisma.

Sumit Sarkar, in his work *The Conditions and Nature of Subaltern Militancy*, argued that during the Non-Cooperation Movement in Bengal, the subaltern groups acted independently of their elite leaders. He suggested that these movements had their own political goals and mentalities, different from those of the middle-class leaders. He also noted that the anti-Partition movement of 1905 was mostly led by upper-class Hindus, while the Non-Cooperation Khilafat movement in 1921-22 witnessed widespread public participation.

Dipesh Chakrabarty is a major figure in both Subaltern Studies and post-colonial theory. He co-edited Volume 9 of Subaltern Studies with Shahid Amin and authored several important books, including *Rethinking Working-Class History and Provincializing Europe*. In these works, he examined how Europe has been viewed as the centre of history and modernity, and how this perspective must be challenged when writing histories of colonised regions like India. He argued that subaltern groups should be treated as active subjects of history, not just

as victims or objects.

One of Chakrabarty's main concerns is how European ideas dominate the writing of Indian history. In *Provincializing Europe*, he explains how Europe is often seen as modern and progressive, while India is viewed as backward and traditional, even by Indian scholars themselves. Dipesh Chakrabarty also studied the working conditions of jute mill workers in Calcutta between 1890 and 1940 and highlighted the exploitation and unfair treatment of workers by elites, even within the Communist parties.

Many other works were published in the Subaltern Studies series. For example, **Gyan Pandey** wrote about peasant revolts in Awadh during 1919-22 and how they were connected to the national movement. **David Hardiman** explored tribal movements in Gujarat, such as the Devi movement, and argued that these were genuine expressions of resistance by subaltern communities. **David Arnold** wrote about a series of tribal rebellions in the Gudem and Rampa hill regions of Andhra between 1839 and 1924. He also discussed the Madras famine of 1876-78, criticising earlier historians for focusing only on government responses and not on the suffering and survival efforts of the peasants. **Stephen Henningham** showed that the Quit India Movement of 1942 in Bihar and eastern Uttar Pradesh was not just a nationalist campaign led by elites, but also a grassroots rebellion led by ordinary villagers and workers. **Aravind Das** challenged the view that land reforms in Bihar after independence were elite-driven. He showed that changes like zamindari abolition and the Bhoodan movement happened because of years of pressure from peasant movements. Similarly, **N.K. Chandra** revealed the miserable conditions of agricultural workers in Burdwan.

Ramachandra Guha traced the roots of the Chipko Movement to early forest

protests in Kumaon during British rule. Tribal protests like Jitu Santhal's movement in Malda (1924-32) are also important subjects in subaltern history. Despite sympathy from the middle class, leaders like Jitu were often overshadowed by elite political figures in historical records. **Gautam Bhadra**, in his essay on the 1857 Revolt, criticised both nationalist and Marxist historians for ignoring the role of ordinary rebels. He brought attention to lesser-known figures like Shah Mai, Devi Singh, Gonoo, and Maulvi Ahmadullah Shah, showing that they too had a deep understanding of the political crisis of their time.

Finally, **Gayatri Spivak**, though not directly part of the Subaltern Studies group, made an important contribution through her famous essay *Can the Subaltern Speak?* In it,

she questioned whether the most marginalised people, especially women from colonised societies, can truly be heard in historical writing. She argued that even well-meaning scholars often speak for the subaltern, rather than with them, thus continuing patterns of dominance.

Subaltern Studies has been criticised for its limitations, such as lacking a continuous narrative and sometimes focusing too much on isolated events, but its importance lies in bringing out voices from the margins of society. The value of Subaltern Studies is that it uncovers forgotten stories, documents protests and revolts, and brings human experiences back into history. It fills the gaps in elite-centric histories and shows that common people played an active role in Indian history.

Recap

- ◆ Subaltern Studies focuses on the history of ordinary people like peasants, tribals, workers, and women.
- ◆ It challenges traditional history written by colonial officials, nationalist leaders, and elite scholars.
- ◆ The Subaltern Studies Group formed in 1982 with Ranajit Guha as its founding figure.
- ◆ The term 'Subaltern' means of inferior rank and was borrowed from Antonio Gramsci.
- ◆ Subaltern Studies was inspired by the 'history from below' approach in Britain.
- ◆ It highlighted the gaps in Nationalist, Marxist, and Cambridge School historiography.
- ◆ Ranajit Guha argued that Indian nationalism was not just led by elites but involved mass participation.
- ◆ His book *The Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India* (1983) studied peasant rebellions.

- ◆ Guha criticised colonial records for portraying rebels as violent and irrational.
- ◆ Partha Chatterjee introduced the idea of ‘passive revolution’ in Indian nationalism.
- ◆ In *The Nation and its Fragments*, Chatterjee showed how elites shaped the nation while excluding the masses.
- ◆ Shahid Amin’s *Gandhi as Mahatma* explained how peasants saw Gandhi as a divine figure.
- ◆ Dipesh Chakrabarty criticised the Eurocentric view of history in *Provincializing Europe*.
- ◆ David Hardiman researched tribal movements like the Devi Movement in Gujarat.
- ◆ Gayatri Spivak’s essay *Can the Subaltern Speak?* questioned whether marginalised people can truly be heard.
- ◆ Subaltern Studies used oral histories, folk traditions, and local memory as important historical sources.
- ◆ It revealed how peasant revolts, tribal uprisings, and worker protests shaped Indian history.
- ◆ Critics say the school sometimes focuses too much on isolated local events without broader narratives.
- ◆ Its greatest value lies in bringing forgotten voices into history.

Objective Questions

1. In which year did the Subaltern Studies series begin?
2. When was Ranajit Guha’s famous book *The Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India* published?
3. What does the term ‘Subaltern’ mean?
4. Who authored *Nationalist Thought and the Colonial World*?
5. Which historian wrote *Gandhi as Mahatma*?
6. Which famous essay was written by Gayatri Spivak?

7. What does Dipesh Chakrabarty's book *Provincializing Europe* critique?
8. What type of histories was the Subaltern Studies Group critical of?
9. From whom was the concept of 'passive revolution' borrowed?
10. Who studied the Chauri Chaura incident through oral histories?
11. Which scholar worked on tribal movements in Gujarat, within a subaltern perspective ?
12. What did Ranajit Guha refer to traditional history writing as? Who edited the first six volumes of the Subaltern Studies series?
13. Who edited the first six volumes of the Subaltern Studies series?
14. Which historian introduced the idea of "passive revolution" in the context of Indian nationalism?
15. In which famous essay did Ranajit Guha criticise the way peasant uprisings were portrayed in colonial records?

Answers

1. 1982
2. 1983
3. Of inferior rank
4. Partha Chatterjee
5. Shahid Amin
6. Can the Subaltern Speak?
7. Eurocentric history writing
8. Elite-centric histories
9. Antonio Gramsci
10. Shahid Amin
11. David Hardiman
12. Elite historiography

13. Ranajit Guha
14. Partha Chatterjee
15. *The Prose of Counter-Insurgency*

Assignments

1. Discuss the emergence and significance of the Subaltern Studies Group in Indian historiography.
2. Explain the meaning of the term 'subaltern' with reference to Antonio Gramsci and Ranajit Guha.
3. Analyse the role of peasant uprisings and tribal movements as portrayed in subaltern historiography.
4. Examine the contributions of Ranajit Guha and Dipesh Chakrabarty to the Subaltern Studies series.
5. Evaluate the limitations and criticisms of the Subaltern Studies approach.

Reference

1. Amin, Shahid. *Event, Metaphor, Memory: Chauri Chaura 1922-1992*. University of California Press, 1995.
2. Chakrabarty, Dipesh. *Provincializing Europe: Postcolonial Thought and Historical Difference*. Princeton University Press, 2000.
3. Chatterjee, Partha. *Nationalist Thought and the Colonial World: A Derivative Discourse?* Zed Books, 1986.
4. Guha, Ranajit. *The Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India*. Oxford University Press, 1983.
5. Guha, Ranajit and Gayatri Chakravorty Spivak (Ed.), *Selected Subaltern Studies*, 1989.
6. Spivak, Gayatri Chakravorty. "Can the Subaltern Speak?" *Marxism and the Interpretation of Culture*, edited by Cary Nelson and Lawrence Grossberg, University of Illinois Press, 1988.

Suggested Reading

1. Arnold, David. *Colonizing the Body: State Medicine and Epidemic Disease in Nineteenth-Century India*. University of California Press, 1993.
2. Chakrabarty, Dipesh, “Subaltern Studies and Postcolonial Historiography”, *Nepantla: Views from South*, Vol.1, Issue 1, 2000.
3. Guha, Ramachandra. *The Unquiet Woods: Ecological Change and Peasant Resistance in the Himalaya*. Oxford University Press, 1990.
4. Hardiman, David. *The Coming of the Devi: Adivasi Assertion in Western India*. Oxford University Press, 1987.
5. Ludden, David (Ed.), *Reading Subaltern Studies: Critical History, Contested Meaning, and the Globalisation of South Asia*, Permanent Black, Delhi, 2001.
6. Prakash, Gyan, “Subaltern Studies as Postcolonial Criticism”, *The American Historical Review*, , Vol. 99, No. 5, 1994.
7. *Subaltern Studies*, 12 volumes, (1982-2005).
8. Sarkar, Sumit. *Modern India: 1885-1947*. Pearson Education India, 2014.



UNIT

Environmental History

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- identify the growth of Environmental Historiography as an interdisciplinary trend in Indian historical writing
- explain the impact of colonial and postcolonial environmental policies on people and nature.
- familiarise themselves with the environmental movements and historians in India

Prerequisites

When we think of history, we often think about the stories related to kings, battles, empires, or perhaps revolutions. But have you ever considered the history of forests, rivers, animals, and the geographical areas that surrounded both kings and common people? Who writes about them? And how has nature shaped, and been shaped by, human societies throughout history? This is where Environmental History comes in. It is a relatively recent but important trend in historical writing that focuses on the relationship between human beings and the natural world. In India, this branch of historiography began to develop seriously in the late 20th century, especially from the 1980s onwards. In this unit, we will explore how Environmental Historiography in India grew as a distinct area of study, what themes it covers, how it examines both colonial and postcolonial environmental policies, and how it incorporates people's movements and ecological issues into the narrative of history.

Keywords

Ecology, Anthropocene, Environmental History, Historiography, Colonial Policies, Guha-Grove Debate, Exploitation, Development Projects, Environmental Movements

Discussion

Environmental history began gaining recognition as an academic field during the 1960s and 1970s, in response to growing environmental concerns such as deforestation, pollution, and the consequences of industrialisation. In the United States and Europe, historians started studying topics like land use, forest management, water control, and the environmental impact of colonialism. This trend soon reached India, where historians began asking how colonial rule, modern development projects, and local ecological knowledge shaped the subcontinent's environment. By the 1980s, Indian scholars increasingly turned their attention to these themes.

6.6.1 Origin and Development of Environmental History as a Discipline

Environmental history, as a critical field of historical inquiry, examines the dynamic and reciprocal interactions between human societies and the natural environment over time. Its central concern lies in understanding not merely how human activities have altered the environment, but how natural forces, ranging from climate variations to ecological shifts, have profoundly shaped human civilisation, economic structures, and cultural practices. The intellectual roots of this discipline can be traced back to George Perkins Marsh's seminal work *Man and Nature* (1864), which stands as one of the earliest systematic efforts to analyse the destructive impact of human exploitation

on ecological systems. Marsh argued that deforestation, soil erosion, and reckless land use were not isolated phenomena, but global processes with profound historical consequences, thereby positioning the environment as an active agent in historical transformation.

The modern articulation of Environmental History, however, emerged in the United States during the 1960s, amidst rising public awareness of ecological degradation and the advent of environmental movements. Rachel Carson's *Silent Spring* (1962) catalysed public and academic engagement by exposing the deleterious effects of chemical pesticides on ecosystems and human health, thereby bridging scientific knowledge and moral responsibility. Following this, Roderick Nash's *Wilderness and the American Mind* (1967) formally introduced the term 'environmental history', focusing on the evolving American attitudes towards wilderness and the genesis of the conservation movement. Alfred Crosby's concept of the 'Columbian Exchange', as elaborated in *The Columbian Exchange: Biological and Cultural Consequences of 1492* (1972), further expanded the scope of environmental history, highlighting the global ecological transformations instigated by European colonisation, including the transfer of crops, animals, diseases, and environmental practices.

In the European and Latin American contexts, environmental historians investigated landscapes shaped by agriculture, industrialisation, and colonial resource



extraction, often highlighting the exploitative relationships between metropolitan powers and colonised ecologies. In South Asia, environmental history developed a distinctive trajectory, focusing less on the idealised wilderness and more on the entangled processes of agrarian economy, caste dynamics, colonial state policies, and water management systems. Richard Grove's *Green Imperialism* (1995) critically examined how European colonial powers sought to control tropical ecologies, deploying conservation as a rationale to discipline both nature and colonial subjects. This underscored a profound ideological dimension whereby environmental knowledge and management became intertwined with imperial power structures and civilising missions.

William Cronon's influential work *Changes in the Land* (1983) offered a paradigmatic intervention, challenging the conventional dichotomy between 'natural' and 'cultural' landscapes. He argued that the New England environment had been fundamentally transformed by colonial settlers not simply through technological domination, but via profound ecological reinterpretations of land use, ownership, and meaning. Cronon demonstrated that ecosystems were not pristine wilderness but products of ongoing human interaction, contestation, and adaptation. Similarly, Donald Worster proposed that environmental history could be methodologically divided into three complementary strands: material environmental history, which investigates ecological transformations through resource use; cultural environmental history, which examines how nature has been represented and imagined; and political environmental history, which interrogates how power structures and state policies have regulated ecological relations.

As we discussed, Environmental History is a field of study within history that looks at how human societies have

interacted with nature over time. It seeks to understand the ways in which people have influenced the environment and, in turn, how the environment has shaped human lives and cultures. According to historian Donald Worster, environmental history examines the "interaction between human cultures and the environment in the past." Similarly, J. R. McNeill defines it as "the history of the mutual relations between humankind and the rest of nature." This branch of history began to take proper shape in the United States during the 1960s, a period when environmental awareness was growing and public movements against pollution and ecological destruction were gaining momentum. The American historian Roderick Nash is credited with using the term 'environmental history' for the first time in his classic work *Wilderness and the American Mind*, which explores how attitudes towards nature in America evolved over centuries and led to the formation of conservation movements.

In Europe, historians examined landscapes shaped by centuries of agriculture, deforestation, and industrialisation. In Latin America, scholars focused on plantation economies, colonial resource extraction, and indigenous resistance to environmental change. In Asia, particularly South Asia, environmental history developed its own character because the central questions here were different. The emphasis was less on untouched wilderness and more on how agrarian societies, caste structures, colonial policies, and water management shaped the environment and the livelihoods dependent on it.

This global expansion also led environmental historians to adopt an interdisciplinary approach, drawing upon history, geography, ecology, anthropology, archaeology, and environmental science. Scholars began using not only written archives but also oral traditions, folklore,

As the discipline developed, Donald Worster suggested that environmental history could be explored through three broad areas. The first is material environmental history, which studies the natural world itself, forests, rivers, animals, land, and water, and examines how human societies have used, altered, and sometimes damaged these resources. The second is cultural environmental history, which focuses on how people have imagined, represented, and valued nature in their thoughts, beliefs, religious traditions, and myths. The third is political environmental history, which looks at how states, rulers, and governments have made policies, laws, and regulations to manage, exploit, or conserve the environment. However, historians like Donald Worster, Richard Grove, and Mark Elvin have debated how best to understand the relationship between humans and nature. Some environmental historians take a materialist or structuralist view, giving priority to economic and social structures in shaping how humans interact with their surroundings. Others focus more on cultural perspectives, that is how cultural ideas and perceptions of nature are driving forces in history.

arrived? These questions challenge older assumptions and remind us to rethink the division between what is considered ‘natural’ and what is ‘man-made.’ Worster himself believed that we cannot separate nature and culture too rigidly. He argued for an approach that studies both how human culture has shaped the natural world and how nature, through floods, droughts, epidemics, and other forces, has influenced human history. Modern historians like Caroline Ford have added that the divide between ‘nature’ and ‘culture’ is often blurred, and that understanding these nuances is crucial when studying environmental history.

In recent years, environmental historians in India have started engaging with the concept of the Anthropocene. The term was originally coined by biologist Eugene Stoermer in the 1980s and was popularised by atmospheric chemist Paul Crutzen in 2000. It describes a proposed new geological epoch in which human activities have fundamentally altered the planet's climate, ecosystems, and geology. However, unlike earlier geological periods, the Anthropocene emphasises human-made changes through deforestation, industrialisation, mass agriculture, urbanisation, and carbon emissions at a global and planetary scale. While natural scientists approach it by seeking clear physical evidence in the Earth's layers, historians treat it as an interdisciplinary idea, connecting human history with environmental change, colonial expansion, industrial capitalism, and the emergence of ecological crises.



s, transformations didn't affect everyone
n equally. Marginalised communities were
al often the first to suffer the effects of
al ecological loss, yet their struggles were
5 rarely documented.

In India, the growth of environmental historiography as a recognised area of study began during the 1980s. Although historians had occasionally referred to environmental factors in earlier works, it was during this decade that the environment began to be studied as an independent subject within historical research. This shift was partly inspired by global trends, as well as by growing environmental concerns within India itself. Issues like deforestation, water shortages, and displacement caused by large development projects were making headlines, and grassroots movements like the Chipko Movement were gaining national and international attention. Indian historians began to realise that environmental changes were not just background events in history; they were central to understanding social, economic, and political developments.

Environmental historiography in India emerged alongside other alternative historical approaches such as Subaltern studies, feminist history, and people's history. Like these movements, it challenged the dominance of elite-centric narratives by focusing on the experiences of marginalised groups like peasants, tribal communities, and forest dwellers. Scholars began to question how ordinary people interact with their natural surroundings. How were their lives shaped by forests, rivers, animals, and changing climates? And how did state policies and commercial interests impact those relationships? According to scholar Michael H. Fisher, the writing of environmental history in India has gone

On Historical Thought and Writing

through three distinct waves. The first wave involved local activists and early historians who documented people's resistance to environmental exploitation. For example, studies of the Chipko Movement fall into this category. The second wave involved academic historians who added deeper historical analysis to environmental studies. These scholars looked at how ecological knowledge developed, how governments managed natural resources, and how environmental policies evolved. Madhav Gadgil, Ramachandra Guha, and Sumit Guha focused much of their studies on the colonial period and its effects on the environment. The third wave of environmental history analyses the role of powerful institutions and individuals in shaping environmental discourse. These historians ask questions about whose interests are served by dominant environmental ideas and narratives, and who gets excluded in the process. Their writings cover a variety of issues such as climate change, ecology, wildlife protection, tribal rights, water management, technology, and the influence of colonial rule on India's environment. Through their works, they demonstrate how forests, rivers, animals, and human communities have been deeply interconnected, and how environmental policies have often reflected the interests of ruling elites rather than local communities.

While these scholars and activists have largely addressed modern environmental concerns, it is equally important to consider how ecological changes shaped India's earlier history. Irfan Habib examined environmental changes during medieval India in his book *Man and Environment: The Ecological History of India*. He discussed how climate and geographical changes, such as shifts in the coastline of Gujarat, influenced human activity. His work reflects the deep interconnection between humans, animals, and plant life.

At the same time, environmental historians in India began to research how colonial forest policies, hunting regulations, and natural resource extraction had transformed the geography and affected native populations. Their studies revealed the ecological consequences of British colonial rule and post-independence development policies. Rohan D'Souza's *Drowned and Dammed: Colonial Capitalism and Flood Control in Eastern India* (2006) shows how British flood control in Bengal's Damodar Valley disrupted the natural flood cycle, harming both farming and the environment. Built to protect colonial profits, embankments and dams caused more severe floods or droughts, breaking the old balance between rivers and people. Similarly, Sumit Guha's *Ecologies of Empire in South Asia, 1400–1900* explores how both the Mughal and British empires tried to control land, forests, rivers, and animals for their own benefit. He shows how empires reshaped local knowledge, moved people and species, and tried to dominate nature but local communities often resisted, holding on to their sacred places, hunting grounds, and traditional ways of life.

The intellectual foundations of environmental historiography in India were profoundly shaped by the colonial state's systematic interventions in forest management and resource control. Pioneering works such as Dietrich Brandis's *Indian Forestry* (1897) institutionalised the management of Indian forests, introducing the scientific forestry model that prioritised timber extraction and revenue generation for the colonial state. Alongside Brandis, Berthold Ribbentrop's *Forestry in British India* (1900) detailed the administrative frameworks through which forests were mapped, categorised, and regulated, largely ignoring indigenous ecological knowledge and the customary rights of tribal communities. E P Stebbing's *The Forests of India* (1922) reinforced this

vision, providing a comprehensive account of forest types and management practices from a colonial perspective. These early colonial histories framed Indian forests primarily as economic resources serving the imperial enterprise, disregarding their socio-cultural and ecological significance within local communities.

The emergence of environmental historiography as an autonomous discipline in India gained momentum in the 1980s, inspired by global trends and local ecological concerns such as deforestation, large-scale displacement, and grassroots movements like the Chipko Movement. A critical milestone in this intellectual shift was the publication of Madhav Gadgil and Ramachandra Guha's *This Fissured Land* (1992). Their work challenged elite-centric environmental narratives by analysing how colonial state policies, agrarian systems, caste hierarchies, and local ecological practices intersected to shape India's environmental history. Gadgil and Guha foregrounded the interactions between local knowledge systems and state-sponsored conservation efforts, critiquing the colonial construction of Indian nature as a resource to be controlled, while revealing the fissures created in social and ecological relations.

David Arnold's *The Tropics and the Travelling Gaze* (1993) added critical insight into the colonial imagination of India's environment. He demonstrated how European observers depicted Indian landscapes as both exotic and perilous, justifying intrusive interventions on the grounds of scientific management and public health. The framing of the Indian tropics as unhealthy and disorderly underpinned colonial policies aimed at controlling both nature and population. Building on this discourse, Mahesh Rangarajan's *Fencing the Forest* (1996) critically examined colonial forest conservation practices in Central India, showing how the state's legal

and administrative measures dispossessed forest dwellers and criminalised traditional forest use. Rangarajan's analysis underscored the political dimensions of ecological management, exposing the colonial project's deep entanglement with processes of dispossession and social exclusion.

In the domain of botanical and medical imperialism, Kavita Philip's research on plant transfers highlighted how the transplantation of economically strategic species, such as the cinchona tree used in quinine production, served imperial medical and economic objectives. These plant transfers were not isolated scientific endeavours but part of a larger colonial strategy to control and exploit the natural world for commercial and administrative advantage. Complementing this, Richard Grove's *Green Imperialism* (1995) argued that colonial environmentalism emerged from the concerns of naturalists, surgeons, and administrators who constructed desiccationism, the belief that deforestation and mismanagement of tropical climates led to ecological degradation and disease. Grove revealed that early environmentalist discourses did not emerge from ecological altruism but were deeply rooted in imperial anxieties about climate, health, and economic productivity, shaping a knowledge system that legitimised colonial intervention.

6.6.2.1 Environmental Changes in Colonial and Post-Colonial India

British colonial rule transformed India's natural environment as much as it changed the subcontinent's socio-political, economic, and cultural environment. One of the primary concerns of the colonial government was the exploitation of natural resources to serve the needs of the British Empire. Forests were among the first to face this pressure. They cleared vast stretches of woodland for timber, especially for building railway sleepers, shipbuilding, and construction

projects. The British introduced laws like the Indian Forest Act of 1865, later revised in 1878 and 1927, which declared large areas of forest as government property. These laws severely restricted the rights of tribal and peasant communities, who had traditionally used forest resources for firewood, grazing, hunting, and gathering medicinal plants. By controlling access to forests, the colonial state fundamentally altered the relationship between communities and their environment.

Colonial environmental policies were also closely tied to the economic and military priorities of the empire. Large-scale commercial plantations of tea, coffee, rubber, and indigo were established, leading to further deforestation and the displacement of local populations. Hunting regulations were introduced, but mainly to protect species valued by British officials for sport hunting, rather than for ecological balance. India's iconic species, such as tigers and elephants, were often hunted for trophies, while local communities were fined or punished for subsistence hunting. Furthermore, major irrigation projects and canal systems were built to increase agricultural productivity, but they also disrupted traditional water management systems and altered local ecosystems.

After India gained independence in 1947, the newly formed government focused much on rapid industrialisation and large-scale development projects as a means to modernise the nation. Large dams, steel plants, and urban infrastructure were considered symbols of national progress. Jawaharlal Nehru famously called dams the “temples of modern India.” However, these projects often came at a heavy environmental and social cost. In order to make the country progress through industrial expansion, forests were cleared, rivers were dammed, and wildlife habitats were destroyed. Moreover, these projects displaced thousands of people, especially

from tribal and rural communities. However, their rehabilitation or the environmental consequences of such ventures were largely overlooked.

In response to these challenges, India witnessed the rise of several strong environmental movements in the latter half of the 20th century. One of the earliest was the Chipko Movement in the 1970s, where villagers in Uttarakhand physically hugged trees to prevent them from being cut down by contractors. This was followed by the Silent Valley Movement in Kerala, which successfully opposed a hydroelectric project that threatened one of the last remaining tropical rainforests in India. Another struggle was the Narmada Bachao Andolan, which began in the 1980s to protest against a series of dams on the Narmada River that would submerge thousands of villages and displace lakhs of people. These movements not only reflect the environmental risks of unplanned development but also brought issues like displacement, ecological rights, and sustainable development into national conversations.

6.6.2.2 Environment Historians in India and Their Contributions

The growth of environmental historiography in India owes much to the work of a handful of pioneering scholars who brought ecological concerns into mainstream historical writing. Ramachandra Guha and Madhav Gadgil examined the relationship between ecological change and social conflict, especially how colonial policies impacted local communities. Mahesh Rangarajan has focused on the politics of wildlife conservation and the social consequences of hunting laws, while Vandana Shiva has highlighted the connections between environmental degradation, women's rights, and indigenous knowledge systems.



Ramachandra Guha

Professor Ramachandra Guha has made foundational contributions to the field of environmental history, particularly through his emphasis on subaltern perspectives, indigenous ecological thought, and transnational environmental movements. His work has expanded the scope of environmental historiography by situating India within global debates while simultaneously recovering neglected intellectual and activist traditions from within the subcontinent. Guha is interested in environmental history, historiography, and ecological consciousness in the Global South. He has held prestigious academic appointments at institutions such as Yale University, Stanford University, the London School of Economics, and the University of Oslo. Over the course of his career, he has produced a substantial body of work that intersects history, sociology, environmental studies, and public policy. Ramachandra Guha has focused on the social and environmental history of forests in regions like Uttarakhand. His study of the Chipko Movement, where villagers, especially women, hugged trees to protect them from being cut down, is one of the earliest examples of environmental resistance in India. Some of his important works include *The Unquiet Woods* (1990), *Environmentalism: A Global History* (1999), and *How Much Should a Person Consume?* (2006).

Guha's *The Unquiet Woods: Ecological Change and Peasant Resistance* in the Himalaya is widely regarded as a pioneering text in Indian environmental history. It provides a detailed analysis of the Chipko Movement, a grassroots forest conservation movement in the Garhwal Himalayas during the 1970s. He examined the history of forest policies in colonial India and their impact on local communities, especially in the Himalayan region. Guha's work not only documented environmental degradation

under British rule but also highlighted popular resistance, such as peasant protests against forest laws. Through this study, Guha challenged prevailing environmental narratives by foregrounding the role of local communities, especially rural peasants and women, in resisting ecological degradation. The work introduced the concept of 'livelihood environmentalism', distinguishing it from the 'aesthetic' or 'full-belly environmentalism' characteristic of affluent, industrialised societies. According to Guha, in regions such as India, environmental movements are closely tied to survival and subsistence concerns rather than leisure or ecological aesthetics. His analysis focused on how environmental degradation directly impacts marginalised communities dependent on natural resources for their livelihoods.

In *Speaking with Nature: The Origins of Indian Environmentalism*, Guha challenges the Eurocentric assumption that environmental consciousness emerged exclusively in the West during the twentieth century. Instead, he traces an intellectual tradition of environmental thought within India, long before the global environmental movement gathered momentum. Guha identifies a group of influential Indian thinkers, including Rabindranath Tagore, J.C. Kumarappa, Verrier Elwin, K.M. Munshi, and M. Krishnan, whose writings from the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries addressed issues such as deforestation, wildlife conservation, water management, and the socio-economic consequences of industrialisation. This work contributes significantly to historiography by recovering an indigenous intellectual history of environmentalism rooted in the cultural, religious, and socio-economic contexts of India.

Guha's book *Environmentalism: A Global History* (2000) stands out for examining environmental issues in the United States, China, India, the Soviet Union, and parts

Ramachandra Guha has received prestigious awards such as the Sahitya Akademi Award, the Leopold-Hidy Prize from the American Society for Environmental History, the Ramnath Goenka Prize for Excellence in Journalism, the R K Narayan Prize, and the Padma Bhushan, India's third-highest civilian honour. He has also been named among the world's most influential intellectuals by Prospect magazine and conferred honorary doctorates from institutions such as Yale University.

A major breakthrough in Indian environmental historiography was *This Fissured Land*, written by Ramachandra Guha and Madhav Gadgil in 1992. Madhav Gadgil, an ecologist and historian, collaborated with Guha on this work. The study is a survey of India's ecological history from ancient times to the modern period. Their interdisciplinary approach combined history with ecology, anthropology, and sociology. They argued that in pre-colonial India, communities used natural resources in harmony with nature. The work also demonstrated how British colonial policies disrupted this balance

In this study, Gadgil and Guha explain how humans and their societies have shaped and been moulded by their natural surroundings over time. They also explored pre-modern India and provided a new understanding of the caste system by linking it to how communities managed or exploited natural resources. They argued that caste is not just a social system but also an ecological one, where different groups interacted with the environment in different ways. The final part of the book focuses on colonial India. Here, they examine how British rule introduced new patterns of resource use, such as the large-scale clearing of forests, the building of canals, and the commercial exploitation of land. They utilised a variety of source materials to show how these changes disrupted traditional ways of managing the environment and had lasting social and ecological effects.

Mahesh Rangarajan is a renowned historian working in the area of environmental history in India. His research on wildlife conservation and hunting policies in colonial and postcolonial India deals with the theme of the politics of nature protection. His book *India's Wildlife History* (2001) explored how colonial hunting laws and conservation measures affected both wildlife and indigenous communities. One of his most famous works is a two-volume collection titled *India's Environmental History: A Reader* (2012), edited by Mahesh Rangarajan and K. Sivaramakrishnan, a



Professor of Anthropology and Forestry and Environmental Studies at Yale University. This collection of essays traces environmental developments in India from ancient times to the colonial period. The work examines how the natural environment and human societies have shaped each other throughout India's history. It also addresses issues like forests, wildlife, rivers, animals, and how communities lived with and used these resources. Furthermore, it discusses topics such as human-animal conflict, tribal rights, the clearing of forests for commercial use, the displacement of people, diseases like famines, and the debates between protecting nature and developing the economy.

The first volume studies the period from prehistoric times to the early nineteenth century. It shows how, even in ancient and medieval India, there were disputes over forests, water, and land. It also discusses how different groups fought over natural resources and how these conflicts shaped society. The second volume focuses on the colonial period, when British rule brought about major changes in India's natural environment. By 1904, more than half a million square kilometres of forests had come under government control. The British also built large canals, making India one of the most heavily irrigated regions in the world at the time. During this period, some animals were declared vermin and hunted in large numbers, while others were considered valuable game for British officials to hunt. These changes affected both the environment and the lives of people who depended on forests, rivers, and land for their survival. Rangarajan's work looks beyond political rulers and dynasties to understand how nature, forests, rivers, animals, and the people who lived with them also shaped history.

Rangarajan's *Environmental Issues in India: A Reader* (2006) shows how different writers, historians, and environmental activists have tried to understand the changing

relationship between people and nature in India. This collection of essays looks at how forests, rivers, land, and animals were used and protected at different times: before the British arrived, during colonial rule, and after India became independent. The essays explain how the British used forests for their own needs, built canals and railways, and changed the lives of people who depended on forests and rivers. It also discusses what happened after 1947, when new problems like large dams, deforestation, and pollution affected both people and nature. The book includes discussions about famous environmental movements in India, like the Chipko Movement and the protests against the Narmada dam. What makes Rangarajan's work valuable for environmental historiography is that it connects India's local environmental issues with global problems like climate change and biodiversity loss.

Another important work by Mahesh Rangarajan that contributes to environmental historiography in India is his book *Nature and Nation*, published in 2017. This collection of ten essays reflects Rangarajan's deep engagement with how India's natural world has been shaped by historical events, government policies, and global influences. The essays include studies on how environmental policies changed under leaders like Jawaharlal Nehru and Indira Gandhi, and how these decisions affected forests, rivers, and local communities. Rangarajan also compares India's environmental shifts with those in other postcolonial nations like Kenya and Tanzania. *Nature and Nation* shows how events from the past, like the expansion of agriculture, the growth of industries, and the creation of national parks, changed both the natural environment and the lives of people who depended on it.

Rangarajan has taught at several well-known institutions, including Delhi University and Krea University, and has also served as

visiting faculty at Cornell University in the USA, Jadavpur University in Kolkata, and the National Centre for Biological Sciences in Bengaluru. He was the Director of the Nehru Memorial Museum and Library in New Delhi from 2011 to 2015. More recently, he worked as the Vice Chancellor of Krea University from 2021 to 2022. In addition to teaching and writing, he has worked with the government as well. In 2010, he was the Chairperson of the Elephant Task Force, and between 2008 and 2012, he served on the Forest Advisory Committee of the Ministry of Environment.

Vandana Shiva

Vandana Shiva is an ecofeminist scholar, environmental activist, and public intellectual who brought attention to the intersection of environmental degradation, women's rights, and social justice. Her writings, including *Staying Alive* (1988), criticise industrial agriculture and promote the value of traditional ecological knowledge. Her work provides a distinctively feminist and grassroots perspective on Indian environmental history. In her influential book *Staying Alive: Women, Ecology, and Development* (1988), she argues that women, especially those in rural and tribal communities, have borne the brunt of environmental degradation caused by industrialisation, deforestation, and commercial agriculture. She explains how the idea of 'development,' often promoted by large companies, governments, and global organisations like the IMF and World Bank, has actually harmed both people and the environment. Shiva calls this harmful process 'maldevelopment' because, instead of improving people's lives, it destroys forests, rivers, farms, and traditional ways of living, while also pushing women and poor communities to the margins of society.

In *Staying Alive*, Vandana Shiva argues that women, particularly in villages and forest areas, have always played a crucial role in protecting the environment. She shows

how women's knowledge of farming, seeds, forests, and water is essential for keeping both people and nature alive and healthy. Shiva also explains how colonial rule, modern industrial farming, and globalisation have harmed both nature and women, often ignoring their voices and experiences. Her work reminds us that environmental problems are not just about forests and rivers but also about people's rights, survival, and dignity. It reflects how environmental history is closely linked with social and gender history. Shiva criticises the Green Revolution and industrial farming practices for depleting soil fertility, contaminating water, and eroding traditional knowledge systems. Her writings call for a revival of sustainable agricultural practices and indigenous ecological wisdom, framing environmental protection as inseparable from questions of gender justice and social equity.

Some of the most important works by Vandana Shiva include *The Violence of the Green Revolution* (1989), which exposes the environmental and social problems caused by modern farming in Punjab. In *Ecofeminism* (1993), co-written with Maria Mies, Shiva connects the exploitation of nature with the oppression of women. *Biopiracy* (1997) reveals how big companies have taken traditional knowledge from communities for profit. *Soil Not Oil* (2008) warns about the dangers of fossil-fuel-based farming and calls for climate-friendly, traditional agriculture. More recently, her memoir *Terra Viva: My Life in a Biodiversity of Movements* (2022) reflects on her life in ecological activism, and *The Nature of Nature* (2024) addresses the climate crisis and the need to reconnect food, farming, and nature. These works together show how environmental issues, women's rights, and social justice are deeply connected in India's history and present. Vandana Shiva's contribution was not confined to academic circles. Her activism on the ground influenced environmental movements and environment policy debates in India and beyond.



6.6.2.3 Guha-Grove Debate

One of the most important debates in the study of India's environmental history is between Ramachandra Guha and Richard H. Grove. Guha is a pioneer of environmental social history in India, while Grove is not only a historian but also an active environmental campaigner, linking his research with on-ground ecological struggles. Their debate over the impact of colonial rule on India's forests raises fundamental questions about power, knowledge, and the politics of conservation. The disagreement lies in whether British colonial rule was an ecological turning point in India's history, or if environmental degradation was already underway before their arrival. Early colonial forest officials painted a picture of pre-colonial India, claiming that its forests were mismanaged and on the verge of ruin. They proudly declared that the British saved the subcontinent's forests by introducing what they called scientific forestry after 1858, a claim famously known as Pax Sylvanica. However, starting in the late 1970s and 1980s, Indian historians began to challenge this narrative. Guha, alongside scholars like Madhav Gadgil, argued that while there may have been some forest clearance before colonial times, it was nothing compared to the widespread and systematic deforestation carried out under British rule, often to meet the demands of revenue collection, railway construction, and military expansion.

Richard Grove, a historian with an interest in global environmental history, challenged this view by arguing that pre-colonial Indian forests were well-managed common property. Using both historical records and anthropological studies, Grove showed that even before the British arrived, Indian states exercised considerable control over forests and, at times, actively excluded communities from accessing them. He cited examples such as the large-scale burning of forests in the Indo-Gangetic plains to make way for agriculture and grazing lands.

Furthermore, Grove accused Guha of largely ignoring the early colonial decades, a period when, according to Grove, many colonial doctors, administrators, and scientists were already aware of ecological problems. Grove also pointed out the colonial belief in desiccationism, the idea that deforestation could reduce rainfall, which motivated some officials to advocate for conservation not only for profit but also to prevent famines and preserve agrarian stability.

Guha concentrated on the late nineteenth century and portrayed colonial forest policies as tools of exploitation that displaced forest communities and stripped them of their traditional rights. He viewed the colonial state as driven largely by commercial and military needs, with little concern for either people or nature. In contrast, Grove focused on the early colonial period, where he identified conflicting attitudes within the British administration itself. Some officials were indeed motivated by profit, but others, he argued, showed genuine concern for environmental and social well-being. Grove even claimed that British forestry systems were often built on earlier indigenous practices and did not differ greatly in their day-to-day workings.

Guha, in works like *The Unquiet Woods*, focused on how colonial forestry disrupted local societies, giving voice to the peasants and forest dwellers who resisted these policies. Grove, on the other hand, in his groundbreaking *Green Imperialism* (1995), argued that environmental awareness itself often emerged from the colonial periphery. In places like India and the Caribbean, British officials noticed ecological damage and began experimenting with conservation measures. This idea complicates the familiar narrative of colonialism as purely destructive, suggesting instead that both exploitative and conservationist impulses coexisted within the empire.

Recap

- ◆ Environmental History studies the relationship between people and nature over time.
- ◆ It focuses on forests, rivers, animals, land use, and climate in history.
- ◆ Environmental History emerged globally in the 1960s-70s due to rising ecological concerns.
- ◆ Growth of Environmental Historiography in India during the 1980s
- ◆ Shifted focus from elite narratives to ordinary people's interaction with nature.
- ◆ Scholars examined how colonial rule and modern projects shaped the environment.
- ◆ Environmental Historiography places nature at the centre of historical study, not just a background.
- ◆ It shows how environmental policies shaped societies and marginalised groups.
- ◆ It recovers local, tribal, and peasant histories often missing in mainstream history.
- ◆ Environmental changes in colonial India
- ◆ The British exploited forests for timber, railways, and plantations.
- ◆ Indian Forest Acts (1865, 1878, 1927) restricted local communities' forest rights.
- ◆ Large plantations displaced tribal and peasant populations.
- ◆ Big irrigation projects altered water systems and harmed ecosystems.
- ◆ Environmental issues and movements in postcolonial India
- ◆ Post-1947 development projects caused deforestation, displacement, and pollution.
- ◆ Major movements like Chipko, Silent Valley, and Narmada Bachao protested ecological damage.
- ◆ These movements made environmental issues a public and historical concern.

- ◆ Ramachandra Guha - *The Unquiet Woods*, history of forest conflicts.
- ◆ Madhav Gadgil & Guha - *This Fissured Land*, ecological history from ancient to modern India.
- ◆ Mahesh Rangarajan- wildlife, hunting, and conservation history in colonial/postcolonial India.
- ◆ Vandana Shiva- Ecofeminist, linked environmental degradation with gender and social justice.
- ◆ The Guha–Grove debate explores whether British colonial rule alone caused major environmental damage in India.
- ◆ Guha blamed colonial exploitation and Grove focused on the earlier forest control and early conservation efforts.

Objective Questions

1. Who is credited with first using the term ‘Environmental History’ in academic writing?
2. The concept of the Anthropocene was popularised by which atmospheric chemist?
3. Which book by Ramachandra Guha examines peasant resistance in Uttarakhand’s forests?
4. Who co-authored *This Fissured Land* with Ramachandra Guha?
5. What is the primary theme of Mahesh Rangarajan’s *India’s Wildlife History*?
6. Which movement involved villagers hugging trees to protect forests from commercial felling?
7. In which decade did Environmental Historiography gain prominence in Indian academic circles?
8. What was the focus of the *Silent Valley Movement*?
9. Which act passed in 1865 gave colonial authorities control over Indian forests?

10. Name the book by Richard Grove that argued colonial environmental concern often arose in the colonies.
11. Who edited *India's Environmental History: A Reader* alongside Mahesh Rangarajan?
12. The debate over whether environmental degradation in India started before colonialism or during colonial rule involves which two scholars?

Answers

1. Roderick Nash
2. Paul Crutzen
3. *The Unquiet Woods*
4. Madhav Gadgil
5. Colonial hunting policies and wildlife conservation
6. Chipko Movement
7. 1980s
8. Opposition to a hydroelectric project threatening Kerala's rainforest
9. Indian Forest Act, 1865
10. *Green Imperialism*
11. K. Sivaramakrishnan
12. Ramachandra Guha and Richard Grove

Assignments

1. Trace the origin and development of Environmental History as a historical discipline. How did it gain ground in India from the 1980s?
2. Examine the ecological consequences of colonial forest policies in India. How did these policies impact tribal and peasant communities?
3. Critically analyse the contributions of Ramachandra Guha to Indian environmental historiography. Discuss his debate with Richard Grove.
4. Discuss the role of grassroots environmental movements in post-independence India. How did they shape public environmental awareness?
5. Write an essay on the feminist perspectives in Indian environmental history with special reference to the works of Vandana Shiva.

Reference

1. Gadgil, Madhav, and Ramachandra Guha. *This Fissured Land: An Ecological History of India*. Oxford University Press, 1992.
2. Guha, Ramachandra. *Environmentalism: A Global History*. Longman, 2000.
3. Rangarajan, Mahesh. *Nature and Nation*. Orient BlackSwan, 2017.
4. Rangarajan, Mahesh, and K. Sivaramakrishnan, ed. *India's Environmental History: A Reader*. Orient Blackswan, 2013.
5. Rangarajan, Mahesh, ed. *Environmental Issues in India: A Reader*. 1st ed., Pearson Education India, 2006
6. Shiva, Vandana. *Staying Alive: Women, Ecology and Development*. Zed Books, 1989.
7. Worster, Donald, ed. *The Ends of the Earth: Perspectives of Modern Environmental History*. Cambridge University Press, 1988.
8. <https://www.historians.org/perspectives-article/the-anthropocene-history-and-legacy-of-the-colonial-mindset-september-2022/>
9. <https://activehistory.ca/blog/2024/03/06/the-anthropocene-an-atmospheric-chemists-geologists-and-historians/>

10. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/365872650_The_Anthropocene_in_History_and_Historiography_in_History_Theory_and_Method_London_Bloomsbury_2022

Suggested Reading

1. Crosby, Alfred W. *Ecological Imperialism: The Biological Expansion of Europe, 900–1900*. Cambridge University Press, 1986.
2. D’Souza, Rohan. *Drowned and Dammed: Colonial Capitalism and Flood Control in Eastern India*. OUP, 2006.
3. Gadgil, Madhav, and Ramachandra Guha. *This Fissured Land: An Ecological History of India*. Oxford University Press, 1992.
4. Grove, Richard. *Green Imperialism*. CUP, 1995.
5. Guha, Ramachandra. *Environmentalism: A Global History*. Longman, 2000.
6. Guha, Sumit. *Ecologies of the Empire in South Asia, 1400–1900*. Yale University Press, 2023.
7. Habib, Irfan. *Man and Environment: The Ecological History of India*. Tulika Books, 2010.
8. Rangarajan, Mahesh, and K. Sivaramakrishnan, ed. *India’s Environmental History: A Reader*. Orient Blackswan, 2013.
9. Rangarajan, Mahesh, ed. *Environmental Issues in India: A Reader*. 1st ed., Pearson Education India, 2006



UNIT

Cambridge and New Cambridge School

Learning Outcomes

After the completion of this unit, the learner will be able to:

- ◆ explain the key features of the Cambridge School's approach to Indian historiography
- ◆ evaluate Anil Seal's interpretation of early Indian nationalism and elite politics
- ◆ understand the differences between the Cambridge School and New Cambridge School
- familiarise themselves with the works of the historians belonging to each school

Prerequisites

When we study the history of modern India, especially the colonial period, most of us are familiar with stories of great freedom fighters, mass movements, and patriotic slogans. Traditional history books often discuss the struggles of famous leaders like Gandhi, Nehru, and Subhas Chandra Bose, presenting the freedom movement as a united, people-driven fight against British rule. But did you know that not every historian agrees with this version of events? Around the middle of the 20th century, a group of scholars based at Cambridge University in England began examining India's past in a different way. They belonged to what is now called the Cambridge School of Historiography. These historians suggested that Indian nationalism wasn't solely about the masses rising up together against colonial oppression. According to them, politics in colonial India was often controlled by local and regional elites, such as landlords, princes, caste leaders, and urban politicians,

who were driven by their own personal ambitions, family rivalries, and power struggles. They operated within the British system, sometimes supporting it and at other times resisting it, but always keeping their own interests in mind. Later, a new generation of historians, often students of the Cambridge scholars, expanded these ideas. They came to be known as the New Cambridge School. They argued that Indian politics during colonial times couldn't be properly understood without also considering social changes, economic conditions, and global influences. They illustrated how Indian society was connected to the larger world through trade, ideas, and imperial policies. These historians believed that history often involves complicated decisions, secret negotiations, local rivalries, and clever survival tactics. In this unit, you will be introduced to these important historical debates. You will learn how these scholars challenged old ideas, encouraged the use of archival records and local studies, and helped us understand the many different forces that shaped India's colonial past.

Keywords

Cambridge School, New Cambridge School, Indian Nationalism, Colonial Politics, Local Elites, Imperialism, Global History

Discussion

6.7.1 The Cambridge School of Historiography

The Cambridge School of Indian history refers to a group of historians based at the University of Cambridge who offered a new way of studying modern Indian history. They focused on politics, institutions, and the role of the British Empire in shaping Indian nationalism. The emergence of the Cambridge School of historiography in the 1960s marked a distinctive turn in the study of modern Indian history within British academic circles. This group of historians developed a critical stance towards both the imperialist narratives of colonial administrators and the nationalist histories produced in independent India.

What set the Cambridge historians apart was their rejection of the idea that Indian

nationalism was primarily a product of ideological awakening or collective resistance to colonial oppression. They argued that the rise of nationalism in India was not an inevitable or natural outgrowth of widespread anti-colonial sentiment. Rather, it emerged as a contingent outcome of local and regional political manoeuvres, personal ambitions, and factional rivalries among indigenous elites operating within the framework of colonial governance. The Cambridge School believed that the political atmosphere of colonial India was far more fragmented and internally contested than nationalist narratives had acknowledged. They contended that the movement for Indian independence should be understood not as a homogenous, nationwide effort but as an assemblage of localised strategies by elites seeking to gain or maintain influence.



6.7.1.1 Anil Seal and The Cambridge School

Anil Seal, a Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, is widely regarded as one of the key founders of the *Cambridge School of Indian historiography*. Along with John Gallagher, he helped shape a new way of looking at how Indian nationalism developed under colonial rule. Seal's most influential work, *The Emergence of Indian Nationalism* (1971), provided a detailed analysis of the social roots of early political stirrings in India during the 1870s and 1880s, the period that eventually led to the foundation of the Indian National Congress. In this volume, Seal was concerned not only with politicians, viceroys, and British civil servants but also with the social structure of those parts of India, particularly Bengal and Bombay, where political movements were forming at the time. His study closely examined the nature of local associations and elite groups in these regions, revealing how caste affiliations, kinship ties, regional identities, and local rivalries shaped the course of early Indian politics. He paid special attention to the emergence of political associations in Bengal and Bombay, the genesis of the Indian National Congress, and the early political divisions between different Indian communities, including the initial signs of Muslim political divergence that would later influence the history of the subcontinent.

Seal challenged earlier nationalist interpretations that celebrated mass movements and charismatic leaders like Gandhi and Nehru as the primary forces behind the freedom struggle. Instead, he contended that nationalism in India did not simply arise from below, through the actions of the masses. It emerged through the ambitions, rivalries, and manoeuvres of local Indian elites such as princes, landlords, caste leaders, and urban politicians who operated within the colonial political framework to advance their own interests.

According to Seal, Indian politics in the late 19th and early 20th centuries was dominated by small, regionally based elite groups, whose loyalties were shaped not by a shared sense of Indian identity but by caste affiliations, family ties, local disputes, and immediate political opportunities. In this interpretation, nationalist politics became a tool, or a language, through which these groups negotiated power and position within the colonial state. Seal's work encouraged historians to examine the local and regional dimensions of politics in colonial India. It laid the groundwork for many later studies using archival sources such as official records, correspondence, and administrative reports to reconstruct the intricate realities of everyday political life.

Apart from his scholarly work in the field of Indian history, Dr Anil Seal also made important contributions to the academic and cultural life of Cambridge University. He was especially committed to promoting international education and cooperation. Over the course of his career, he played a crucial role in establishing several important scholarship funds and educational trusts that supported students from around the world, including many from South Asia, to pursue their studies at Cambridge. Among the trusts and scholarship bodies he helped create are the Cambridge Commonwealth Trust, Cambridge Overseas Trust, Gates Cambridge Trust, Isaac Newton Trust, and Cambridge Malaysian Education and Development Trust. These organisations have collectively supported thousands of international students by opening up opportunities for higher education and cross-cultural academic exchange.

Locality, Province and Nation: Essays on Indian Politics 1870-1940

The ideas of the Cambridge School were also influenced by the changes happening in the way historians were writing about

the British Empire itself. As interest in the history of colonial India grew in the mid-20th century, historians began to revisit long-held assumptions about both Indian nationalism and British imperialism. One important contribution to this emerging body of revisionist scholarship was the volume *Locality, Province and Nation: Essays on Indian Politics 1870-1940*. This collection of essays, written by members of the Cambridge School such as Anil Seal, Gordon Johnson, and others, illustrated how detailed case studies of local and provincial politics could challenge traditional nationalist narratives. They argued that Indian nationalism did not develop uniformly across the subcontinent but was shaped by local rivalries, provincial competitions, caste issues, and personal ambitions. These local and provincial forces often had a far greater influence on political outcomes than the larger ideological commitments to anti-colonial resistance. The book reflected a shift in historical writing about India to recognise the fragmented, negotiated, and regionally varied nature of Indian politics under British rule, rather than a linear narrative.

Through its essays, *Locality, Province and Nation* demonstrated that politics at the national level was frequently a reflection of provincial changes, and that the alliances and conflicts among landlords, caste groups, and local leaders played a decisive role in moulding colonial India's political system. This perspective further strengthened the Cambridge School's emphasis on studying locality and social structure alongside national narratives.

Another essay written in 1953 by John Gallagher and Ronald Robinson, titled "*The Imperialism of Free Trade*," questioned the older belief that the British Empire mostly expanded by directly taking over land through war and annexation. Instead, Gallagher and Robinson argued that the British often

preferred to control other regions through trade, diplomacy, and indirect influence. In other words, they didn't always need to conquer a place to control it. Sometimes, making deals and forming partnerships with local leaders was more useful and less costly.

The new way of thinking about empire encouraged historians to view colonial rule not just as something forced upon people but as a relationship that involved negotiation, cooperation, and local decision-making. The Cambridge School applied this idea to the Indian context. They suggested that British rule in India lasted not only because of British power, but also because many Indian elites, landlords, local rulers, and caste leaders made agreements with the British to protect their own positions and interests. These Indian leaders were often driven by personal gain, family ties, and local rivalries, rather than by a sincere commitment to the idea of an independent India.

These Indian leaders were often motivated by personal gain, family ties, and local rivalries, not by loyalty to the idea of an independent India. So, according to this view, the history of colonial India involved both conflict and cooperation, with power being shared and contested in different ways at different times. This emphasis on local and regional politics also encouraged historians to turn to archival sources such as official government records, private correspondence, and colonial administrative documents. This perspective reminds us to look beyond the prominent nationalist leaders and also pay attention to the natives and everyday life that influenced the colonial experience of India.

6.7.2 New Cambridge School

Following Gallagher and Seal, a second generation of Cambridge historians further developed these ideas. Often research



students of Anil Seal, they contributed to what is sometimes called the New Cambridge School. These include well-known scholars like David Washbrook, Christopher Bayly, and Gordon Johnson.

While the New Cambridge School shared the earlier group's interest in elite politics, colonial institutions, and regional power structures, they included economic and social transformations that were taking place in colonial India. This newer wave of scholarship argued that while political manoeuvres by Indian elites were important, they could not be understood in isolation from the larger economic and social forces of the time, such as the spread of capitalism, shifts in land ownership, changes in caste hierarchies, urbanisation, and the growth of a colonial economy integrated into global trade networks. The New Cambridge School emphasised placing Indian history within an imperial and global context. These historians argued that the British Empire was not merely a series of isolated colonial episodes in different regions but was a connected global system of political, economic, and cultural relationships. Indian history, therefore, could not be fully understood without recognising how it was shaped by and, in turn, helped to shape the wider patterns in global imperial history. This approach encouraged scholars to trace transnational connections, explore how colonial policies in India were influenced by events in other parts of the empire, and consider how Indian elites and communities responded to global economic trends and intellectual currents.

Let us now look at the contributions of the historians who are part of the New Cambridge School.

6.7.2.1 David Washbrook and Gordon Johnson

David Washbrook, for instance, in his studies on South India, particularly *The*

Emergence of Provincial Politics: The Madras Presidency 1870-1920, emphasised the importance of regional political cultures and local elite strategies in understanding the colonial experience. Washbrook's work suggested that the structures of colonial governance were interconnected with existing Indian social hierarchies and that Indian politics was driven as much by local power struggles as by resistance to foreign rule. Scholars like Gordon Johnson, too, explored similar themes in North India, arguing that indigenous elites played an active, rather than passive, role in shaping colonial governance. Both of these historians formed a connected intellectual tradition that gave importance to archival research and the political analysis of elites over mass movements or ideological narratives.

6.7.2.2 Christopher Bayly

Christopher Bayly was one of the most respected historians of India and the British Empire and worked for many years at Cambridge University. His early books like *The Local Roots of Indian Politics* (1975) and *Rulers, Townsmen and Bazaars* (1983) changed how people thought about British rule in India. Instead of focusing only on what the British did, Bayly looked at how Indian towns, traders, landlords, and ordinary people played an important role in politics and society during colonial times. He spent years studying private family records in cities like Allahabad and Benares, giving us a clearer picture of life under British rule from an Indian point of view.

Bayly's most famous work, *Rulers, Townsmen and Bazaars: North Indian Society in the Age of British Expansion (1770–1870)*, tells the story of how north Indian society changed between the decline of the Mughal Empire and the rise of the British Raj after the 1857 rebellion. What made this book stand out was its argument that Indian society was not simply wiped

out by British rule. Towns, traders, and local elites survived, adapted, and sometimes even thrived under the new rulers. Bayly showed that colonial power in India was built upon existing Indian networks of trade, politics, and administration. Indian towns and markets (or bazaars) weren't just passive victims of colonialism; they actively resisted, adjusted, and influenced the changes happening around them. It breaks the stereotype that Indians were only passive victims during colonial rule. Instead, it shows how different groups actively responded to political and economic changes.

Although Bayly worked at Cambridge, he was not exactly part of the famous Cambridge School of Indian History. He was influenced by teachers like Jack Gallagher and Eric Stokes but soon started developing his own ideas. He believed that India's history couldn't be separated from what was happening in other parts of the world, like Africa, the Americas, and Europe. This idea became central to his later work, as he became one of the early historians to focus on global history. In his book *Imperial Meridian* (1989), Bayly explained how the British Empire shifted from being mainly focused on trade to becoming a land-based empire, while also showing the interconnectedness of world events.

This interest in connected histories appeared again in *The Birth of the Modern World, 1780–1914* (2004), a major global history book. Bayly argued that the world during this period was far more interconnected and globalised than people usually imagine. He linked events like the American Civil War and European revolutions to what was happening in Asia, Africa, and South America. The book explored big themes like the rise of modern states, industrialisation, nationalism, and liberalism. It also challenged the older idea that only Europe shaped the modern world. Bayly showed how non-European societies played active roles in creating this modern, interconnected

world. This global approach influenced many younger historians and helped form what they call the New Cambridge School, a group that looks at connected histories beyond just empires and colonies.

One thing that made Bayly different was his huge curiosity about everything. He didn't just read about India and Britain; he read about everything from Japanese archaeology to Ethiopian land customs. This wide reading helped him write *Empire and Information: Intelligence Gathering and Social Communication in India (1780-1870)*, a fascinating book about how the British gathered secret information in India. Bayly explained that Indians were not just passive subjects; many worked as spies, informants, and political agents who sometimes shaped events and used information for their own advantage. In another important book, *The Origins of Nationality in South Asia* (1998), he explored how Indians picked up ideas like nationalism and freedom from the West but gave them their own meaning.

The theme of Indian agency under colonialism also appears in *Indian Society and the Making of the British Empire*. Here, Bayly discussed the decline of the Mughal Empire, the role of Indian merchants and elites, and how they either worked with or resisted the East India Company. He explored how the Company struggled to fully control India and how Indian society changed in terms of social organisation, environment, and politics. Through this, Bayly reinforced the idea that colonialism was not a one-way street. Indian people, rulers, and communities influenced how British rule worked in India.

Rather than arguing whether the British Empire was “good” or “bad”, Bayly wanted to understand how people on both sides, rulers and the ruled, shaped history together. In his later book, *Recovering Liberties* (2011), he examined how Indian thinkers like Rammohan Roy, Dadabhai Naoroji, and Gopal Krishna Gokhale borrowed ideas



about liberty, democracy, and equality from the West but adapted them in their own way. Bayly demonstrated how these thinkers engaged with European ideas from John Stuart Mill and Marx, but moulded them to fit Indian traditions and needs. He also

explained how these early liberals influenced later leaders like Gandhi and Nehru, even though not everyone agreed with their views. Bayly received many awards in his lifetime, including a knighthood in 2007.

Recap

- ◆ The Cambridge School of Indian historiography emerged in the 1960s.
- ◆ The Cambridge School challenged nationalist narratives by emphasising elite politics over mass movements.
- ◆ Anil Seal argued that Indian nationalism emerged through local elite rivalries and not collective anti-colonial sentiment.
- ◆ The Cambridge School suggested that colonial India's politics were fragmented, with local elites using nationalism to negotiate power with the British.
- ◆ Seal's work focused on how caste, kinship, and local disputes shaped early political activity in India.
- ◆ Gallagher and Robinson's essay *'The Imperialism of Free Trade'* challenged the idea of empire by conquest, showing how trade and diplomacy often secured control.
- ◆ The Cambridge School viewed colonial rule as a negotiation between the British and Indian elites.
- ◆ The New Cambridge School expanded this view by including economic and social transformations.
- ◆ David Washbrook emphasised regional political cultures and elite strategies in South India.
- ◆ Christopher Bayly's studies revealed how Indian towns, traders, and elites actively shaped colonial society, breaking the stereotype of passive colonial subjects.
- ◆ Bayly argued that Indian history is inseparable from global events, emphasising interconnected histories and transnational influences.
- ◆ Both schools encouraged historians to move beyond grand nationalist narratives.

Objective Questions

1. Who is considered the founding figure of the Cambridge School of Indian historiography?
2. What is the central argument of the Cambridge School regarding Indian nationalism?
3. Which book by Anil Seal analysed the social roots of Indian political movements?
4. Who wrote “Imperialism of Free Trade”?
5. Who studied South Indian politics in *The Emergence of Provincial Politics: Madras Presidency 1870–1920*?
6. Which historian’s work focused on the roles of townsmen and traders in colonial India?
7. What was Bayly’s major global history work published in 2004?
8. Which school incorporated global historical patterns into the study of Indian history?
9. What motivated many Indian elites to cooperate with colonial rulers, according to the Cambridge School?
10. Which historian’s work connected the decline of the Mughal Empire with the rise of the British East India Company?

Answers

1. Anil Seal
2. It emerged from elite rivalries and political manoeuvres rather than mass resistance.
3. *The Emergence of Indian Nationalism (1971)*
4. Gallagher and Robinson
5. David Washbrook
6. Christopher Bayly
7. *The Birth of the Modern World, 1780-1914*
8. New Cambridge School
9. Personal gain, family ties, and local rivalries
10. Christopher Bayly

Assignments

1. Evaluate the contributions of Anil Seal to the Cambridge School of Indian historiography.
2. Discuss the significance of local elites in shaping nationalist politics during colonial India as per the Cambridge School interpretation.
3. Compare and contrast the Cambridge School and the New Cambridge School approaches in the study of colonial India.
4. How did Christopher Bayly's idea of connected global histories influence the writing of Indian history?

Reference

1. Bayly, C. A. *Empire and Information: Intelligence Gathering and Social Communication in India, 1780-1870*. Cambridge University Press, 1996.
2. Bayly, C. A. *Rulers, Townsmen and Bazaars: North Indian Society in the Age of British Expansion, 1770-1870*. Cambridge University Press, 1983.
3. Gallagher, John, and Ronald Robinson. "The Imperialism of Free Trade." *The Economic History Review*, vol. 6, no. 1, 1953.
4. Seal, Anil. *The Emergence of Indian Nationalism: Competition and Collaboration in the Later Nineteenth Century*. Cambridge University Press, 1971.
5. Washbrook, David. *The Emergence of Provincial Politics: The Madras Presidency, 1870-1920*. Cambridge University Press, 1976.

Suggested Reading

1. Bayly, C. A. *Rulers, Townsmen and Bazaars: North Indian Society in the Age of British Expansion, 1770-1870*. Cambridge University Press, 1983.
2. Bayly, C. A. *The Birth of the Modern World, 1780–1914: Global Connections and Comparisons*. Blackwell, 2004.
3. Johnson, Gordon. *Provincial Politics and Indian Nationalism: Bombay and the Indian National Congress 1880-1915*. Cambridge University Press, 1973.
4. Seal, Anil. *The Emergence of Indian Nationalism: Competition and Collaboration in the Later Nineteenth Century*. Cambridge University Press, 1971.
5. Washbrook, David. *The Emergence of Provincial Politics: The Madras Presidency, 1870–1920*. Cambridge University Press, 1976.



MODEL QUESTION PAPER SETS



SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

QP CODE:

Reg. No :

Name :

Model Question Paper- set-1

Fifth Semester – UG Degree Examination

**DISCIPLINE SPECIFIC ELECTIVE COURSE – B21HS06DE
TRENDS IN HISTORICAL THOUGHTS AND WRITING**

(CBCS - UG)

2022 -23 Admission Onwards

Time: 3 Hours

Max Marks: 70

Section A (Objective Type Questions)

I Answer any 10 questions. Each question carries 1 mark

1. From which Greek word is the term *history* derived?
2. Who is known as the “Father of History”?
3. Name the author of *The Making of the English Working Class*.
4. What does the term *la longue durée* mean in the Annales School?
5. Who authored *The Historian's Craft*?
6. Who established the idea of history as “a continuous process of interaction between the historian and his facts”?
7. Who wrote *Histories*?
8. What is R.G. Collingwood's concept of history?
9. Who wrote the monumental Chinese work *Shih chi*?
10. Who authored *The Nation and its Fragments*?
11. Which historiographical approach focuses on class struggle and economic systems?
12. The concept of “total history” is associated with which school of historiography?
13. Who wrote *This Fissured Land* ?
14. Which school of historiography focuses on the lives of ordinary people?
15. Who authored *Nationalism and Colonialism in Modern India*?

(10×1 = 10 marks)



Section B (Very Short Questions)

II Answer any 10 questions. Each question carries 2 marks

16. Differentiate between history and historiography.
17. Explain the contribution of Herodotus to early historical writing.
18. Briefly describe the key features of Thucydides' historical method.
19. Explain the idea of "total history."
20. Mention two limitations of Graeco-Roman historiography.
21. Define *quasi-history*.
22. State two features of Chinese dynastic histories.
23. Outline the major characteristics of Marxist historiography.
24. What is environmental history?
25. What is meant by interdisciplinary approaches in historiography?
26. Describe the contribution of Ibn Khaldun to historical methodology.
27. What was E. H. Carr's view of historical objectivity?
28. What was the impact of Enlightenment philosophy on historical writing?
29. Mention two challenges historians face in reconstructing the past.
30. What were the key ideas of the Annales School?

(10×2 = 20 marks)

Section C (Short Questions)

III Answer any 5 questions. Each question carries 4 marks

31. Meaning and scope of history
32. Positivist approach to historiography
33. New Historicism
34. History of Mentalities
35. Christian historiography of St Augustine

36. Ibn Khaldun's concept of *Asabiyyah*

37. *Longue durée*

38. Subaltern Studies

39. Structuralism

40. Microhistory

(5×4 = 20 marks)

Section D (Essay Questions)

IV Answer any 2 questions. Each question carries 10 marks

41. Critically analyse the challenges of using epics and religious texts as sources for ancient Indian history.

42. Analyse St. Augustine's and Ibn Khaldun's contributions to medieval historiography.

43. Discuss the emergence and significance of Annales school of historiography.

44. Discuss the emergence and significance of the Subaltern Studies Group in Indian historiography.

10×2 = 20 marks)





SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

QP CODE:

Reg. No :

Name :

Model Question Paper- Set-II

Fifth Semester – UG Degree Examination

DISCIPLINE SPECIFIC ELECTIVE COURSE – B21HS06DE TRENDS IN HISTORICAL THOUGHTS AND WRITING

(CBCS - UG)

2022 -23 Admission Onwards

Time: 3 Hours

Max Marks: 70

Section A (Objective Type Questions)

I Answer any 10 questions. Each question carries 1 mark

1. Who is known as the “Father of Scientific History”?
2. Which historiographical school is associated with the history of mentalities?
3. Name the scholar who is associated with integrating linguistic structuralism into semiotics.
4. What is meant by *historiography*?
5. What does the term “renaissance” mean?
6. Which school of historiography focuses on long-term social structures rather than events?
7. What does the term *quasi-history* signify?
8. Who wrote *Historian's Craft*?
9. Which historian wrote the *History of the Peloponnesian War*?
10. Who popularised the term “History from Below” in 1966?
11. What was the purpose of the Twenty-Four Histories in China?
12. Who wrote *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*?
13. What is literary turn?
14. Who authored *The Muqaddimah*?
15. Who is regarded as the pioneer of Marxist historiography in India?

(10×1 = 10 marks)



Section B (Very Short Questions)

II Answer any 10 questions. Each question carries 2 marks

16. Describe the role of Abul Fazl in writing Mughal history.
17. Explain the Confucian influence on Chinese historiography.
18. Outline the theological basis of St Augustine's historical thought.
19. Outline Ibn Khaldun's scientific approach to history.
20. Mention two contributions of Fernand Braudel.
21. Define the term "Subaltern" and its historiographical importance.
22. What is romanticism?
23. What were the chief contributions of Leopold von Ranke?
24. What does *longue duree* mean in Annales historiography?
25. Explain the concept of bias and subjectivity in historical writing.
26. What is meant by Descartes' concept of dualism?
27. How does subaltern historiography critique colonial narratives?
28. Mention any two criticisms on rationalist historiography.
29. What is meant by revisionist history?
30. Define the concept of "cultural history."

(10×2 =20 marks)

Section C (Short Questions)

III Answer any 5 questions. Each question carries 4 marks

31. E. H. Carr's *What is History?*
32. Cultural turn
33. *Akbarnama*
34. Szuma Ch'ien
35. Dialectical Materialism
36. *Prashastis*



- 37. Pseudo-history
- 38. Historiographical contributions of Pan Ku
- 39. Anthropocene
- 40. Interdisciplinary approach

(5×4 =20 marks)

Section D (Essay Questions)

IV Answer any 2 questions. Each question carries 10 marks

- 41. Examine the nature of medieval historiography with special emphasis on the works of St Augustine and Ibn Khaldun.
- 42. Analyse the role of evidence in historical research.
- 43. Discuss the emergence and significance of Subaltern historiography in Indian historical writings.
- 44. Analyse the significance of environmental perspectives in historiography and discuss how ecological factors have shaped human societies and historical events.

(2×10 =20 marks)

NO TO DRUGS തിരിച്ചിറങ്ങാൻ പ്രയാസമാണ്



ആരോഗ്യ കുടുംബക്ഷേമ വകുപ്പ്, കേരള സർക്കാർ

സർവ്വകലാശാലാഗീതം

വിദ്യായാൽ സ്വതന്ത്രരാകണം
വിശ്വപൗരരായി മാറണം
ഗ്രഹപ്രസാദമായ് വിളങ്ങണം
ഗുരുപ്രകാശമേ നയിക്കണേ

കൂരിരുട്ടിൽ നിന്നു ഞങ്ങളെ
സൂര്യവീഥിയിൽ തെളിക്കണം
സ്നേഹദീപ്തിയായ് വിളങ്ങണം
നീതിവൈജയന്തി പാറണം

ശാസ്ത്രവ്യാപ്തിയെന്നുമേകണം
ജാതിഭേദമാകെ മാറണം
ബോധരശ്മിയിൽ തിളങ്ങുവാൻ
ജ്ഞാനകേന്ദ്രമേ ജ്വലിക്കണേ

കുരിപ്പുഴ ശ്രീകുമാർ

SREENARAYANAGURU OPEN UNIVERSITY

Regional Centres

Kozhikode

Govt. Arts and Science College
Meenchantha, Kozhikode,
Kerala, Pin: 673002
Ph: 04952920228
email: rckdirector@sgou.ac.in

Thalassery

Govt. Brennen College
Dharmadam, Thalassery,
Kannur, Pin: 670106
Ph: 04902990494
email: rctdirector@sgou.ac.in

Tripunithura

Govt. College
Tripunithura, Ernakulam,
Kerala, Pin: 682301
Ph: 04842927436
email: rcedirector@sgou.ac.in

Pattambi

Sree Neelakanta Govt. Sanskrit College
Pattambi, Palakkad,
Kerala, Pin: 679303
Ph: 04662912009
email: rcpdirector@sgou.ac.in

Trends In Historical Thought And Writing

COURSE CODE: B21HS06DE



Sreenarayanaguru Open University

Kollam, Kerala Pin- 691601, email: info@sgou.ac.in, www.sgou.ac.in Ph: +91 474 2966841

ISBN 978-81-988746-9-6



9 788198 874696